



---

# Penguin Edge™ ATCA-7540 Series

Installation and Use Manual

P/N: 6806871A01K

January 2023

---



## Legal Disclaimer\*

SMART Embedded Computing, Inc. (SMART EC), dba Penguin Solutions™, assumes no responsibility for errors or omissions in these materials. **These materials are provided "AS IS" without warranty of any kind, either expressed or implied, including but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose, or non-infringement.** SMART EC further does not warrant the accuracy or completeness of the information, text, graphics, links, or other items contained within these materials. SMART EC shall not be liable for any special, indirect, incidental, or consequential damages, including without limitation, lost revenues or lost profits, which may result from the use of these materials. SMART EC may make changes to these materials, or to the products described therein, at any time without notice. SMART EC makes no commitment to update the information contained within these materials.

Electronic versions of this material may be read online, downloaded for personal use, or referenced in another document as a URL to a SMART EC website. The text itself may not be published commercially in print or electronic form, edited, translated, or otherwise altered without the permission of SMART EC.

It is possible that this publication may contain reference to or information about SMART EC products, programming, or services that are not available in your country. Such references or information must not be construed to mean that SMART EC intends to announce such SMART EC products, programming, or services in your country.

## Limited and Restricted Rights Legend

If the documentation contained herein is supplied, directly or indirectly, to the U.S. Government, the following notice shall apply unless otherwise agreed to in writing by SMART EC.

Use, duplication, or disclosure by the Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (b)(3) of the Rights in Technical Data clause at DFARS 252.227-7013 (Nov. 1995) and of the Rights in Noncommercial Computer Software and Documentation clause at DFARS 252.227-7014 (Jun. 1995).

### **SMART Embedded Computing, Inc., dba Penguin Solutions**

2900 S. Diablo Way, Suite 190

Tempe, Arizona 85282

USA

\*For full legal terms and conditions, visit <https://www.penguinsolutions.com/edge/legal/>

# Table of Contents

---

About this Manual .....	21
Safety Notes .....	29
Notice de Sécurité .....	37
Sicherheitshinweise .....	45
<b>1 Introduction .....</b>	<b>53</b>
1.1 ATCA-7540 Overview .....	53
1.2 Features .....	53
1.3 Standard Compliance .....	54
1.4 Mechanical Data .....	55
1.5 Estimated Mean Time Between Failures (MTBF) .....	55
1.6 Ordering and Support Information .....	55
1.7 Product Identification .....	56
<b>2 Hardware Preparation and Installation .....</b>	<b>57</b>
2.1 Unpacking and Inspecting the Blade .....	57
2.2 Environmental and Power Requirements .....	57
2.2.1 Environmental Requirements .....	58
2.2.2 Power Requirements .....	61
2.3 Blade Layout .....	63
2.4 Switch Settings .....	64
2.5 Jumper Settings .....	66
2.6 Installing the Blade Accessories .....	67
2.6.1 RDIMM Memory Modules .....	67
2.6.2 M.2 NVMe or SATA Modules .....	69
2.7 Installing and Removing the Blade .....	70
2.7.1 Installing the Blade .....	71
2.7.2 Removing the Blade .....	73
2.8 Replacing the Battery .....	74

# Table of Contents

---

<b>3</b>	<b>Controls, Indicators, and Connectors</b>	<b>77</b>
3.1	Face Plate	77
3.1.1	LEDs	77
3.1.2	Reset Button	78
3.1.3	Connectors	79
3.1.3.1	SFP+ Connector	79
3.1.3.2	Ethernet Connector	80
3.1.3.3	Serial Interface Connector	80
3.1.3.4	USB 3.0 Connectors	81
3.2	On-board Connectors	81
3.2.1	M.2 Riser Card Connector	81
3.3	AdvancedTCA Backplane Connectors	85
<b>4</b>	<b>Functional Description</b>	<b>93</b>
4.1	Block Diagram	93
4.2	Processor	93
4.3	DDR4 Main Memory	94
4.4	Platform Controller Hub (Lewisburg)	94
4.4.1	PCH I/O Controller Features	95
4.4.2	Firmware Flashes	95
4.5	ATCA Base Interface Ethernet Controller	96
4.6	ATCA Fabric Interface Ethernet Controller	96
4.7	Storage Controller	97
4.7.1	ATCA Update Channels	97
4.8	M.2 NVMe/SATA Modules	99
4.9	VROC RAID on NVMe Modules	99
4.10	Heat Sink	100
4.11	BIOS	100
4.12	IPMC	101
4.12.1	I <sup>2</sup> C Bus	101
4.12.2	FRU Data Serial IDROM	103
4.12.3	System Event Log EEPROM	103
4.13	Serial Redirection	104
4.14	Serial over LAN	104
4.15	Control Logic	105
4.16	Front Blade Face Plate	105
4.17	Face Plate Serial Interfaces	105

4.17.1 IPMC Debug Console .....	106
4.18 USB 3.0 Interfaces .....	106
4.19 Low Pin Count Interface .....	107
4.20 Trusted Platform Module .....	107
4.21 System Clocks .....	107
4.22 SMBus .....	108
4.23 PCIe Bus Structure .....	111
<b>5 Maps and Registers .....</b>	<b>113</b>
5.1 FPGA Registers .....	113
5.1.1 Register Decoding .....	114
5.1.1.1 Low Pin Count (LPC) Decoding .....	114
5.1.1.1.1 LPC I/O Decoding .....	114
5.1.1.1.2 LPC Memory Decoding .....	114
5.1.1.1.3 LPC Firmware Decoding .....	114
5.1.1.2 I <sup>2</sup> C Register Decoding .....	115
5.1.2 POST Code Register .....	115
5.1.3 Super IO Configuration Register .....	115
5.1.3.1 Entering the Configuration State .....	116
5.1.3.2 Exiting the Configuration State .....	116
5.1.3.3 Configuration Mode .....	116
5.1.3.4 Super IO Configuration Registers .....	117
5.1.3.4.1 Global Control Configuration Registers .....	117
5.1.3.4.2 Logical Device Configuration Registers .....	119
5.1.4 UART1 and UART2 Register Map .....	122
5.1.4.1 UART Register Overview .....	122
5.1.4.2 UART Registers DLAB=0 .....	123
5.1.4.2.1 Receiver Buffer Register (RBR) .....	123
5.1.4.2.2 Transmitter Holding Register (THR) .....	124
5.1.4.2.3 Interrupt Enable Register (IER) .....	124
5.1.4.2.4 Interrupt Identification Register (IIR) .....	125
5.1.4.2.5 FIFO Control Register (FCR) .....	128
5.1.4.2.6 Line Control Register (LCR) .....	128
5.1.4.2.7 Modem Control Register (MCR) .....	131
5.1.4.2.8 Line Status Register (LSR) .....	132
5.1.4.2.9 Modem Status Register (MSR) .....	135
5.1.4.2.10 Scratch Register (SCR) .....	137
5.1.4.3 Programmable Baud Rate Generator .....	137

## Table of Contents

---

5.1.5	FPGA Register Mapping	138
5.1.5.1	LPC I/O Register Map	138
5.1.5.2	IPMC I <sup>2</sup> C Register Map	138
5.1.6	Module Identification Register	142
5.1.7	Version Register	142
5.1.8	Serial Redirection Control Register	142
5.1.9	Serial over LAN Control Register	143
5.1.10	Serial Line Routing Register	144
5.1.11	IPMC Power Failure Registers	144
5.1.11.1	ME Power Failure Registers	145
5.1.11.2	Payload Power Failure Registers	146
5.1.11.3	Power Status Register	151
5.1.12	Reset Registers	152
5.1.12.1	BIOS Reset Source Register	152
5.1.12.2	Reset Mask Register	153
5.1.12.3	BIOS IPMC Watchdog Timeout Register	153
5.1.12.4	BIOS Push Button Enable Register	154
5.1.12.5	OS Reset Source Register	154
5.1.12.6	OS IPMC Watchdog Timeout Register	155
5.1.12.7	IPMC Watchdog Timeout Register	156
5.1.12.8	IPMC Reset Source Register	157
5.1.12.9	IPMC Interrupt Status Register	157
5.1.12.10	DIMM ADR Configuration Register	158
5.1.12.11	DIMM ADR Status Register	159
5.1.13	CPU Control Register	159
5.1.14	Non-maskable Interrupt (NMI) Control Status Registers	159
5.1.14.1	NMI Generation Register	160
5.1.14.2	NMI Status Register	160
5.1.15	Interrupt Control and Status Registers	160
5.1.15.1	Internal Interrupt Status Register	161
5.1.15.2	Telecom Interrupt Status Register	161
5.1.15.3	Telecom Interrupt Control Register	162
5.1.15.4	RTM Interrupt Status Register	162
5.1.15.5	External Interrupt Status Register	162
5.1.15.6	Interrupt Mask and Map Registers	163
5.1.16	PCI Express Hot Plug I <sup>2</sup> C I/O Expander Registers	164
5.1.16.1	CPU0 Hot Plug I <sup>2</sup> C I/O Expander Registers	164
5.1.16.2	CPU1 Hot Plug I <sup>2</sup> C I/O Expander Registers	165

- 5.1.16.3 Hot-Plug Virtual Pin Port Registers ..... 165
- 5.1.16.4 PCA9555 Internal Register Access ..... 167
- 5.1.17 Flash Status and Selection Registers ..... 167
- 5.1.18 PCH Output Enable Register ..... 168
- 5.1.19 RTM SPI Interface Registers ..... 169
- 5.1.20 Update Channel Equalization Control Register ..... 170
- 5.1.21 RTM USB Control Register ..... 171
- 5.1.22 LED Status and Control Register ..... 172
- 5.1.23 Spare Signals Status Registers ..... 173
- 5.1.24 CPU Presence Detection Register ..... 173
- 5.1.25 CPU Error Status Register ..... 174
- 5.1.26 Telecom Clock Supervision Registers ..... 175
- 5.1.27 BIOS Version Registers ..... 179
- 5.1.28 IPMC BIOS Communication Registers ..... 180
- 5.1.29 Scratch Registers ..... 180
  
- 6 Basic Input/Output System ..... 183**
  - 6.1 Introduction ..... 183
  - 6.2 Accessing the Blade Using the Serial Console Redirection ..... 184
    - 6.2.1 Requirements for Serial Console Redirection ..... 184
    - 6.2.2 Default Access Parameters ..... 184
    - 6.2.3 Connecting to the Blade ..... 185
  - 6.3 Changing Configuration Settings ..... 185
  - 6.4 Boot Support ..... 186
    - 6.4.1 Boot Mode ..... 186
    - 6.4.2 Boot Type ..... 187
    - 6.4.3 Supported Boot Devices ..... 187
    - 6.4.4 Selecting the Boot Device ..... 187
  - 6.5 iSCSI Boot ..... 189
  - 6.6 IPMI Boot Parameter ..... 194
  - 6.7 BIOS Setup Configuration ..... 196
    - 6.7.1 Main ..... 196
    - 6.7.2 Advanced ..... 197
      - 6.7.2.1 Platform Information ..... 198
      - 6.7.2.2 RTM Configuration ..... 198
      - 6.7.2.3 Peripheral Configuration ..... 200
      - 6.7.2.4 NVM Express Information ..... 202
      - 6.7.2.5 USB Configuration ..... 202

# Table of Contents

---

6.7.2.6	Socket Configuration	203
6.7.2.7	Processor Configuration	204
6.7.2.8	Common RefCode Configuration	206
6.7.2.9	Memory Configuration	207
6.7.2.10	Advanced Power Management Configuration	209
6.7.2.11	Console Redirection	212
6.7.3	Security	216
6.7.4	Boot	217
6.7.5	Exit	221
6.8	UEFI Secure Boot	222
6.9	Restoring BIOS Default Settings	222
6.10	IPMI Support	222
6.11	Watchdog Support	223
6.12	BIOS Error Logging	223
6.12.1	Runtime Error Logging	224
6.12.2	IPMI Error Logging	224
6.13	LED Usage	228
6.14	Upgrading the BIOS	228
6.15	BIOS POST Codes	228
<b>7</b>	<b>Serial over LAN (SOL)</b>	<b>237</b>
7.1	Overview	237
7.2	Ipmitool	238
7.3	Configuring SOL Parameters	238
7.3.1	Using ipmitool	238
7.4	Establishing an SOL Session	240
<b>8</b>	<b>Supported IPMI Commands</b>	<b>241</b>
8.1	Standard IPMI Commands	241
8.1.1	Global IPMI Commands	241
8.1.2	System Interface Commands	241
8.1.3	Watchdog Commands	242
8.1.4	SEL Device Commands	243
8.1.5	FRU Inventory Commands	243
8.1.6	Sensor Device Commands	243
8.1.7	Chassis Device Commands	245
8.1.7.1	System Boot Options Commands	245



## Table of Contents

8.1.7.1.1	System Boot Options Parameter #96	246
8.1.7.1.2	System Boot Options Parameter #98	246
8.1.7.1.3	System Boot Options Parameter #100	247
8.1.8	LAN Device Commands	261
8.2	PICMG 3.0 Commands	262
8.3	Penguin Edge Specific Commands	263
8.3.1	Serial Output Commands	264
8.3.1.1	Set Serial Output Command	264
8.3.1.1.1	Request Data	264
8.3.1.1.2	Response Data	265
8.3.1.2	Get Serial Output Command	265
8.3.1.2.1	Request Data	265
8.3.1.2.2	Response Data	266
8.3.2	OEM Command to Configure IPMI Features	266
8.3.2.1	Set Feature Configuration	267
8.3.2.2	Get Feature Configuration	268
8.4	Pigeon Point Specific Commands	269
8.4.1	Get Status Command	271
8.4.2	Get Serial Interface Properties Command	274
8.4.3	Set Serial Interface Properties Command	275
8.4.4	Get Debug Level Command	276
8.4.5	Set Debug Level Command	277
8.4.6	Get Hardware Address Command	278
8.4.7	Set Hardware Address Command	278
8.4.8	Get Handle Switch Command	279
8.4.9	Set Handle Switch Command	279
8.4.10	Get Payload Communication Time-Out Command	280
8.4.11	Set Payload Communication Time-Out Command	281
8.4.12	Enable Payload Control Command	281
8.4.13	Disable Payload Control Command	282
8.4.14	Reset IPMC Command	282
8.4.15	Hang IPMC Command	283
8.4.16	Graceful Reset Command	283
8.4.17	Get Payload Shutdown Time-Out Command	284
8.4.18	Set Payload Shutdown Time-Out Command	285
8.4.19	Get Module State Command	286
8.4.20	Enable Module Site Command	287
8.4.21	Disable Module Site Command	287

# Table of Contents

---

8.4.22	Reset Carrier SDR Repository Command	288
<b>9</b>	<b>IPMI Feature Set</b>	<b>289</b>
9.1	Introduction to the IPMI Feature Set	289
9.2	Firmware Architecture	292
9.3	Firmware Upgrade	293
9.3.1	HPM.1 Components	293
9.3.1.1	IPMI Boot Loader and Firmware Component	294
9.3.1.2	In Application Programming (IAP) Component	294
9.3.1.3	FPGA Component	294
9.3.1.4	BIOS Component	295
9.3.2	Retrieving Versioning Information	295
9.3.3	Firmware Upgrade Tool	296
9.3.3.1	Updating using ipmitool	296
9.3.3.2	Upgrading Interfaces	297
9.3.3.2.1	KCS	297
9.3.3.2.2	IPMB-0	297
9.3.3.2.3	IPMI over LAN (BASE)	297
9.3.4	HPM.2 Specific Firmware Updates	297
9.4	Sensors	300
9.4.1	Payload Driven Sensors	313
9.4.2	Boot Bank Supervision Sensor	313
9.4.3	IPMC POST Results Sensor	314
9.4.4	Power Good Sensor	314
9.4.5	Power Interface Sensors	314
9.4.6	Reset Cause Sensor	315
9.4.7	Voltage and Temperature Sensor	315
9.4.8	ME Power Failure Sensor	316
9.4.9	Payload Power Failure State Sensor	317
9.4.10	Payload Power Failure Cause Sensor	317
9.5	Power-On Self-Test (POST)	317
9.6	Ejector Handle De-Bounce	318
9.7	FRU Inventory	318
9.7.1	MAC Address FRU OEM Records	319
9.8	Reset and Power Domain	320
9.9	Power Configuration	321
9.10	BIOS Boot Configuration Parameters	321
9.11	Asynchronous Event Notification	322

## Table of Contents

---

9.12	Serial Line Selection	323
9.13	BIOS Boot Bank Selection	323
9.13.1	Boot Bank Sensor	323
9.13.2	Fail Safe Logic	324
9.14	Glue Logic FPGA Flash Selection	325
9.14.1	Boot Bank Sensor	326
9.14.2	Fail Protect Logic	326
9.14.3	Remote Crisis Recover Mode	328
9.15	Settable Graceful Shutdown Timeout	328
9.16	Local System Event Log (SEL)	328
<b>A</b>	<b>Ruggedized ATCA-7450 Information</b>	<b>329</b>
A.1	Ruggedized ATCA-7540 Overview	329
A.2	Mechanical Data	329
A.3	Mechanical Information	330
A.4	Ordering Information	333
<b>B</b>	<b>Related Documentation</b>	<b>335</b>
B.1	Penguin Edge Documentation	335
B.2	Related Specifications	335

## Table of Contents

---

# List of Figures

---

Figure 1-1	Serial Number Location	56
Figure 2-1	Location of Critical Temperature Spots (Blade Top Side)	60
Figure 2-2	ATCA-7540 Blade Layout	63
Figure 2-3	Switch Location (Top Side of the Blade)	64
Figure 2-4	Jumper Locations (Top Side of the Blade)	66
Figure 2-5	RDIMM Sockets	67
Figure 2-6	Location of On-board Battery	74
Figure 3-1	Face Plate	77
Figure 3-2	Ethernet Interface Connector Pinout	80
Figure 3-3	Serial Interface Connector Pinout	80
Figure 3-4	Location of M.2 Riser Card	82
Figure 3-5	Location of AdvancedTCA Connectors	85
Figure 3-6	P10 Backplane Connector Pinout	86
Figure 3-7	P20 Backplane Connector Pinout - Rows A to D	87
Figure 3-8	P20 Backplane Connector Pinout - Rows E to H	87
Figure 3-9	P23 Backplane Connector Pinout - Rows A to D	88
Figure 3-10	P23 Backplane Connector Pinout - Rows E to H	88
Figure 3-11	P30 Backplane Connector Pinout - Rows A to D	89
Figure 3-12	P30 Backplane Connector Pinout - Rows E to H	89
Figure 3-13	P31 Backplane Connector Pinout - Rows A to D	90
Figure 3-14	P31 Backplane Connector Pinout - Rows E to H	90
Figure 3-15	P32 Backplane Connector Pinout - Rows A to D	91
Figure 3-16	P32 Backplane Connector Pinout - Rows E to H	91
Figure 3-17	P333 Connector Pin Assignment	92
Figure 4-1	ATCA-7540 Block Diagram	93
Figure 4-2	SAS Update Channel Implementation	98
Figure 4-3	VROC Hardware Key	99
Figure 4-4	Location of J3 Connector for VROC Hardware Key Installation	100
Figure 4-5	Master-Only I <sup>2</sup> C Bus Architecture	102
Figure 4-6	SMBus Architecture	109
Figure 4-7	PCIe Bus Structure	112
Figure 6-1	Main Menu	185
Figure 6-2	Boot Device Priority	188
Figure 6-3	Boot Menu	189
Figure 6-4	iSCSI Configuration	190
Figure 6-5	Attempt Configuration 1	191
Figure 6-6	Attempt Configuration 2	191

## List of Figures

---

Figure 6-7	IPMI Boot Parameter .....	195
Figure 6-8	Main Menu Options .....	196
Figure 6-9	Advanced Menu .....	197
Figure 6-10	Platform Information .....	198
Figure 6-11	RTM Configuration .....	198
Figure 6-12	Peripheral Configuration .....	200
Figure 6-13	NVM Express Information .....	202
Figure 6-14	USB Configuration .....	202
Figure 6-15	Socket Configuration .....	203
Figure 6-16	Processor Configuration .....	204
Figure 6-17	Per Socket Configuration .....	205
Figure 6-18	Common RefCode Configuration .....	206
Figure 6-19	Memory Configuration .....	207
Figure 6-20	Memory RAS Configuration .....	208
Figure 6-21	CPU P-State Control .....	209
Figure 6-22	CPU C-State Control .....	210
Figure 6-23	Package C-State Control .....	211
Figure 6-24	Console Redirection .....	212
Figure 6-25	APEI Configuration .....	213
Figure 6-26	IPMI OEM Configuration .....	214
Figure 6-27	Security Configuration .....	216
Figure 6-28	Boot Configuration .....	217
Figure 6-29	EFI Boot Order .....	219
Figure 6-30	Legacy Boot Order .....	220
Figure 6-31	Exit Menu .....	221
Figure 7-1	SOL Overview .....	237
Figure 8-1	System Boot Options Parameter #100 - Information Flow Overview .....	248
Figure 9-1	IPMC Block Diagram of ATCA-7540 .....	291
Figure 9-2	Firmware Architecture .....	292
Figure 9-3	Location of Temperature Sensors .....	312
Figure 9-4	Fail Safe Logic Diagram .....	324
Figure 9-5	Fail Protect Logic Diagram .....	327
Figure A-1	Location of Alignment Blocks on the Ruggedized ATCA-7540 Blade .....	330
Figure A-2	ATCA Blade Alignment Block .....	330
Figure A-3	Recessed Captive Screws in the Ruggedized AXP1440 Shelf .....	331
Figure A-4	Angled View of Recessed Captive Screws in Ruggedized AXP1440 Shelf .....	332
Figure A-5	Alignment Block in Stowed Position .....	332
Figure A-6	Alignment Block in Switch Slot .....	333

# List of Tables

---

Table 1-1	Standard Compliance .....	54
Table 1-2	Mechanical Data .....	55
Table 2-1	Environmental Requirements .....	58
Table 2-2	Critical Temperature Limits .....	60
Table 2-3	Power Requirements .....	61
Table 2-4	Power Consumption of ATCA-7540 with and without RTM .....	61
Table 2-5	Switch SW100 Settings .....	64
Table 2-6	Switch SW2 Settings .....	65
Table 2-7	Switch SW3 Settings .....	65
Table 2-8	Jumper Configuration .....	66
Table 3-1	Face Plate LEDs .....	77
Table 3-2	SFP+ Connector Pinout .....	79
Table 3-3	USB Connector Pinout .....	81
Table 3-4	M.2 Riser Card Connector Pinout .....	83
Table 4-1	MAC Address Assignments .....	96
Table 4-2	IPMI I <sup>2</sup> C Bus Address Map .....	103
Table 4-3	Face Plate Serial Interfaces .....	106
Table 4-4	IPMC Debug Console Destination Selection .....	106
Table 4-5	SMBus Interface .....	108
Table 4-6	SMBus Address Map .....	110
Table 5-1	Register Default .....	113
Table 5-2	Register Access Type .....	113
Table 5-3	LPC I/O Register Map Overview .....	114
Table 5-4	IPMC SPI Register .....	115
Table 5-5	POST Code Register .....	115
Table 5-6	Super IO Configuration Index Register .....	116
Table 5-7	Super IO Configuration Data Register .....	116
Table 5-8	Global Configuration Register Summary .....	117
Table 5-9	Super IO Logical Device Number Register .....	118
Table 5-10	Super IO Device Identification Register .....	118
Table 5-11	Super IO Device Revision Register .....	118
Table 5-12	Super IO LPC Control Register .....	118
Table 5-13	Global Super IO SERIRQ and Pre-divide Control Register .....	119
Table 5-14	Logical Device Configuration Register Summary .....	119
Table 5-15	Logical Device Enable Register .....	120
Table 5-16	Logical Device Base I/O Address MSB Register .....	120
Table 5-17	Logical Device Base I/O Address LSB Register .....	120

## List of Tables

---

Table 5-18	Logical Device Common Decode Ranges	120
Table 5-19	Logical Device Primary Interrupt Register	121
Table 5-20	Logical Device 0x74 Reserved Register	122
Table 5-21	Logical Device 0x75 Reserved Register	122
Table 5-22	Logical Device 0xF0 Reserved Register	122
Table 5-23	UART Register Overview	122
Table 5-24	Receiver Buffer Register (RBR) if DLAB=0	123
Table 5-25	Transmitter Holding Register (THR) if DLAB=0	124
Table 5-26	Interrupt Enable Register (IER), if DLAB=0	124
Table 5-27	UART Interrupt Priorities	125
Table 5-28	Interrupt Identification Register (IIR)	125
Table 5-29	Interrupt Identification Register Decode	127
Table 5-30	FIFO Control Register (FCR)	128
Table 5-31	Line Control Register (LCR)	129
Table 5-32	Modem Control Register (MCR)	131
Table 5-33	Line Status Register (LSR)	132
Table 5-34	Modem Status Register (MSR)	135
Table 5-35	Scratch Register (SCR)	137
Table 5-36	Divisor Latch LSB Register (DLL), if DLAB=1	137
Table 5-37	Divisor Latch MSB Register (DLM), if DLAB=1	138
Table 5-38	FPGA Register Map Overview	138
Table 5-39	Module Identification Register	142
Table 5-40	FPGA Version Register	142
Table 5-41	Serial Redirection Control Register	142
Table 5-42	Serial over LAN Control Register	143
Table 5-43	Serial Line Routing Register	144
Table 5-44	ME Power Failure State Register	145
Table 5-45	ME Power Failure States	145
Table 5-46	ME Power Failure Cause Register	146
Table 5-47	Payload Power Failure State Register	146
Table 5-48	Payload Power Failure States	147
Table 5-49	Payload Power Failure Cause Register 1	148
Table 5-50	Payload Power Failure Cause Register 2	149
Table 5-51	Payload Power Failure Cause Register 3	150
Table 5-52	Power Status Register	151
Table 5-53	BIOS Reset Source Register	152
Table 5-54	Reset Mask Register	153
Table 5-55	BIOS IPMC Watchdog Timeout Register	154



Table 5-56	BIOS Push Button Enable Register	154
Table 5-57	OS Reset Source Register	155
Table 5-58	OS IPMC Watchdog Timeout Register	155
Table 5-59	IPMC Watchdog Timeout Register	156
Table 5-60	IPMC Reset Source Register	157
Table 5-61	IPMC Interrupt Status Register	158
Table 5-62	DIMM ADR Feature Configuration Register	158
Table 5-63	DIMM ADR Status Register	159
Table 5-64	CPU Control Register	159
Table 5-65	NMI Generation Register	160
Table 5-66	NMI Status Register	160
Table 5-67	Internal Interrupt Status Register	161
Table 5-68	Telecom Interrupt Status Register	161
Table 5-69	Telecom Interrupt Control Register	162
Table 5-70	External Interrupt Status Register	162
Table 5-71	Address Map of Interrupt Mask and Map Registers	163
Table 5-72	Interrupt Mask and Map Registers	164
Table 5-73	Hot-Plug Virtual Pin Port Register	165
Table 5-74	Address Control for PCA9555 Internal Register	167
Table 5-75	Content of PCA9555 Internal Register	167
Table 5-76	Flash Status Register	168
Table 5-77	PCH Output Enable Register	169
Table 5-78	RTM SPI Address/Command Register	169
Table 5-79	RTM SPI Write Register	170
Table 5-80	RTM SPI Read Register	170
Table 5-81	Update Channel Equalization Control Register	170
Table 5-82	RTM USB Control Register	171
Table 5-83	RTM Status Register	172
Table 5-84	RTM Interrupt Status Register	172
Table 5-85	LED Control Register	172
Table 5-86	Spare Signal Status Register	173
Table 5-87	CPU Presence Detection Register	173
Table 5-88	CPU Error Status Register	174
Table 5-89	Supervised Telecom Clocks Reference List	175
Table 5-90	Telecom Clock Monitor Control Register	175
Table 5-91	Telecom Clock Monitor Status Register	175
Table 5-92	Telecom Clock Monitor Out of Range Register	176
Table 5-93	Telecom Clock Monitor Select Register	176

## List of Tables

---

Table 5-94	Telecom Clock Monitor Time Base Register	177
Table 5-95	Telecom Clock Monitor Frequency/Period Register	178
Table 5-96	Telecom Clock Monitor Lower Limit Register	178
Table 5-97	Telecom Clock Monitor Upper Limit Register	179
Table 5-98	BIOS Version Register 1	179
Table 5-99	BIOS Version Register 2	179
Table 5-100	BIOS Version Register 3	179
Table 5-101	IPMC BIOS Communication Register 1	180
Table 5-102	IPMC BIOS Communication Register 2	180
Table 5-103	IPMC BIOS Communication Register 3	180
Table 5-104	LPC Scratch Register	180
Table 5-105	IPMC Scratch Register	181
Table 6-1	iSCSI Configuration Menu	190
Table 6-2	Add an iSCSI Attempt Menu	192
Table 6-3	Main Menu	196
Table 6-4	Advanced >> RTM Configuration	199
Table 6-5	Advanced >> Peripheral Configuration	201
Table 6-6	Advanced >> Peripheral Configuration >> Intel VT for Directed I/O (VT-d)	201
Table 6-7	Advanced >> USB Configuration	203
Table 6-8	Processor Configurations	204
Table 6-9	Per Socket Configuration	206
Table 6-10	Common RefCode Configuration	206
Table 6-11	Memory Configuration	207
Table 6-12	Memory RAS Configuration	208
Table 6-13	CPU P-State Control	209
Table 6-14	CPU C-State Control	210
Table 6-15	Package C-State Control	211
Table 6-16	Advanced >> Console Redirection	212
Table 6-17	Advanced >> APEI Configuration	213
Table 6-18	Advanced >> H2O Event Log Config Manager >> Event and Message Pages >>BIOS Event Log Viewer 214	
Table 6-19	Advanced >> IPMI Configuration	215
Table 6-20	Security	216
Table 6-21	Boot	217
Table 6-22	Exit Menu	221
Table 6-23	Logged Error Events	224
Table 6-24	BIOS Supported IPMI Events	225
Table 6-25	BIOS POST Codes	228

Table 7-1	SOL Channels . . . . .	237
Table 7-2	SOL Parameters . . . . .	238
Table 8-1	Supported Global IPMI Commands . . . . .	241
Table 8-2	Supported System Interface Commands . . . . .	241
Table 8-3	Supported Watchdog Commands . . . . .	242
Table 8-4	Supported SEL Device Commands . . . . .	243
Table 8-5	Supported FRU Inventory Commands . . . . .	243
Table 8-6	Supported Sensor Device Commands . . . . .	243
Table 8-7	Supported Chassis Device Commands . . . . .	245
Table 8-8	Configurable System Boot Option Parameters . . . . .	245
Table 8-9	System Boot Options Parameter #96 . . . . .	246
Table 8-10	System Boot Options Parameter #98 . . . . .	246
Table 8-11	System Boot Options Parameter #100 - Data Format . . . . .	248
Table 8-12	System Boot Options Parameter #100 - SET Command Usage . . . . .	249
Table 8-13	System Boot Options Parameter #100 - GET Command Usage . . . . .	250
Table 8-14	System Boot Options Parameter #100 - Supported Parameters . . . . .	251
Table 8-15	Boot Order Devices . . . . .	258
Table 8-16	Supported LAN Device Commands . . . . .	261
Table 8-17	Supported PICMG 3.0 Commands . . . . .	262
Table 8-18	Serial Output Commands . . . . .	264
Table 8-19	Request Data of Set Serial Output Command . . . . .	264
Table 8-20	Response Data of Set Serial Output Command . . . . .	265
Table 8-21	Request Data of Get Serial Output Command . . . . .	265
Table 8-22	Response Data of Get Serial Output Command . . . . .	266
Table 8-23	Feature Configuration Command . . . . .	266
Table 8-24	Set Feature Configuration Command . . . . .	267
Table 8-25	Feature Selector Assignments . . . . .	268
Table 8-26	Get Feature Configuration Command . . . . .	268
Table 8-27	Pigeon Point Extension Commands . . . . .	269
Table 8-28	IPMC Modes . . . . .	271
Table 8-29	Get Status Command Description . . . . .	271
Table 8-30	Get Serial Interface Properties Command Description . . . . .	274
Table 8-31	Set Serial Interface Properties Command Description . . . . .	275
Table 8-32	Get Debug Level Command Description . . . . .	276
Table 8-33	Set Debug Level Command Description . . . . .	277
Table 8-34	Get Hardware Address Command Description . . . . .	278
Table 8-35	Set Hardware Address Command Description . . . . .	278
Table 8-36	Get Handle Switch Command Description . . . . .	279

## List of Tables

---

Table 8-37	Set Handle Switch Command Description	279
Table 8-38	Get Payload Communication Time-Out Command Description	280
Table 8-39	Set Payload Communication Time-Out Command Description	281
Table 8-40	Enable Payload Control Command Description	281
Table 8-41	Disable Payload Control Command Description	282
Table 8-42	Reset IPMC Command Description	282
Table 8-43	Hang IPMC Command Description	283
Table 8-44	Graceful Reset Command Description	284
Table 8-45	Get Payload Shutdown Time-Out Command Description	284
Table 8-46	Set Payload Shutdown Time-Out Command Description	285
Table 8-47	Get Module State Command Description	286
Table 8-48	Enable Module Site Command Description	287
Table 8-49	Disable Module Site Command Description	287
Table 8-50	Reset Carrier SDR Repository Command Description	288
Table 9-1	HPM.1 Components	293
Table 9-2	ATCA-7540 Specific Sensors	300
Table 9-3	Event Data of Boot Bank Sensor	313
Table 9-4	Status Sensor's Sensor Reading	314
Table 9-5	Voltage and Temperature Sensor Devices	315
Table 9-6	FRU Information and SEL at EEPROM Storage	318
Table 9-7	Penguin Edge MAC Address Record	319
Table 9-8	Penguin Edge MAC Address Descriptor	319
Table 9-9	Interface Type Assignments	320
Table 9-10	Power Consumption Depending on the Product Version	321
Table 9-11	IPMC Boot Parameter Storage Format	322
Table A-1	Mechanical Data	329
Table B-1	Penguin Edge Documentation	335
Table B-2	Related Specifications	335

# About this Manual

---

## Overview of Contents

This guide is intended for the users qualified in electronics or electrical engineering. Users must have a working understanding of Peripheral Component Interconnect (PCI), AdvancedTCA<sup>®</sup>, and telecommunications.

The manual contains the following chapters and appendices:

*About this Manual on page 21* lists all conventions and abbreviations used in this manual and outlines the revision history.

*Safety Notes on page 29* lists safety notes applicable to the blade.

*Notice de Sécurité on page 37* provides the French translation of the safety notes section.

*Sicherheitshinweise on page 45* provides the German translation of the safety notes section.

*Chapter 1, Introduction on page 53* describes the main features, mechanical data, and ordering information of the blade.

*Chapter 2, Hardware Preparation and Installation on page 57* outlines the installation requirements, hardware accessories, switch settings, installation and removal procedures.

*Chapter 3, Controls, Indicators, and Connectors on page 77* describes external interfaces of the blade. This includes connectors and LEDs.

*Chapter 4, Functional Description on page 93* describes the functional blocks of the blade in detail. This includes a block diagram, description of the main components used and so on.

*Chapter 5, Maps and Registers on page 113* provides information about the maps and registers of the blade.

*Chapter 6, Basic Input/Output System on page 183* describes the features and setup of the BIOS.

*Chapter 7, Serial over LAN (SOL) on page 237* provides information on how to establish a serial over LAN session on your blade.

*Chapter 8, Supported IPMI Commands on page 241* lists all supported IPMI commands.

*Chapter 9, IPMI Feature Set on page 289* provides information about controlling the blade via IPMI.

*Appendix A, Ruggedized ATCA-7450 Information on page 329* provides information specific to the ATCA-7540-D.

*Appendix B, Related Documentation on page 335* provides links to further blade-related documentation.

# Abbreviations

This document uses the following abbreviations:

<b>Abbreviation</b>	<b>Definition</b>
ADR	Asynchronous DRAM Refresh
AdvancedTCA	Advanced Telecommunications Computing Architecture
APIC	Advanced Programmable Interrupt Controller
ATCA	Advanced Telecommunications Computing Architecture
BBS	Basic Blade Services
BIOS	Basic Input/Output System
CPU	Central Processing Unit
DDR	Double Data Rate
DIMM	Dual Inline Memory Module
DLAB	Divisor Latch Access Bit
DMI	Direct Media Interface
eNVM	Embedded Non-Volatile Memory
ECC	Error-Correction Code
EEPROM	Electrically Erasable Programmable Read-only Memory
EMC	Electromagnetic Compatibility
EMV	Elektromagnetische Verträglichkeit
ESD	Electrostatic Discharge
ETSI	European Telecommunications Standards Institute
FCU	FUF Command-line Utility
FPGA	Field-Programmable Gate Array
FRU	Field Replaceable Unit
FUF	Firmware Upgrade Facility
HAL	Hardware Abstract Layer
HDD	Hard Disk Drive
HPM	Hardware Platform Management

Abbreviation	Definition
IANA	Internet Assigned Numbers Authority
IAP	In Application Programming
IDROM	Identification ROM
IMC	Integrated Memory Controller
IPMB	Intelligent Platform Management Bus
IPMC	Intelligent Platform Management Controller
IPMI	Intelligent Platform Management Interface
IS	In Service
KCS	Keyboard Controller Style
LAN	Local Area Network
LED	Light-emitting Diode
LGA	Land Grid Array
LPC	Low Pin Count
MAC	Media Access Control
ME	Management Engine
MMC	Module Management Controller
NCSI	Network Controller Sideband Interface
NEBS	Network Equipment Building System
NIC	Network Interface Controller
NMI	Non-maskable Interrupt
NVRAM	Non-volatile Random Access Memory
NVMe	Non-volatile Memory Express
OEM	Original Equipment Manufacturer
OOS	Out of Service
PCB	Printed Circuit Board
PCH	Platform Controller Hub
PCI	Peripheral Component Interconnect

## About this Manual

---

<b>Abbreviation</b>	<b>Definition</b>
PCIe	PCI Express
PECI	Platform Environment Control Interface
PEM	Power Entry Module
PICMG	PCI Industrial Computer Manufacturers Group
PIM	Power Input Module
POST	Power-On Self-Test
PROM	Programmable Read-only Memory
PXE	Preboot eXecution Environment
QSFP	Quad Small Form-factor Pluggable
RAS	Reliability, Availability and Serviceability
RMCP	Remote Management Control Protocol
RDIMM	Registered Dual Inline Memory Module
RTC	Real Time Clock
RTM	Rear Transition Module
SAS	Serial Attached SCSI
SATA	Serial ATA
SCSI	Small Computer System Interface
SDR	Sensor Data Record
SEL	System Event Log
SELV	Safety Extra Low Voltage
SFP	Small Form-factor Pluggable
ShMM	Shelf Management Mezzanine
SMBus	System Management Bus
SMI	Serial Management Interface
SOL	Serial over LAN
SPD	Serial Presence Detect
SPI	Serial Peripheral Interface










Abbreviation	Definition
SSC	Spread Spectrum Clocking
SSD	Solid State Device
TPM	Trusted Platform Module
UART	Universal Asynchronous Receiver-Transmitter
UEFI	Unified Extensible Firmware Interface
UPI	Ultra Path Interconnect
USB	Universal Serial Bus
VLP	Very Low Profile
VGA	Video Graphics Adapter

## Conventions

The following table describes the conventions used throughout this manual.

Notation	Description
0x00000000	Typical notation for hexadecimal numbers (digits are 0 through F), for example used for addresses and offsets
0b0000	Same for binary numbers (digits are 0 and 1)
<b>bold</b>	Used to emphasize a word
Screen	Used for on-screen output and code-related elements or commands in body text
<b>Courier + Bold</b>	Used to characterize user input and to separate it from system output
<i>Reference</i>	Used for references and for table and figure descriptions
File > Exit	Notation for selecting a submenu
<text>	Notation for variables and keys
[text]	Notation for software buttons to click on the screen and parameter description
...	Repeated item for example node 1, node 2, ..., node 12

## About this Manual

Notation	Description
.	Omission of information from example/command that is not necessary at the time
..	Ranges, for example: 0..4 means one of the integers 0,1,2,3, and 4 (used in registers)
	Logical OR
	Indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury
	Indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury
	Indicates a property damage message
	Indicates a hot surface that could result in moderate or serious injury
	Indicates an electrical situation that could result in moderate injury or death
<p><b>Use ESD protection</b></p> 	Indicates that when working in an ESD environment care should be taken to use proper ESD practices
	No danger encountered, pay attention to important information

# Summary of Changes

This manual has been revised and replaces all prior editions.

Part Number	Publication Date	Description
6806871A01K	January 2023	Updated Figure 6-26, Table 6-19, Table 6-24, and Table 8-14.
6806871A01J	July 2022	<p>Rebranded to Penguin Edge. Updated SMART Embedded Computing and SMART EC references to Penguin Edge. Updated web links.</p> <p>Added RTM-ATCA-STOR Installation and Use manual to Table B-1.</p> <p>Removed Section A.4 RDIMM Memory Modules.</p> <p>Updated Sections A.1 and A.3.</p> <p>Updated Table 6-20 Security to add TPM Provision line.</p> <p>Updated Table 6-21 Boot to include NVMe RAID (VROC).</p> <p>Updated Table 8-14 to include TPM Provision and RAID parameters. Added TPM related text after table.</p> <p>Updated Section 4.11 BIOS for RAID configuration.</p> <p>Added Section 4.9 VROC RAID on NVMe Modules.</p> <p>Removed Section A.4 RDIMM Memory Modules</p> <p>Updated Figures 1-1, 2-2, 2-3, 3-4, 3-5, A-1.-</p> <p>Updated weights in Sections 1.4 and A.2.</p> <p>Removed DIMM cover info from Sections 1.1 and A.1.</p>
6806871A01H	August 2021	<p>Corrected typo in Figure 3-12.</p> <p>Removed Section 5.1.14 S-State Control Register.</p> <p>Renumbered NMI Control Status Register section and corresponding subsections.</p> <p>Updated Table 5-38 to remove S-State Control Register info.</p> <p>Updated Table 6-4 to add RTM-748X Network QSFP1/2 and 3/4.</p> <p>Updated Table 6-21 to add NVMe Raid (VROC); correct the IPMI boot parameter name for RTM SAS Boot; and add RTM SAS Boot Any Device.</p> <p>Updated Table 8-14 to add parameters rtm_7480_sel1 and rtm_7480_sel2; correct parameter name for RTM SAS Boot; and add RTM SAS Boot Any Device.</p> <p>Updated table 8-15 to include CentOS Linux and RedHat Enterprise Linux.</p>

## About this Manual

Part Number	Publication Date	Description
6806871A01G	May 2021	Corrected SW1 switch label to SW3 in Figure 2-3. Updated SW100.1 info in Sections 5.1.11.2 and 9.4.9.
6806871A01F	February 2021	Updated Table 6-8 Processor Configuration.
6806871A01E	December 2020	Updated Safety Notes and Table 1-1 for 62368-1 compliance. Added Japanese translation of VCCI text.
6806871A01D	September 2020	Added Section 2.5 Jumper Settings; updated Table 1-2 Mechanical Data; and added Section A.2 and Table A-1 Mechanical Data.
6806871A01C	February 2020	Added Designed and Assembled in USA badge to front page. Updated the following sections to add memory options: Section 1.2 Features on page 51, Section 4.3 DDR4 Main Memory on page 90. Updated the following sections to add DIMM cover information: Section 1.1 ATCA-7540 Overview on page 51, Section A.1 ATCA-7540-D Overview on page 317, Section A.2 Mechanical for DIMM info and updated mechanical drawings, and added Section A.3 RDIMM Memory Modules on page 320. Updated Section 2.2.2 Power Requirements.
6806871A01B	September 2019	Rebrand to SMART Embedded Computing. Added Standard Compliance table (Chapter 1, Section 1.2). Updated Section 2.2 Environmental and Power Requirements, Table 2-3 Power Requirements, and Section 2.5.2 M.2 NVMe or SATA Modules. Updated Chapter 4 Functional Description; Section 4.5 title; MAC address info and MAC Address table added to Section 4.6; MAC address info added to Section 4.13. Added RoHS information to Standard Compliances table. Added ATCA-7540-D info to Overview. Replaced Ordering Information table with Ordering and Support Information section. Added Appendix for ATCA-7540-D Information. Updated English and German Safety Notes; added French Safety Notes
6806871A01A	December 2018	Initial Version

# Safety Notes

---

This section provides warnings that precede potentially dangerous procedures throughout this manual. Instructions contained in the warnings must be followed during all phases of operation, service, and repair of this equipment. You should also employ all other safety precautions necessary for the operation of the equipment in your operating environment. Failure to comply with these precautions or with specific warnings elsewhere in this manual could result in personal injury or damage to the equipment.

This manual intends to provide all necessary information to install and handle the product. Because of the complexity of this product and its various uses, we do not guarantee that the given information is complete. If you need additional information, ask your Penguin Solutions™ representative.

The product has been designed to meet the standard industrial safety requirements. It must not be used in safety critical components, life supporting devices, or on aircraft.

Only Penguin Solutions trained personnel or persons qualified in electronics or electrical engineering are authorized to install, remove or maintain the product. The information given in this manual is meant to complete the knowledge of a specialist and must not be used as replacement for qualified personnel.

Keep away from live circuits inside the equipment. Operating personnel must not remove equipment covers. Only factory authorized service personnel or other qualified service personnel may remove equipment covers for internal subassembly or component replacement or any internal adjustment.

Do not install substitute parts or perform any unauthorized modification of the equipment or the warranty may be voided. Contact your local Penguin Solutions representative for service and repair to make sure that all safety features are maintained.

## EMC

The product has been tested in a standard Penguin Edge system and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device in this system, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules, EN 55032 Class A respectively.

These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the product is operated in a commercial, business or industrial environment.

The product conducts, radiates and uses radio frequency energy and, if not installed properly and used in accordance with this user documentation, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

Operating the product in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference. If this occurs, the user will be required to correct the interference at the user's expense.

## Safety Notes

---

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by Penguin Solutions personnel could void the user's regulatory compliance. Board products are tested in a representative system to show compliance with the above mentioned requirements. A proper installation in a compliant system will maintain the required performance.

Use only shielded cables when connecting peripherals to assure that appropriate radio frequency emissions compliance is maintained. For proper EMC shielding, only operate the system with face plates installed and all vacant slots covered or populated with filler cards.

The COM, ETH, and USB interfaces are considered debug/maintenance ports. During normal operation, no cables should be connected to these ports. Cables attached to these ports during maintenance must not exceed a length of 10 feet (3 meters).

**NOTE:** This product has been tested and shipped with the Spread Spectrum Clock (SSC) function disabled. Penguin Solutions does not guarantee functional or EMC compliance with SSC enabled.

### VCCI

This is a Class A product based on the standard of the Voluntary Control Council for Interference (VCCI) by Information Technology Interference. If this equipment is used in a domestic environment, radio disturbance may arise. When such trouble occurs, the user may be required to take corrective actions.

この装置は、クラスA機器です。この装置を住宅環境で使用すると電波妨害を引き起こすことがあります。この場合には使用者が適切な対策を講ずるよう要求されることがあります。

VCCI — A

### Grounding

If the product is not properly grounded, it may be damaged by electrostatic discharge.

The system contains EMI gaskets at the shelf and module level. Make sure that each of the system's parts contact the EMI gasket.

The shelf is also fitted with an ESD jack/snap for use with conductive wrist straps. Make sure the operator uses proper ESD protection.

## Installation

### Personal Injury

This product operates with dangerous voltages that can cause injury or death. Use extreme caution when handling, testing, and adjusting this equipment and its components.

### **Damage of Circuits**

Electrostatic discharge and incorrect product installation and removal can damage circuits or shorten their life.

Before touching the product or electronic components, make sure that you are working in an ESD-safe environment. Hold the product by its edges and do not touch any components or circuits.

### **Data Loss**

Wait until the blue LED is permanently illuminated before removing the blade.

Removing the blade with the blue LED still blinking causes data loss.

### **Restricted Access Area**

This blade is only to be installed in a restricted access area.

### **Damage of Blade and Additional Devices and Modules**

Before installing or removing an additional device or module, read the respective documentation.

Incorrect installation of additional devices or modules may damage the blade or the additional devices or modules.

### **Blade Damage**

Incorrect installation of the blade can cause damage to the blade.

Use handles when installing/removing the blade to avoid damage/deformation to the face plate and/or PCB.

### **Damage to Blade/Backplane or System Components**

Bent pins or loose components can cause damage to the blade, the backplane, or other system components. Carefully inspect the blade and the backplane for both pin and component integrity before installation.

We and our suppliers take significant steps to make sure that there are no bent pins on the backplane or connector damage to the blades prior to leaving the factory. Bent pins caused by improper installation or by inserting boards with damaged connectors could void the warranty for the backplane or blades.

## Safety Notes

---

### System Damage

WARNING: The intra-building port (s) of the equipment or subassembly is suitable for connection to intra-building or unexposed wiring or cabling only. The intra-building port (s) of the equipment or subassembly MUST NOT be metallically connected to interfaces that connect to the outside plant (OSP) or its wiring. These interfaces are designed for use as intra-building interfaces only (Type 2 or Type 4 ports as described in GR-1089) and require isolation from the exposed OSP cabling. The addition of primary protectors is not sufficient protection in order to connect these interfaces metallically to OSP wiring.

The intra-building port (s) of the equipment or subassembly must use shielded intra-building cabling/wiring that is grounded at both ends.

## Rear Transition Modules

### Damage of the RTM

Incorrect installation of the RTM can cause damage to the RTM.

Use handles when installing/removing the RTM to avoid damage/deformation to the face plate and/or PCB.

### Damage to RTM/Backplane or System Components

Bent pins or loose components can cause damage to the RTM, the backplane, or other system components. Carefully inspect the RTM and the backplane for both pin and component integrity before installation.

We and our suppliers take significant steps to ensure there are no bent pins on the backplane or connector damage to the blades/RTMs prior to leaving the factory. Bent pins caused by improper installation or by inserting blades with damaged connectors could void the warranty for the backplane or blades.

## Operation

Make sure that the display devices that are permanently connected to the VGA interface provide a fire enclosure according to the IEC/EN/UL/CSA 62368-1 and 60950-1 requirements.

All other devices that are only connected to the VGA interface for service purposes need supervision during operation and must be disconnected after maintenance.

### Product Damage – Product Surface

High humidity and condensation on the product surface causes short circuits.

Do not operate the product outside the specified environmental limits. Make sure the product is completely dry and there is no moisture on any surface before applying power.



### Overheating and Product Damage

When operating the product, make sure that forced air cooling is available in the shelf or the enclosure.

Operating the product without forced air cooling may lead to overheating and product damage.

When operating the product in areas of electromagnetic radiation, secure the product in the system using the front panel screws. Make sure the product is fully shielded by the enclosure.

### Data Corruption

If power to the unit is removed while a firmware update is in progress to the product's flash memory, the changes will not be saved or the flash memory may be corrupted. In such case, the product is likely to remain in non-operable state and will require reconditioning by qualified repair services.

### Injuries or Short Circuits – Blade or Power Supply

In case the O-Ring diodes of the blade fail, the blade may trigger a short circuit between input line A and input line B so that line A remains powered even if it is disconnected from the power supply circuit (and vice versa).

To avoid damage or injuries, always check that there is no voltage on the line that has been disconnected before continuing your work.

The EMI radiation compliancy of the product has been qualified in a reference system with the Spread Spectrum feature disabled. Please note that the integrator needs to verify the EMI radiation compliancy of other configurations/settings (for example, Spread Spectrum enabled).

## Switch Settings

### Product Malfunction

Do not change settings of switches marked **Reserved**. Switches marked **Reserved** might carry production-related functions and can cause the product to malfunction if setting is changed.

Check and change the setting of any switch not marked **Reserved** before installing the product.

### Product Damage

Check and change switch settings before you install the product.

Setting/resetting the switches during operation can cause product damage.

## Safety Notes

---

Use minimal force when pressing the reset switch. Too much force may damage the reset switch.

## RJ-45 Connector

### System Damage

RJ-45 connectors on the front panel are either twisted-pair Ethernet (TPE) or E1/T1/J1 network interfaces. Connecting an E1/T1/J1 line to an Ethernet connector may damage your system.

- Make sure that TPE connectors near your working area are clearly marked as network connectors.
- Verify that the length of an Ethernet cable connected to a RJ-45 TPE connector does not exceed 100 meters or approximately 328 feet.
- Make sure the TPE connector of the system is connected only to Safety Extra Low Voltage (SELV) circuits.
- If in doubt, ask your system administrator.

For more information, see the documentation of the respective product.

## Laser

### Personal Injury

If a label with the words CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT is affixed to your system, the unit is equipped with a laser device. These devices contain a laser system that produces visible or invisible laser radiation (or both) and can be harmful to the eyes.

Seek supplemental information (power, wavelength, visibility, pulse duration, applicable standards) prior to servicing equipment. Do not look at laser device with an optical instrument at any time.

## Battery

### Blade Damage

Incorrect battery installation may result in a hazardous explosion and blade damage.

Always use the same type of lithium battery as is installed and make sure the battery is installed as described in the manual.

### Data Loss

Installing another battery type than the one mounted at product delivery may cause data loss.

### **PCB and Battery Holder Damage**

Do not use a screw driver to remove the battery from its holder. Removing the battery with a screw driver may damage the PCB or the battery holder.

## **Environment**

Improper disposal of used products may harm the environment. Always dispose of used products according to your country's legislation and manufacturer's instructions.

# Safety Notes

---

# Notice de Sécurité

---

Cette section présente, à travers ce manuel, des avertissements qui précèdent les procédures potentiellement dangereuses. Les instructions contenues dans les avertissements doivent être suivies durant toutes les phases d'opération, de service et de réparation de cet équipement. Vous devriez aussi employer toute autre précaution nécessaire pour l'utilisation de l'équipement dans l'environnement d'opération. Le défaut de se conformer à ces précautions ou aux avertissements spécifiques contenus ailleurs dans ce manuel, peut engendrer des lésions corporelles ou dommages à l'équipement.

Ce manuel fournit toutes les informations nécessaires pour installer et manipuler le produit. En raison de la complexité de ce produit et de ses diverses utilisations, nous ne pouvons pas garantir que les informations fournies sont complètes. Si vous avez besoin d'information supplémentaire, contactez votre représentant Penguin Solutions.

Le produit a été conçu pour répondre aux exigences de sécurité standards de l'industrie. Il ne doit pas être utilisé dans des composantes critiques pour la sécurité, des appareils de maintien de vie ou sur un aéronef.

Seul le personnel formé par Penguin Solutions ou les personnes qualifiées dans le domaine de l'électronique ou du génie électrique sont autorisés à installer, retirer ou faire l'entretien du produit. Les informations contenues dans ce manuel sont destinées à compléter les connaissances d'un spécialiste et ne peuvent être utilisées en remplacement de personnel qualifié.

Ne touchez pas les circuits sous tension à l'intérieur de l'équipement. Le personnel d'opération ne doit pas enlever les couvercles de l'équipement. Seul le personnel de maintenance autorisé par l'usine ou autre personnel de maintenance qualifié peut retirer les couvercles des équipements pour le sous-assemblage interne ou pour le remplacement de composantes, ou pour tout réglage interne.

N'installez aucune pièce de remplacement et n'effectuez aucune modification non autorisée de l'équipement, sinon, la garantie pourrait être annulée. Contactez votre représentant Penguin Solutions local pour le service et la réparation, afin de vous assurer que toutes les fonctions de sécurité soient maintenues.

## Compatibilité électromagnétique (CEM)

Le produit a été testé dans un système Penguin Edge standard et est déclaré conforme aux limites imposées à un appareil numérique de classe A dans ce système, conformément à la section 15 de la Réglementation FCC, EN 55032 classe A, respectivement.

Ces limites sont conçues pour offrir une protection raisonnable contre les interférences néfastes lorsque le produit est utilisé dans un environnement commercial ou industriel.

Le produit conduit, émet et utilise de l'énergie à radiofréquence et, s'il n'est pas installé correctement et utilisé conformément à cette documentation de l'utilisateur, il peut causer des interférences néfastes aux communications radio.

## Notice de Sécurité

---

Opérer ce produit dans une région résidentielle est susceptible de causer des interférences néfastes. Si cela se produit, l'utilisateur devra corriger les interférences à ses frais.

Les changements ou les modifications qui ne sont pas expressément approuvés par Penguin Solutions pourraient annuler la conformité réglementaire de l'utilisateur. Les cartes sont testées dans un système représentatif pour démontrer la conformité aux exigences mentionnées ci-dessus. Une installation adéquate dans un système conforme maintiendra les performances requises.

Utilisez uniquement des câbles blindés lorsque vous connectez des périphériques pour vous assurer que la conformité aux normes d'émission de radiofréquences est respectée. Pour un blindage CEM adéquat, utilisez le système uniquement avec les plaques frontales installées et tous les ports d'extension vacants couverts ou équipés de cartes obturatrices.

Les interfaces COM, ETH, and USB sont considérées comme des ports de débogage/maintenance. Durant une opération normale, aucun câble ne devrait être connecté à ces ports. Les câbles attachés à ces ports pendant la maintenance ne doivent pas excéder une longueur de 10 pieds (3 mètres).

**REMARQUE:** Ce produit a été testé et livré avec la fonction d'horloge à spectre étalé (SSC) désactivée. Penguin Edge ne garantit pas la conformité fonctionnelle ou CEM avec SSC activé.

### VCCI

Ceci est un produit de classe A basé sur la norme du Conseil volontaire de contrôle des interférences (VCCI) par Information Technology Interference (Interférence des technologies de l'information). Si cet équipement est utilisé dans un environnement domestique, des perturbations radio peuvent survenir. Lorsque de tels problèmes surviennent, l'utilisateur peut être amené à prendre des mesures correctrices

### Grounding

Si le produit n'est pas adéquatement mis à la terre, il peut être endommagé par une décharge électrostatique.

Le système contient des joints EMI au niveau des étagères et des modules. Assurez-vous que chacune des pièces du système est en contact avec le joint EMI.

L'étagère est également équipée d'une prise/déclat ESD pour une utilisation avec des dragonnes conductrices. Assurez-vous que l'opérateur utilise la protection de décharge électrostatique ESD appropriée.

# Installation

### **Lésions corporelles**

Ce produit opère à des voltages dangereux qui peuvent causer des blessures ou la mort. Faites preuve de prudence lorsque vous manipulez, testez ou ajustez l'équipement et ses composantes.

### **Endommagement des circuits**

Les décharges électrostatiques, ainsi que l'installation inadéquate et le retrait du produit peuvent endommager les circuits ou réduire leur durée de vie.

Avant de toucher le produit, assurez-vous que vous travaillez dans un environnement exempt de décharge électrostatique. Tenez le produit par ses extrémités et ne touchez aucune composante ou circuit.

### **Perte de données**

Attendez jusqu'à ce que le DEL bleu soit illuminé de façon permanente avant de retirer la lame.

Retirer la lame lorsque le DEL bleu continue de clignoter peut causer une perte de données.

### **Zone à accès restreint**

Ce produit peut seulement être installé dans les zones à accès restreint.

### **Endommagement de la lame et appareils ou modules supplémentaires**

Avant d'installer ou de retirer un appareil ou un module supplémentaire, lisez la documentation appropriée.

Une installation inadéquate d'appareils ou modules supplémentaires peut endommager la lame ou les appareils ou modules supplémentaires.

### **Endommagement de la lame**

Une installation inadéquate de la lame peut lui causer des dommages.

Utilisez les poignées lorsque vous installez/retirez la lame pour éviter un dommage/déformation de la plaque frontale et/ou PCB.

### **Domage à la lame/fond de panier ou aux composantes du système**

Des broches tordues ou des composantes desserrées peuvent causer des dommages à la lame, au fond de panier ou à d'autres composantes du système. Inspectez soigneusement la lame et le fond de panier pour vérifier l'intégrité des broches et des composantes avant l'installation.

## Notice de Sécurité

---

Nous et nos fournisseurs prenons des mesures significatives pour s'assurer qu'il n'y ait pas de broches tordues sur le fond de panier ou qu'il n'y ait pas de dommages de connecteur à la lame/MTA avant de quitter l'usine. Des broches tordues causées par une installation inadéquate ou par l'insertion de cartes avec des connecteurs endommagés peuvent annuler la garantie du fond de panier ou les lames.

### **Endommagement du système**

**AVERTISSEMENT:** le port intra-bâtiment de l'équipement ou du sous-ensemble convient uniquement pour la connexion à un câblage intra-bâtiment ou à un filage non exposé uniquement. Le port intra-bâtiment de l'équipement ou du sous-ensemble **NE DOIT PAS** être relié métalliquement à des interfaces qui se connectent à l'installation extérieure (OSP) ou à son filage. Ces interfaces sont conçues pour être utilisées uniquement comme interfaces intra-bâtiment (ports de type 2 ou de type 4 décrits dans le document GR-1089) et nécessitent une isolation du câblage OSP exposé. L'ajout de protecteurs primaires ne constitue pas une protection suffisante pour connecter ces interfaces de manière métallique au câblage OSP.

Le port intra-bâtiment de l'équipement ou du sous-ensemble doit utiliser un filage/câblage intra-bâtiment blindé mis à la terre aux deux extrémités.

## Modules de Transition Arrière (MTA)

### **Endommagement du MTA**

Une installation inadéquate du MTA peut causer des dommages au MTA.

Utilisez les poignées lorsque vous installez/retirez le MTA pour éviter les dommages/déformation de la plaque frontale et/ou du PCB.

### **Endommagement du MTA/ du fond de panier ou des composants du système**

Des broches tordues ou des composants desserrés peuvent causer des dommages au MTA, au fond de panier ou autres composants du système. Inspectez soigneusement le MTA et le fond de panier pour vérifier l'intégrité des broches et des composants avant l'installation.

Nous et nos fournisseurs prenons des mesures significatives pour s'assurer qu'il n'y ait pas de broches tordues sur le fond de panier ou qu'il n'y ait pas de dommages de connecteur à la lame/MTA avant de quitter l'usine. Des broches tordues causées par une installation inadéquate ou par l'insertion de cartes avec des connecteurs endommagés peuvent annuler la garantie du fond de panier ou les lames.



### Opération

Assurez-vous que les appareils d'affichage qui sont connectés en permanence à l'interface VGA offrent un boîtier anti-incendie conforme aux exigences IEC/EN/UL/CSA 62368-1 et 60950-1.

Tous les autres appareils qui sont seulement connectés à l'interface VGA à des fins de maintenance doivent être surveillés durant l'opération et doivent être déconnectés après la maintenance.

#### **Endommagement du produit – Surface du produit**

Une humidité élevée ou la condensation sur la surface du produit cause des courts-circuits.

Ne pas opérer le produit en dehors des limites environnementales spécifiées. Assurez-vous que le produit soit complètement sec et qu'il n'y ait aucune humidité sur aucune surface avant de mettre en marche.

#### **Surchauffe et endommagement du produit**

Lorsque vous opérez le produit, assurez-vous qu'un refroidissement par air forcé est disponible dans l'étagère ou le boîtier.

Opérer le produit sans refroidissement par air forcé peut mener à une surchauffe et un endommagement du produit.

Lorsque vous opérez le produit dans des régions de rayonnement électromagnétique, sécurisez le produit dans le système en utilisant les vis du panneau avant. Assurez-vous que le produit soit entièrement protégé par le boîtier.

#### **Corruption des données**

Si l'appareil est mis hors tension alors qu'une mise à jour du microprogramme est en cours dans la mémoire flash du produit, les modifications ne seront pas enregistrées ou la mémoire flash pourrait être corrompue. Dans un tel cas, le produit restera probablement dans un état inutilisable et nécessitera un reconditionnement par des services de réparation qualifiés.

#### **Blessures ou courts-circuits – lame ou source de courant**

Si les diodes O-Ring de la lame tombent en panne, la lame peut déclencher un court-circuit entre la ligne d'entrée A et la ligne d'entrée B, de sorte que la ligne A reste alimentée même si elle est déconnectée du circuit d'alimentation (et inversement).

Pour éviter tout dommage ou blessure, vérifiez toujours qu'il n'y ait aucun voltage sur la ligne qui a été déconnectée avant de continuer votre travail.

## Notice de Sécurité

---

La conformité du produit aux rayonnements EMI a été qualifiée dans un système de référence avec la fonction d'horloge à spectre étalé (SSC) désactivée. Veuillez noter que l'intégrateur doit vérifier la conformité aux rayonnements EMI d'autres configurations/réglages (par exemple, avec SSC activé).

## Modifier les Paramètres

### Mauvais fonctionnement du produit

Ne modifiez pas les configurations des commutateurs marqués Reserved. Les commutateurs marqués Reserved peuvent comporter des fonctions liées à la production et entraîner un mauvais fonctionnement du produit si les paramètres sont modifiés.

Vérifiez et modifiez les paramètres de tout commutateur non marqué Reserved avant d'installer le produit.

### Endommagement du produit

Vérifiez et modifiez les paramètres du commutateur avant d'installer le produit.

Le configuration/réinitialisation des commutateurs pendant le fonctionnement peut causer des dommages au produit.

Utilisez une force minimale lorsque vous appuyez sur le commutateur de réinitialisation. Une force excessive pourrait endommager le commutateur de réinitialisation.

## RJ-45 Connector

### Endommagement du Système

Les connecteurs RJ-45 situés sur le panneau avant sont des interfaces réseau Ethernet à paire torsadée (TPE) ou E1/T1/J1. La connexion d'une ligne E1 / T1 / J1 à un connecteur Ethernet peut endommager votre système.

Assurez-vous que les connecteurs TPE situés près de votre zone de travail soient clairement identifiés comme étant des connecteurs réseau.

Vérifiez que la longueur d'un câble Ethernet connecté à un connecteur TPE ne dépasse pas 100 mètres (environ 328 pieds).

Assurez-vous que le connecteur TPE du système soit uniquement connecté aux circuits de sécurité très basse tension (SELV).

En cas de doute, demandez à votre administrateur de système.

Pour plus d'informations, voir la documentation du produit respectif.

### Laser

#### Lésions corporelles

Si une étiquette avec les mots PRODUIT LASER DE CLASSE 1 est apposée sur votre système, l'unité est équipée d'un appareil laser. Ces appareils contiennent un système laser qui produit des rayonnements visibles ou invisibles (ou les deux) et peut être nocif pour les yeux.

Recherchez de l'information supplémentaire (puissance, longueur d'onde, visibilité, durée d'impulsion, normes applicables) avant de faire le maintien de l'équipement. Ne regardez jamais un appareil laser avec un instrument optique.

### Batterie

#### Endommagement de la lame

Une installation inadéquate de la batterie peut causer un risque d'explosion ou d'endommagement de la lame.

Utilisez toujours le même type de batterie au lithium tel qu'installé et assurez-vous que la batterie soit installée tel que décrit dans le manuel.

#### Perte de données

L'installation d'un autre type de batterie que celle montée à la livraison du produit peut causer une perte de données.

#### Endommagement du PCB ou du support de batterie

N'utilisez pas de tournevis pour retirer la batterie de son support. Retirer la batterie avec un tournevis peut endommager le PCB ou le support de batterie.

### Environnement

Une disposition impropre des produits usagés peut être nocif pour l'environnement. liminez les produits usagés toujours conformément à la législation de votre pays et aux instructions du fabricant.



# Sicherheitshinweise

---

Dieses Kapitel enthält Hinweise, die potentiell gefährlichen Prozeduren innerhalb dieses Handbuchs vorrangestellt sind. Beachten Sie unbedingt in allen Phasen des Betriebs, der Wartung und der Reparatur des Systems die Anweisungen, die in diesen Hinweisen enthalten sind. Sie sollten außerdem alle anderen Vorsichtsmaßnahmen treffen, die für den Betrieb des Produktes innerhalb Ihrer Betriebsumgebung notwendig sind. Wenn Sie diese Vorsichtsmaßnahmen oder Sicherheitshinweise, die an anderer Stelle dieses Handbuchs enthalten sind, nicht beachten, kann das Verletzungen oder Schäden am Produkt zur Folge haben.

Penguin Solutions ist darauf bedacht, alle notwendigen Informationen zum Einbau und zum Umgang mit dem Produkt in diesem Handbuch bereit zustellen. Da es sich jedoch um ein komplexes Produkt mit vielfältigen Einsatzmöglichkeiten handelt, können wir die Vollständigkeit der im Handbuch enthaltenen Informationen nicht garantieren. Falls Sie weitere Informationen benötigen sollten, wenden Sie sich bitte an die für Sie zuständige Geschäftsstelle von Penguin Solutions.

Das Produkt wurde so entwickelt, dass es die Anforderungen für die von der Industrie geforderten Sicherheitsvorschriften erfüllt. Es darf nicht in sicherheitskritischen Komponenten, lebenserhaltenden Geräten oder in Flugzeugen verwendet werden.

Einbau, Wartung und Betrieb dürfen nur von durch Penguin Solutions ausgebildetem oder im Bereich Elektronik oder Elektrotechnik qualifiziertem Personal durchgeführt werden. Die in diesem Handbuch enthaltenen Informationen dienen ausschließlich dazu, das Wissen von Fachpersonal zu ergänzen, können dieses jedoch nicht ersetzen.

Halten Sie sich von stromführenden Leitungen innerhalb des Produktes fern. Entfernen Sie auf keinen Fall Abdeckungen am Produkt. Nur werksseitig zugelassenes Wartungspersonal oder anderweitig qualifiziertes Wartungspersonal darf Abdeckungen entfernen, um Komponenten zu ersetzen oder andere Anpassungen vorzunehmen.

Installieren Sie keine Ersatzteile oder führen Sie keine unerlaubten Veränderungen am Produkt durch, sonst verfällt die Garantie. Wenden Sie sich für Wartung oder Reparatur bitte an die für Sie zuständige Geschäftsstelle von Penguin Solutions. So stellen Sie sicher, dass alle sicherheitsrelevanten Aspekte beachtet werden.

## EMV

Das Produkt wurde in einem Penguin Edge Standardsystem getestet. Es erfüllt die für digitale Geräte der Klasse A gültigen Grenzwerte in einem solchen System gemäß den FCC-Richtlinien Abschnitt 15 bzw. EN 55032 Klasse A.

Diese Grenzwerte sollen einen angemessenen Schutz vor Störstrahlung beim Betrieb des Produktes in einer gewerblichen, geschäftlichen oder industriellen Umgebung gewährleisten.

## Sicherheitshinweise

---

Das Produkt leitet, strahlt und verwendet Hochfrequenzenergie und kann, wenn es nicht ordnungsgemäß installiert und in Übereinstimmung mit dieser Bedienungsanweisung verwendet wird, schädliche Störungen des Funkverkehrs verursachen.

Der Betrieb des Produkts in einem Wohnbereich verursacht wahrscheinlich schädliche Interferenzen. In diesem Fall muss der Benutzer die Störung auf seine Kosten beheben.

Änderungen oder Modifikationen, die nicht ausdrücklich von Penguin Solutions genehmigt wurden, können einzuhaltenen Normen oder Vorschriften verletzen. Board Produkte werden in einem repräsentativen System getestet, um die Einhaltung der oben genannten Anforderungen zu gewährleisten. Um die Leistungsfähigkeit zu erhalten ist eine ordnungsgemäße Installation in einem konformen System erforderlich.

Um sicherzustellen, dass die Einhaltung der entsprechenden Vorschriften für die Funkfrequenzen eingehalten werden, verwenden Sie beim Anschließen von Peripheriegeräten nur abgeschirmte Kabel. Zur ordnungsgemäßen EMV-Abschirmung, ist das System nur mit installierten Frontblenden zu betreiben und alle freien Steckplätze sind abzudecken oder mit Steckkarten zu füllen.

Die COM, ETH, und USB Schnittstelle(n) sind als Wartungsanschlüsse zu betrachten. Während des Normalbetriebs sollte an diesen Schnittstellen kein Kabel angeschlossen sein. Im Wartungsfall dürfen die angeschlossene Kabel eine Länge von 10 Fuß (3m) nicht überschreiten.

**HINWEIS:** Dieses Produkt wurde mit deaktivierter „Spread Spectrum Clock“ (SSC) Funktion getestet und ausgeliefert. Penguin Edge garantiert nicht für die Funktion oder EMV Anforderungen mit aktiviertem SSC.

### VCCI

Dies ist ein Klasse A Produkt, basierend auf dem Standard des „Voluntary Control Council for Interference“ (VCCI) von der „Information Technology Interference“. Wenn dieses Gerät in einem häuslichen Umfeld verwendet wird, können Funkstörungen auftreten. Wenn solche Probleme auftreten, muss der Benutzer möglicherweise Korrekturmaßnahmen ergreifen.

### Erdung

Wenn das Produkt nicht richtig geerdet ist, kann es durch elektrostatische Entladungen beschädigt werden.

Das System enthält EMI-Dichtungen sowohl am System als auch an den einzelnen Modulen. Stellen Sie sicher, dass alle Systemteile die EMV-Dichtung berühren.

Am System befinden sich auch ESD-Kontakte fuer ESD-Bändern. Stellen Sie sicher, dass jede Person, die mit dem System arbeitet, diese als ESD-Schutz benutzt.

### Installation von Einsteckkarten

#### **Verletzungsgefahr**

Dieses Produkt wird mit gefährlichen Spannungen betrieben, die zu Verletzungen und Tod führen können. Seien Sie äußerst vorsichtig, wenn Sie dieses Gerät und seine Komponenten handhaben, testen und einstellen.

#### **Beschädigung von Schaltkreise**

Elektrostatistische Entladungen und falsche Installation und Entfernung des Produkts können die Schaltkreise beschädigen oder ihre Lebensdauer verkürzen.

Bevor Sie das Produkt oder ein elektronische Bauteile berühren, vergewissern Sie sich, dass Sie in einem ESD-geschützten Bereich arbeiten. Fassen Sie das Produkt nur an den Kanten an und berühren Sie keine Komponenten oder Schaltkreise.

#### **Datenverlust**

Warten Sie bis die blaue LED durchgehend leuchtet, bevor Sie das bord herausziehen.

Es wird Datenverlust geben, wenn das Bord aus dem System gezogen wird und die blaue LED blinkt noch.

#### **Bereich mit eingeschränktem Zugang**

Installieren Sie das Board in ein System nur in Bereichen mit eingeschränktem Zugang.

#### **Beschädigung des Bord und von Zusatzmodulen**

Lesen Sie daher vor der Installation von Zusatzmodulen die zugehörige Dokumentation.

Fehlerhafte Installation von Zusatzmodulen, kann zur Beschädigung des Blades und der Zusatzmodule führen.

#### **Beschädigung des Blades**

Fehlerhafte Installation des Blades kann zu einer Beschädigung des Blades führen.

Verwenden Sie die Handles, um das Blade zu installieren/deinstallieren. Auf diese Weise vermeiden Sie, dass die Frontblende oder die Platine deformiert oder zerstört werden.

#### **Beschädigung des Blades, der Backplane oder von System Komponenten**

Verbogene Pins oder lose Komponenten können zu einer Beschädigung des Blades, der Backplane oder von Systemkomponenten führen. Überprüfen Sie das Blades und die Rückwandplatine vor der Installation sorgfältig auf Pin- und Komponentenintegrität.

## Sicherheitshinweise

---

Wir und unsere Lieferanten unternehmen alle Anstrengungen um sicherzustellen, dass sich Pins und Stecker von Blades vor dem Verlassen der Produktionsstätte in einwandfreiem Zustand befinden. Verbogene Pins, verursacht durch fehlerhafte Installation oder durch Installation von Blades mit beschädigten Steckern kann die durch gewährte Garantie für Blades und Backplanes erlöschen lassen.

### **Beschädigung des Systems**

Warnung: Die Gebäude-internen Schnittstellen ("intra-building ports" per GR-1089-CORE) der Geräte oder Baugruppen sind nur für gebäudeinterne Verkabelung vorgesehen. Die Schnittstellen sind als Typ 2 oder Typ 4 definiert (wie in GR-1089-Core beschrieben) und erfordern eine Isolation zu Leitungen außerhalb des Gebäudes. Die Gebäude-internen Schnittstellen dürfen keine elektrisch leitende Verbindung zu Leitungen außerhalb des Gebäudes haben. Ein "Primary Protector" (wie in GR-1089-CORE beschrieben) ist keine ausreichende Absicherung, um die Gebäude-internen Schnittstellen mit Leitungen außerhalb des Gebäudes zu verbinden.

Die Gebäude-internen Schnittstellen ("intra-building ports" per GR-1089-CORE) der Geräte oder Baugruppen müssen abgeschirmte Gebäude-interne Verkabelungen verwenden, die an beiden Enden geerdet ist.

## RTMs

### **Beschädigung des RTMs**

Fehlerhafte Installation des RTMs kann zu einer Beschädigung des RTMs führen.

Verwenden Sie die Handles, um das RTM zu installieren/deinstallieren. Auf diese Weise vermeiden Sie, dass die Frontblende oder die Platine deformiert oder zerstört werden.

### **Beschädigung des RTMs, der Backplane oder von System Komponenten**

Verbogene Pins oder lose Komponenten können zu einer Beschädigung des RTMs, der Backplane oder von Systemkomponenten führen. Überprüfen Sie das RTM und die Rückwandplatine vor der Installation sorgfältig auf Pin- und Komponentenintegrität.

Wir und unsere Lieferanten unternehmen alle Anstrengungen um sicherzustellen, dass sich Pins und Stecker von Blades vor dem Verlassen der Produktionsstätte in einwandfreiem Zustand befinden. Verbogene Pins, verursacht durch fehlerhafte Installation oder durch Installation von Blades mit beschädigten Steckern kann die durch gewährte Garantie für Blades und Backplanes erlöschen lassen.

## Betrieb

Stellen Sie sicher, dass die Anzeigergeräte, die dauerhaft an die VGA-Schnittstelle angeschlossen sind, ein Brandgehäuse gemäß den Anforderungen von IEC / EN / UL / CSA 62368-1 und 60950-1 bereitstellen.



Alle anderen Geräte, die nur zu Servicezwecken mit der VGA-Schnittstelle verbunden sind, müssen während des Betriebs überwacht werden und müssen nach den Wartungsarbeiten getrennt werden.

### **Beschädigung des Produktes - Oberflaeche**

Hohe Luftfeuchtigkeit und Kondensat auf der Oberfläche des Produktes können zu Kurzschlüssen führen.

Betreiben Sie das Produkt nicht außerhalb der angegebenen Grenzwerte. Stellen Sie sicher, dass das Produkt vollständig trocken ist und keine Feuchtigkeit auf der Oberfläche ist, bevor Sie den Strom einschalten.

### **Überhitzung und Beschädigung des Produktes**

Stellen Sie beim Betrieb des Produkts sicher, dass das Shelf über eine Zwangsbelüftung verfügt.

Betreiben Sie das Produkt ohne Zwangsbelüftung, kann dies zur Überhitzung und Beschädigung des Produktes führen.

Wenn das Produkt in Bereichen mit elektromagnetischer Strahlung betrieben wird, sichern Sie das Produkt mit den Schrauben an der Frontplatte im System. Stellen Sie sicher, dass das Produkt vollständig vom Gehäuse abgeschirmt ist.

### **Datenschaden**

Wenn die Stromversorgung des Geräts während eines Firmware-Updates des Flash Memory des Geräts unterbrochen wird, werden die Änderungen nicht gespeichert oder der Flash Memory kann beschädigt werden. In diesem Fall bleibt das Produkt wahrscheinlich in einem nicht betriebsbereiten Zustand und muss von qualifizierten Reparaturdiensten überholt werden.

### **Verletzungen oder Kurzschlüsse – Blade oder Stromversorgung**

Falls die ORing Dioden des Blades durchbrennen, kann das Blade einen Kurzschluss zwischen den Eingangsleitungen A und B verursachen. In diesem Fall ist Leitung A immer noch unter Spannung, auch wenn sie vom Versorgungskreislauf getrennt ist (und umgekehrt).

Um Schäden oder Verletzungen zu vermeiden, überprüfen Sie vor dem Fortsetzen Ihrer Arbeit immer, dass keine Spannung an der Leitung anliegt.

Die Messung der EMV Abstrahlung wurde in einem Referenzsystem mit deaktiviertem Spread Spectrum-Feature qualifiziert. Beachten Sie, dass der Betreiber die EMV-Abstrahlungsanforderung von anderer Anforderungen / Einstellungen überprüfen muss (z. B. Spread Spectrum aktiviert).

### Schaltereinstellungen

#### **Fehlfunktion des Produkt**

Ändern Sie nicht die Schaltereinstellungen, die als **Reserved** gekennzeichnet sind. Schalter, die mit **Reserved** gekennzeichnet sind, können produktionsbedingte Funktionen enthalten und zu einer Fehlfunktion des Produktes führen, wenn die Einstellungen geändert werden.

Überprüfen und ändern Sie die Schaltereinstellung, die nicht mit **Reserved** gekennzeichnet sind, bevor Sie das Blade installieren.

#### **Beschädigung des Produkt**

Überprüfen und ändern Sie die Schaltereinstellung, bevor Sie das Produkt installieren.

Das Verstellen von Schaltern während des laufenden Betriebes kann zur Beschädigung des Produkt führen.

Drücken Sie den Reset Schalter nur leicht. Zu viel Druck kann den Reset Schalter beschädigen.

### RJ-45 Connector

#### **Beschädigung des Systems**

Bei den RJ-45-Anschlüssen an der Vorderseite handelt es sich entweder um Twisted-Pair-Ethernet- (TPE) oder E1 / T1 / J1-Netzwerkschnittstellen. Wenn Sie eine E1 / T1 / J1-Leitung an einen Ethernet-Anschluss anschließen, kann Ihr System beschädigt werden.

- Kennzeichnen Sie deshalb TPE-Anschlüsse in der Nähe Ihres Arbeitsplatzes deutlich als Netzwerkanschlüsse.
- Stellen Sie sicher, dass die Länge eines Ethernet Kabels, das mit Ihrem System verbundenen ist, 100 m oder 328 feet nicht überschreitet.
- Stellen Sie sicher, dass der TPE-Anschluss des Systems nur mit einem Sicherheits-Kleinspannungs- Stromkreis (SELV - Safety Extra Low Voltage) verbunden werden.
- Bei Fragen wenden Sie sich an Ihren Systemverwalter.

Weitere Informationen finden Sie in der Dokumentation des jeweiligen Produkt.

### Laser

#### **Verletzungsgefahr**

Wenn ein Etikett mit der Aufschrift CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT auf Ihrem System angebracht ist, ist das Gerät mit einem Lasergerät ausgestattet. Diese Geräte enthalten ein Lasersystem, das sichtbare oder unsichtbare Laserstrahlung (oder beides) erzeugt und für die Augen schädlich sein kann.

Suchen Sie zusätzliche Informationen (Leistung, Wellenlänge, Sichtbarkeit, Impulsdauer, anwendbare Normen), bevor Sie Geräte warten. Blicken Sie niemals mit einem optischen Gerät auf das Lasergeräte.

### Batterie

#### **Beschädigung des Blades**

Unsachgemäßer Einbau der Batterie kann gefährliche Explosionen und Beschädigungen des Blades zur Folge haben.

Verwenden Sie deshalb nur den Batterietyp, der auch bereits eingesetzt wurde und befolgen Sie die Installationsanleitung.

#### **Datenverlust**

Wenn Sie einen anderen Batterietyp installieren als den, der bei Lieferung des Produkts montiert wurde, kann dies zu Datenverlust führen.

#### **Beschädigung des PCBs und der Batteriehalterung**

Benutzen Sie keinesfalls einen Schraubenzieher, um die Batterie aus der Halterung zu nehmen. Wenn Sie die Batterie mit einem Schraubenzieher ausbauen, können das PCB und die Batteriehalterung beschädigt werden.

### Umweltschutz

Unsachgemäße Entsorgung von gebrauchten Produkten kann die Umwelt schädigen.

Entsorgen Sie gebrauchte Produkte stets gemäß der in Ihrem Land gültigen Gesetzgebung und den Empfehlungen des Herstellers.



# Introduction

---

## 1.1 ATCA-7540 Overview

The Penguin Edge™ **ATCA-7540** is a high-performance ATCA compliant single board computer designed for demanding storage and processing applications. The ATCA-7540 is designed to meet PICMG 3.0 power or equivalent. For further information on the PICMG 3.0 and other specifications, refer to [Appendix B, Related Documentation, on page 335](#).

The ruggedized configuration of the ATCA-7540 blade and is electrically identical to the non-ruggedized ATCA-7540 blade. It features a specially designed alignment block that enables the blade to be secured in a ruggedized AXP1440 chassis which includes special screws to securely hold the ruggedized ATCA-7540 to the backplane for rugged environments. Specific information for the ruggedized configuration of the ATCA-7540 can be found in [Appendix A, Ruggedized ATCA-7450 Information, on page 329](#).



**SMART Embedded Computing company branding has changed to Penguin Solutions™. The SMART Embedded Computing product line has been rebranded as Penguin Edge™. No changes were made to the ATCA-7540 product line through this rebranding of the company and product line in April of 2022.**

## 1.2 Features

The main features of the Penguin Edge ATCA-7540 blade are as follows:

- Designed for NEBS and ETSI compliance (configuration dependent)
- Dual socket Intel® Xeon® Scalable Processor (codename: Skylake)
  - P0 socket FCLGA3647
- Standard ATCA-7540 configuration:
  - Intel® Xeon® Silver 4114T 10-cores 2.2GHz 85W or Gold 5119T 14-cores 1.9GHz 85W
  - DDR4 memory operating at 2400MT/s
  - Six independent DDR4 memory channels per CPU with one RDIMM per channel. Each RDIMM can support 32GB for a total of 384GB of memory.
  - 8GB, 16GB and 32GB DDR4 modules in Very Low Profile (VLP) available
  - Optional enterprise-grade, very high-reliability memory is available
- Single slot ATCA form factor
- Direct CPU to PCI Express (PCIe) interface providing 48 PCIe Gen3 lanes (8Gbps)
- Next Generation Communications Platform from Intel, with on-board Intel® Lewisburg Platform Controller Hub (PCH)

## Introduction

- 10GbE controller
- PCH SKU with QuickAssist Accelerators (Optional)
- Dual Gigabit Ethernet AdvancedTCA Base Interfaces according to PICMG 3.0 based on Intel® i350 Powerville
- Dual 40GBASE-KR4, 10GBASE-KR, 10GBASE-KX4, 1000Base-KX: Option1, 1-K, 1-KR, 9, 9-K, 9-KR Ethernet AdvancedTCA Fabric Interfaces according to PICMG 3.1 based on Intel® XL710 Fortville
- Single 1GbE port on face plate
- Serial over LAN via AdvancedTCA Base Interface
- CPU and I/O virtualization support
- Power management support
- Crisis recovery for BIOS, IPMC Firmware, and FPGA code
- Storage slot to carry up two M.2 NVMe or SATA SSD modules

## 1.3 Standard Compliance

The product is designed to meet the following standards.

Table 1-1 Standard Compliance

Standard	Description
UL/EN/IEC 62368-1 and 60950-1 UL/CSA 62368-1 and 60950-1	Legal safety requirements
CISPR 22:2008 CISPR 32:2015 EN 55022:2010 EN 55032:2012 FCC Part 15A Subpart B EN 300386 CISPR 24:2015 EN 55024:2010 NEBS Standard GR-1089 CORE	Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC) requirements on system level (predefined Penguin Edge system)
Directive (EU) 2015/863 (amending Annex II to Directive 2011/65/EU)	Directive on the restriction of the use of certain hazardous substances in electrical and electronic equipment (RoHS)
NEBS Standard GR-63-CORE ETSI EN 300019 series	NEBS level three Product is designed to support NEBS level three. The compliance tests must be done with the customer target system.
PICMG 3.0 and 3.1	Defines mechanics, blade dimensions, power distribution, power and data connectors, and system management.

## 1.4 Mechanical Data

The following table provides mechanical data for the blade.

Table 1-2 Mechanical Data

Feature	Value
Dimensions (width x height x depth)	30mm x 351mm x 312mm (1.2 x 13.8 x 12.3 inches)
Weight	3.45kg (7.6 lbs)

## 1.5 Estimated Mean Time Between Failures (MTBF)

Per Telcordia SR-332, Issue 4, for a ground benign 40°C ambient environment, the ATCA-7540 MTBF is 362,000 hours at 60% confidence level. This does not include the RDIMM or M.2 modules. The MTBF for twelve 16GB RDIMM modules is 197,000 hours. The MTBF for a single M.2 SSD module is 1,483,000 hours. Contact a Penguin Solutions representative for alternate environments or temperatures.

## 1.6 Ordering and Support Information

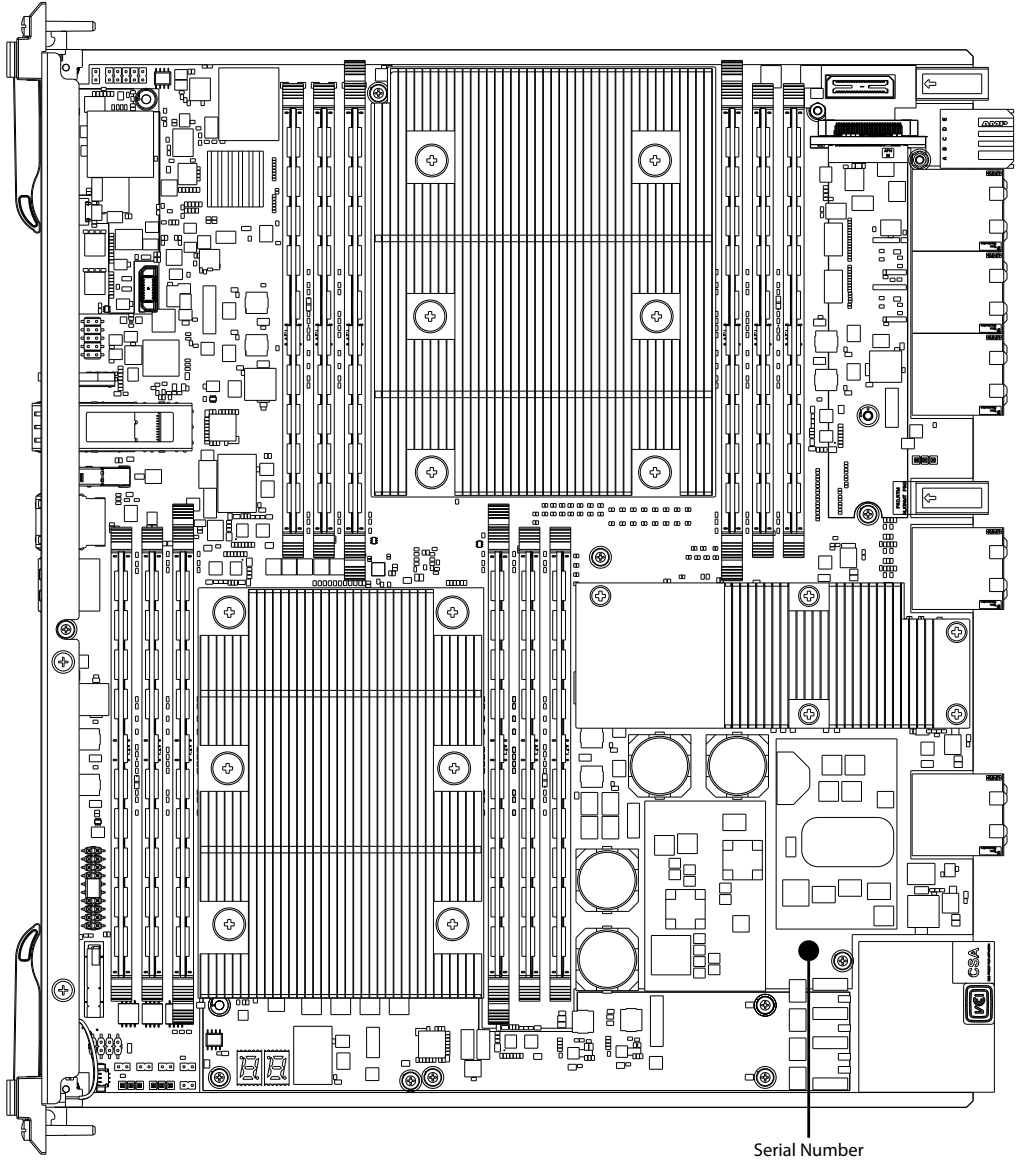
Please reference the data sheets for the Penguin Edge ATCA-7540 blade variants and blade accessories available. Please refer to [Appendix B, Related Documentation, on page 335](#) or consult your local Penguin Solutions sales representative for the availability of other variants.

For technical assistance, documentation, or to report product damage or shortages, contact your local Penguin Solutions sales representative or visit

# 1.7 Product Identification

The following figure shows the location of the serial number label.

Figure 1-1 Serial Number Location





# Hardware Preparation and Installation

---

## 2.1 Unpacking and Inspecting the Blade

### NOTICE

#### Damage of Circuits

Electrostatic discharge and incorrect blade installation and removal can damage circuits or shorten their life.

Before touching the blade or electronic components, make sure that you are working in an ESD-safe environment.

### Shipment Inspection

To inspect the shipment, perform the following steps.

1. Verify that you have received all items of your shipment:
  - One ATCA-7540 Series blade
  - One printed copy of *Quick Start Guide*
  - One printed copy of *Safety Notes Summary*
  - Any optional items ordered
2. Check your shipment and report any damage or differences to the Contact Center at <https://www.penguinsolutions.com/edge/support/>.
3. Remove the desiccant bag shipped together with the blade and dispose of it according to your country's legislation.



**The blade is thoroughly inspected before shipment. If any damage has occurred during transportation or any items are missing, please notify the Contact Center via <https://www.penguinsolutions.com/edge/support/>.**

## 2.2 Environmental and Power Requirements

In order to meet the environmental requirements, the blade has to be tested in the system in which it is to be installed. The blade must be connected to a safety extra low voltage (SELV) circuit.

# Hardware Preparation and Installation

## 2.2.1 Environmental Requirements

The environmental conditions must be tested and proven in the shelf configuration used. The conditions refer to the surroundings of the blade within the user environment. The product supports the specified temperature conditions in a shelf with the airflow characteristics meeting at least the **CP-TA B.4** cooling profile (see [Table 2-1 on page 58](#)).



**The environmental requirements of the blade may be further limited due to installed accessories, such as hard disks or mezzanine modules, with more restrictive environmental requirements.**

**Operating temperatures refer to the temperature of the air circulating around the blade and not to the actual component temperature.**

	<p><b>Blade Damage – Blade Surface</b></p> <p>High humidity and condensation on the blade surface causes short circuits.</p> <p>Do not operate the blade outside the specified environmental limits. Make sure the blade is completely dry and there is no moisture on any surface before applying power.</p> <p><b>Blade Overheating and Blade Damage</b></p> <p>Operating the blade without forced air cooling may lead to blade overheating and thus blade damage.</p> <p>When operating the blade, make sure that forced air cooling is available in the shelf.</p>
--	---

Table 2-1 Environmental Requirements

Requirement	Operating	Non-Operating
Temperature	<p>Normal Operation: +5°C (41°F) to +40°C (104°F) according to Telcordia GR-63-CORE (NEBS) and ETSI EN 300 019-1-3, Class 3.1</p> <p>Exceptional Operation: -5°C (23°F) to +55°C (131°F) according to Telcordia GR-63-CORE (NEBS)</p> <p>Note: This exceeds ETSI EN 300 019-1-3, Class 3.1E requirements (-5°C to +45°C)</p>	<p>-40°C (-40°F) to +70°C (158°F) according to Telcordia GR-63-CORE (NEBS) and ETSI EN 300 019-1-2, Class 2.3</p> <p>Note: This exceeds ETSI EN 300 019-1-1, Class 1.2 requirements (storage from -25°C (-13°F) to +55°C (131°F))</p> <p>Note: This may be further limited by installed accessories.</p>
Forced Air Flow Air Volume Pressure Loss (Reference to see level)	40CFM	NA

## Hardware Preparation and Installation

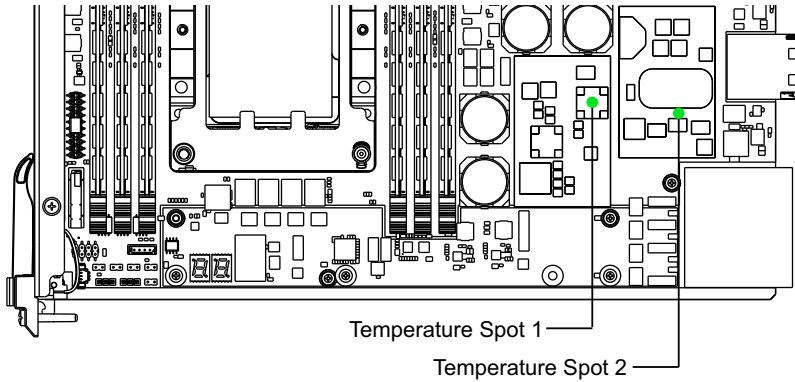
Table 2-1 Environmental Requirements (continued)

Requirement	Operating	Non-Operating
Temperature Change	± 0.5°C/min according to Telcordia GR-63-CORE	± 1°C/min
Relative Humidity	Normal Operation: 5% RH to 85% RH non-condensing Exceptional Operation: 5% RH to 95% RH non-condensing According to Telcordia GR-63-CORE (NEBS) and EN 300 019-1-3, Classes 3.1 and 3.1E	5% to 95% non-condensing according to Telcordia GR-63-CORE (NEBS) and EN 300 019-1-1, Classes 1.2 and 2.3
Vibration (TBD)	1g from 5 to 200Hz and back to 5Hz at a rate of 0.25 octave/minute (according to Telcordia GR-63-core)	5-20Hz at 0.01g <sup>2</sup> /Hz (according to Telcordia GR-63-core and ETSI EN 300 019-2-2) 20-200Hz at -3 dB/octave Hz (according to Telcordia GR-63-core and ETSI EN 300 019-2-2) Random 5-20Hz at 1m <sup>2</sup> /s <sup>3</sup> Random 20-200Hz at 3m <sup>2</sup> /s <sup>3</sup>
Altitude	984 feet to 9842 feet (-300m to +3,000m)	984 feet to 9842 feet (-300m to +3,000m)
Shock	Half-sine, 11ms, 98 feet/s <sup>2</sup> (30m/s <sup>2</sup> )	Blade-level packaging Half-sine, 6ms at 590 feet/s <sup>2</sup> (180m/s <sup>2</sup> )
Free Fall	-	3.9 feet (1.2m) packaged (according to ETSI 300 019-2-2) .33 inch (100 mm) unpackaged (according to Telcordia GR-63-core)

During the safety qualification of this blade, the following on-board locations were identified as critical with regards to the maximum temperature during blade operation. To guarantee proper blade operation and to ensure safety, you have to make sure that the temperatures at the locations specified in the following figure are not exceeded. If not stated otherwise, the temperatures should be measured by placing a sensor exactly at the given locations.

# Hardware Preparation and Installation

Figure 2-1 Location of Critical Temperature Spots (Blade Top Side)



### Exact locations of critical temperature spots:

Temperature Spot 1: On the PIM (U45 located on top of the transformer). Maximum up to 194°F (90°C).

Temperature Spot 2: On the 48V/12V DC/DC (U193 located on the PCB, next to the transformer). Maximum up to 257°F (125°C).

Table 2-2 Critical Temperature Limits

Component	CPU Thermal Design Power	Max Case or Junction Temperature
All product variants using the following processor: Intel® Xeon® Gold 5119T	85W	Tj max ~189°F (~87°C) (CPU specific and readable in TEMPERATURE_TARGET register)
All product variants using the following processor: Intel Xeon Silver 4116T	85W	Tj max ~189°F (~87°C) (CPU specific and readable in TEMPERATURE_TARGET register)

If you integrate the blade into your own system, contact your local sales representative for further safety information.

## 2.2.2 Power Requirements

The blade's power requirements depend on the installed hardware accessories. If you want to install accessories on the blade, the load of the respective accessory has to be added to that of the blade. In [Table 2-4 on page 61](#) you will find typical examples of power requirements with and without accessories installed. For information on the accessories' power requirements, refer to the documentation delivered together with the respective accessory or consult your local Penguin Solutions representative for further details.

The blade must be connected to a safety extra low voltage (SELV) circuit.

*Table 2-3 Power Requirements*

Characteristic	Value
Rated Voltage	-48VDC
Operating Voltage	-39VDC to -60VDC

The following table provides information about the typical and maximum power consumption of ATCA-7540 variants equipped with RDIMMs, SSDs, and RTMs. The table also contains power consumption details of the blade without any rear transition module (RTM).

*Table 2-4 Power Consumption of ATCA-7540 with and without RTM*

Blade Variant	Configuration	Maximum Power Consumption	Typical Power Consumption
ATCA-7540 variant with 85W 14-cores processors and 12 DIMM sockets (ATCA-7540-C06)	With RTM-ATCA-7360-L or RTM-ATCA-736x-DD	284W	242W
	Without any RTM	272W	234W

## Hardware Preparation and Installation

---

The blade provides two independent power inputs according to the AdvancedTCA specification. Each input has to be equipped with an additional fuse of 90A maximum located either in the shelf where the blade is installed or the power entry module (PEM).



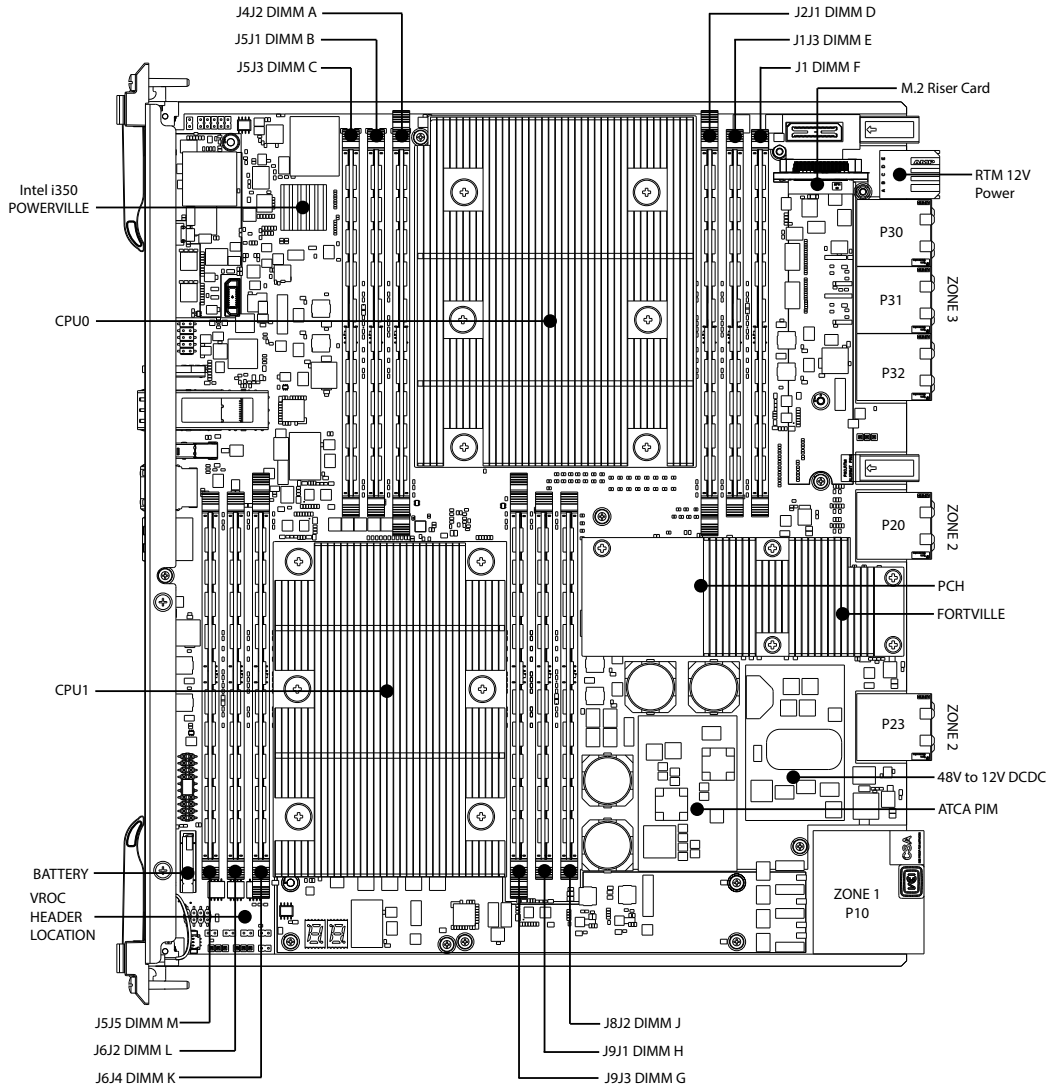
**The power consumption has been measured using specific boards in a configuration considered to represent the worst-case (maximum memory population, 2x M.2 NVMe or SATA modules, with RTM-ATCA-7360-L or RTM-ATCA-736x-DD) and with software simultaneously exercising as many functions and interfaces as possible. This includes a particular load software provided by Intel designed to stress the processors to reach their thermal design power specification.**

**Any difference in the system configuration or the software executed by the processors may affect the actual power dissipation. Depending on the actual operating configuration and conditions, customers may see slightly higher power dissipation, or it may even be significantly lower. There is also a dependency on the batch variance of the major components like the processor and DIMMs used. Hence, we do not represent or warrant that measurement results of a specific board provide guaranteed maximum values for a series of boards.**

## 2.3 Blade Layout

The following figure shows the location of components on the ATCA-7540.

Figure 2-2 ATCA-7540 Blade Layout



## 2.4 Switch Settings

All mechanical switches are OFF in their default configuration. Switches reside on the component side 1 and are not covered by any other component. The following figure depicts their location.

Figure 2-3 Switch Location (Top Side of the Blade)

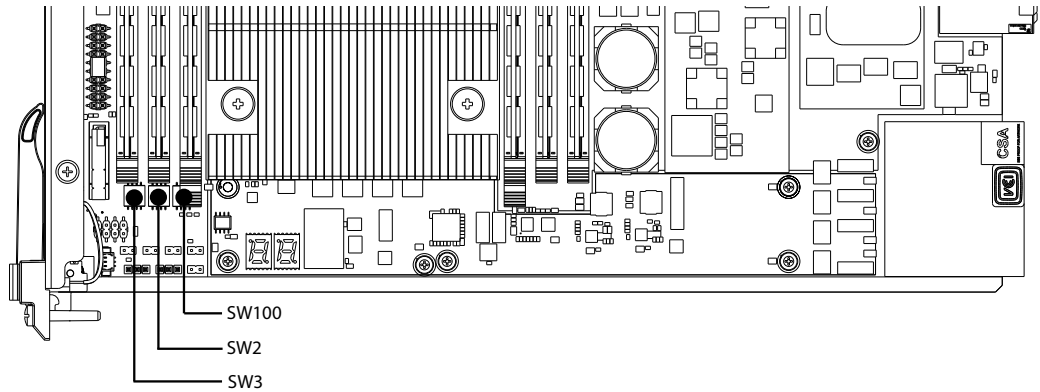


Table 2-5 Switch SW100 Settings

Switch	Function	Default	
SW100.1	Payload Power Control OFF = Payload power is controlled by IPMC ON = Payload power is forced on and IPMC is disabled	OFF	Payload power is controlled by IPMC
SW100.2	Reserved. Connected to FPGA.	OFF	Reserved
SW100.3	Reserved. Connected to FPGA.	OFF	Reserved
SW100.4	RTM Power Control OFF = RTM power is controlled by IPMC ON = RTM power is forced on	OFF	RTM power is controlled by IPMC



Table 2-6 Switch SW2 Settings

Switch	Function	Default	
SW2.1	Serial Line #1 and #2 Routing OFF = FPGA-COM#1 to Face plate FPGA-COM#2 to RTM ON = FPGA-COM#1 to RTM FPGA-COM#2 to Face plate	OFF	FPGA-COM#1 to Face plate and COM#2 to RTM
SW2.2	IPMC Debug Console Routing OFF = IPMC Debug Console at 3-pin Header ON = IPMC Debug Console at Face plate instead of FPGA COM	OFF	IPMC Debug Console at 3-pin Header
SW2.3	FPGA_PROM_SEL OFF = High => Use default FPGA EEPROM ON = Low => Use Fail Safe FPGA EEPROM	OFF	Use default EEPROM FPGA configuration
SW2.4	OFF = Reset push button enabled ON = Reset push button disabled	OFF	Enable Face plate reset push button

Table 2-7 Switch SW3 Settings

Switch	Function	Default	
SW3.1	Manual "Default SPI Boot Flash" / "Recovery SPI Boot Flash" select enable OFF = IPMI selects Boot Flash ON = SW3.2 selects Boot Flash	OFF	IPMI selects Boot Flash
SW3.2	SW3.2 controls Boot flash select if SW3.1 is ON OFF = Boot from "Default SPI Boot Flash" device ON = Boot from "Recovery SPI Boot Flash" device	OFF	Boot from "Default SPI Boot Flash" device if SW3.1 is ON
SW3.3	OFF = Normal BIOS output on serial console ON = Display BIOS POST codes on serial console	OFF	Normal BIOS output on serial console
SW3.4	OFF = Use current BIOS configuration settings ON = Load default BIOS configuration settings	OFF	Use current BIOS configuration settings

## 2.5 Jumper Settings

Jumpers are preset by the factory to the default configuration shown in the following table. All the jumpers are for debugging and manufacturing only. They should not be changed by the customers.

Figure 2-4 Jumper Locations (Top Side of the Blade)

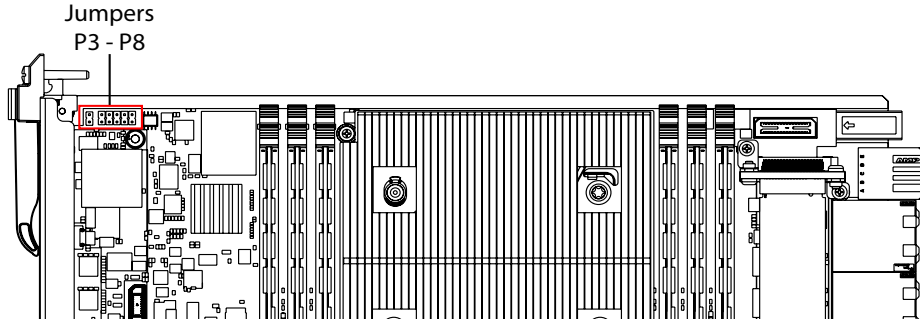


Table 2-8 Jumper Configuration

Jumper	Description	Function
P3	CMOS/RTC Clear	Removed (default) - Normal Installed - CMOS/RTC Clear
P4	Not supported	Removed (default)
P5	Not supported	Removed (default)
P6	Flash Descriptor Security Override	Removed (default) – Enable security measures defined in the Flash Descriptor. Installed (override) – Disable Flash Descriptor Security. This should only be installed in manufacturing/debug environments.
P7	Not supported	Removed (default)
P8 <sup>1</sup>	Top Swap Override	Removed – Enable “Top Swap” mode. This inverts an address bit at the top of system BIOS. Installed (default) – Disable “Top Swap” mode.

1. A jumper at P8 must always be installed and “Top Swap” mode is not supported for BIOS recovery at this time. There are two BIOS boot banks that can be switched between for recovery. They can also be programmed independent of payload power.

## 2.6 Installing the Blade Accessories

The following additional components are available for the blade:

- Registered Dual Inline Memory Module (RDIMM)
- M.2 NVMe or SATA modules
- Rear transition modules

They are described in detail in the following sections. For order numbers, refer to the section [Ordering and Support Information on page 55](#).

### 2.6.1 RDIMM Memory Modules

The blade provides 12 memory slots for main memory RDIMM modules of type DDR4 VLP. You may install and/or remove RDIMM memory modules in order to match the main memory size to your needs. The corresponding installation/removal procedures are described in this section.

For the location of the RDIMM memory modules, see [ATCA-7540 Blade Layout on page 63](#).

Each processor provides six memory channels with one RDIMM socket each. The RDIMMs can be installed in any order but at least one RDIMM must be installed on CPU#0.

Figure 2-5 RDIMM Sockets

CPU	Memory Channel	RDIMM Socket
CPU#0	A	J4J2
	B	J5J1
	C	J5J3
	D	J2J1
	E	J1J3
	F	J1
CPU#1	G	J8J2
	H	J9J1
	J	J9J3
	K	J6J4
	L	J6J2
	M	J5J5

### NOTICE

#### Damage of Circuits

Electrostatic discharge, incorrect blade installation and removal can damage circuits or shorten their life.

Before touching the blade or electronic components, make sure you are working in an ESD-safe environment.

### NOTICE

For optimal performance, all memory channels A through M should be populated. A balanced RDIMM configuration is recommended; that is, every CPU uses the same type and amount of RDIMMs.

The BIOS does not support certain RDIMM modules where the SPD data at offset 0x85 is 97 (register and data manufacturer = Texas Instruments) and offset 0x86 (revision) = 0x0b. The only known RDIMM with this configuration is Micron 16GB 2Rx4 PC4-2133 VLP RDIMM module, part number MTA36ADS2G72PZ-2G1A1JG. Do not use this Micron RDIMM or any RDIMM with the referenced register manufacturer ID and revision.

Only qualified DDR4 RDIMMs (Single Ranked or Dual Ranked RDIMM) are recommended because of the thermal limit/budget of the blade and the high variation of the power consumptions of different RDIMM types. For thermal reasons, no 4-rank RDIMMs and no dual-die RDIMMs are allowed.

### Installation Procedure

To install an RDIMM module, proceed as follows:

1. Remove blade from the system as described in [Installing and Removing the Blade on page 70](#).
2. Open the locks of memory module socket.
3. Press the module carefully into socket. As soon as the memory module has been fully inserted, the locks automatically close.
4. If applicable, repeat the steps 2 to 3 to install further modules.

### NOTICE

#### Damage of Circuits

Electrostatic discharge, incorrect blade installation and removal can damage circuits or shorten their life.

Before touching the blade or electronic components, make sure you are working in an ESD-safe environment.

### Removal Procedure

To remove an RDIMM module, proceed as follows:

1. Remove the blade from the system as described in [Installing and Removing the Blade on page 70](#).
2. Open the locks of socket at both sides. The memory module is automatically lifted up.
3. Remove the module from the socket.
4. Repeat the steps 2 to 3 in order to remove further memory modules.

## 2.6.2 M.2 NVMe or SATA Modules

ATCA-7540 provides a modular solution for up to two M.2 NVMe or SATA modules. ATCA-7540 blades have an M.2 riser card installed. The M.2 riser card provides two M.2 sockets with Type 3 pinout and keying. Each socket will support the installation of an NVMe or SATA M.2 SSD module. The SSD modules may be Type 2280 (80mm) or Type 22110 (110mm) modules.

**NOTE:** A 1TB NVMe M.2 SSD module and hardware is available as an accessory kit (NVMe M.2 1TB) and is not part of most ATCA-7540 blade configurations.

### NOTICE

#### Damage of Circuits

Electrostatic discharge, incorrect blade installation and removal can damage circuits or shorten their life.

Before touching the blade or electronic components, make sure you are working in an ESD-safe environment.

## Hardware Preparation and Installation

---

### Installation Procedure

For the M.2 SSD module installation procedure, refer to the *SSD Module and Hardware Kit NVMe-M.2-1TB Quick Start Guide* (P/N 6806868A01), which can be found using the Technical Documentation search page at <https://www.penguinsolutions.com/edge/support/>.

If you need to replace the SSD module, follow the Removal Procedure below before installing the new SSD module.

### Removal Procedure

To remove an M.2 NVMe or SATA module proceed as follows:

1. Remove the blade from the system as described in *Installing and Removing the Blade on page 70*.
2. Remove the screw holding the SSD module.
3. Remove the SSD module from the blade.
4. Reinstall the blade into the system as described in *Installing and Removing the Blade on page 70*.

## 2.7 Installing and Removing the Blade

The blade is fully compatible to the AdvancedTCA standard and is designed to be used in AdvancedTCA shelves.

The blade can be installed in any AdvancedTCA node slot. Do not install it in an AdvancedTCA hub slot.

### NOTICE

#### Damage of Circuits

**Electrostatic discharge, incorrect blade installation and removal can damage circuits or shorten their life.**

**Before touching the blade or electronic components, make sure you are working in an ESD-safe environment.**

#### Blade Malfunctioning

**Incorrect blade installation and removal can result in blade malfunctioning.**

**When plugging the blade in or removing it, do not press on the face plate. Use the handles.**

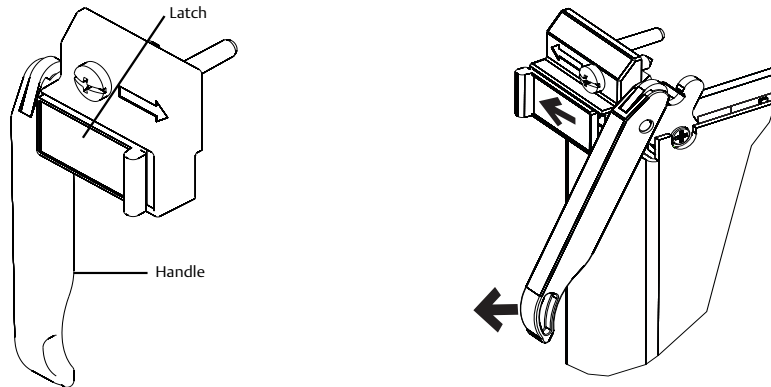
### 2.7.1 Installing the Blade

The following procedure describes the installation of the blade. It assumes that your system is powered on. If your system is not powered on, you can disregard the blue LED and skip the respective step. In this case, it is purely a mechanical installation.

#### Installation Procedure

To install the blade into an ATCA shelf:

1. Visually inspect the blade and backplane connectors for damage or bent pins before attempting to insert a blade. If any connector damage or pin damage is observed, stop inserting the blade and send the damaged item to proper repair channels.
2. Prior to installing the blade into the slot, slide the top and bottom latches into the handle release position and pull the handles outward to unlatch the handles from the face plate. Do not pull the handles fully outward.

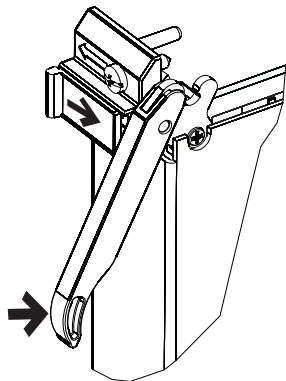


3. Insert the blade into the shelf by aligning the top and bottom edges of the blade in the card guides of the shelf.
4. Apply equal and steady pressure to the blade to carefully slide the blade into the shelf until you feel resistance. Continue to push the blade gently until the blade connectors engage.

## Hardware Preparation and Installation

---

5. Fully insert the blade and turn the handle towards the face plate. The latch automatically slides inwards and locks the handle.



**If you feel that you need an abnormal amount of force during blade insertion into the slot, extract the blade, then carefully inspect the blade and slot for problems to prevent damage.**

**NOTE:** If the shelf is powered, the blue LED (H/S) illuminates as soon as the blade is connected to the backplane power pins. When the blade is completely installed, the blue LED starts to blink. This indicates that the blade has signified its presence to the shelf management controller.

6. Wait until the blue LED is switched off and then fasten the face plate screws to secure the blade to the shelf. Torque the face plate screws to 0.40 N-m.

**NOTE:** When the blue LED is switched OFF and the green LED (IS) is switched ON, this indicates that the payload has been powered up and the blade is active.

7. Connect cables to the face plate, if applicable.



**If an RTM is connected to the front blade, it is recommended that the RTM be installed and secured first before installing the front blade. Make sure that the handles of both the RTM and the front blade are closed in order to power up the blade's payload.**



### 2.7.2 Removing the Blade

This section describes how to remove the blade from an AdvancedTCA system.

#### **NOTICE**

##### **Damage of Circuits**

**Electrostatic discharge, incorrect blade installation and removal can damage circuits or shorten their life.**

**Before touching the blade or electronic components, make sure you are working in an ESD-safe environment.**

##### **Blade Malfunctioning**

**Incorrect blade installation and removal can result in blade malfunctioning.**

**When plugging the blade in or removing it, do not press on the face plate. Use the handles.**

#### **Removal Procedure**

The following procedure describes how to remove the blade from a shelf. It assumes that the system is powered on. If the system is not powered on, you can disregard the blue LED and skip the respective steps. In that case, it is purely a mechanical procedure.

1. Unlatch the lower ejector handle from the face plate by sliding the latch into the release position and pull out the handle outward. Do not rotate the handle fully outward. The blue LED starts blinking indicates that the blade power-down process is ongoing.
2. Wait until the blue LED is illuminated permanently.



**If the LED continues to blink, it may indicate that the upper layer software has rejected the blade extraction request.**

#### **NOTICE**

##### **Data Loss**

**Removing the blade with the blue LED still blinking causes data loss.**

**Wait until the blue LED is permanently illuminated before removing the blade.**

3. Remove the face plate cables, if applicable.
4. Loosen the screws of the face plate, then unlatch the upper ejector handle and rotate the handle fully outward until the blade is detached from the backplane connectors.
5. Remove the blade from the shelf.

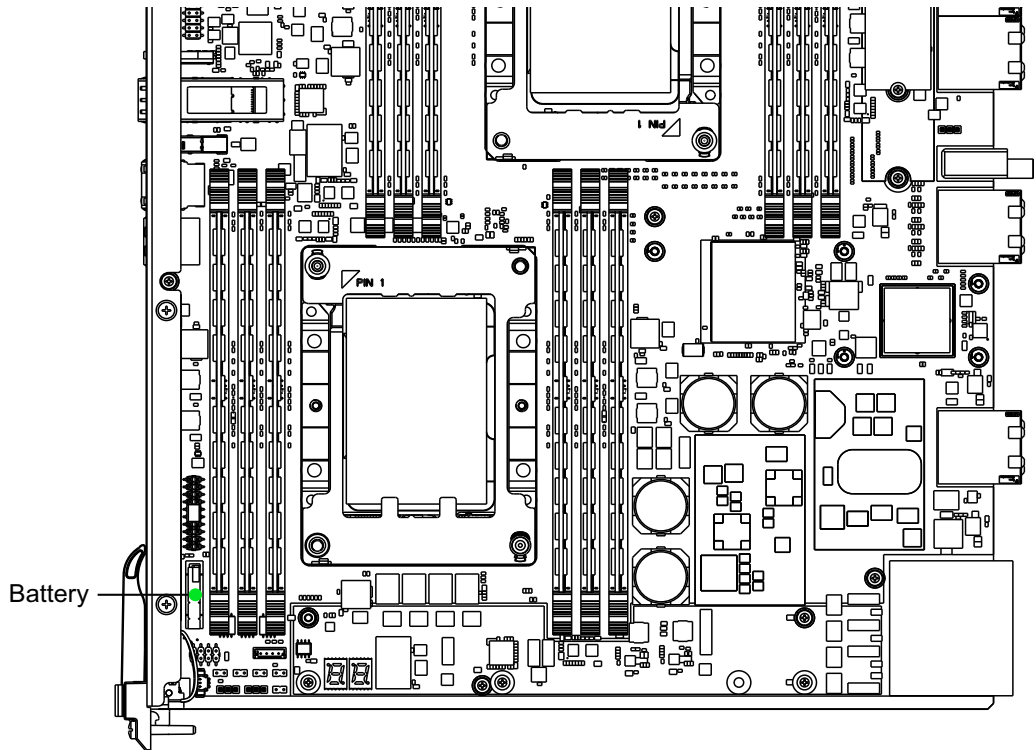
### 2.8 Replacing the Battery

Some blade variants contain an on-board battery. Its location is shown in the following figure.



**A batteryless variant based on SUPERCAP is available on demand.**

*Figure 2-6 Location of On-board Battery*



The battery is designed to provide four years of real-time clock (RTC) data retention when the blade is unpowered. There is no battery drain when the blade is installed in a chassis with management power applied. Penguin Solutions therefore assumes that there is usually no need to replace the battery except, for example, in case of long-term spare part handling.

### **NOTICE**

#### **Blade/System Damage**

Incorrect replacement of lithium batteries can result in a hazardous explosion.

Replace the battery as described in this chapter.

#### **Data Loss**

If the battery does not provide enough power anymore, the RTC is initialized and the data in the NVRAM is lost.

Replace the battery before four years of actual battery use have elapsed.

#### **Data Loss**

Replacing the battery always results in data loss of the devices which use the battery as power backup.

Back up affected data before replacing the battery.

#### **Data Loss**

If installing another battery type other than what is mounted at blade delivery may cause data loss. This is because other battery types may be specified for other environments or may have a shorter lifespan.

Only use the same type of CR2032 lithium battery as is already installed.

### **Replacement Procedure**

To replace the battery:

1. Remove battery.

### **NOTICE**

#### **PCB and Battery Holder Damage**

Removing the battery with a screw driver may damage the PCB or the battery holder. To prevent this damage, do not use a screw driver to remove the battery from its holder.

2. Install the new CR2032 lithium battery following the positive (+) and negative (-) signs.

### **NOTICE**

#### **Environmental Damage**

Improper disposal of used products may harm the environment.

Always dispose of used products according to your country's legislation and manufacturer's instructions.

# Hardware Preparation and Installation

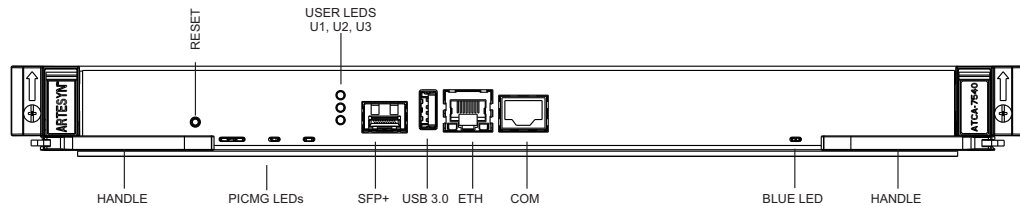
---

# Controls, Indicators, and Connectors

## 3.1 Face Plate

The following figure illustrates the connectors, keys, and LEDs available on the Penguin Edge™ ATCA-7540 face plate.

Figure 3-1 Face Plate



### 3.1.1 LEDs

The LEDs on the face plate are described in the following table.

Table 3-1 Face Plate LEDs

LED	Description
OOS	Out Of Service Red/optional Amber (controllable by IPMC): This LED is controlled by higher layer software, such as middle ware or applications.
IS	In Service Payload Power Status Green: The payload power has been enabled by the IPMC. Note that this LED indicates the payload power status both in the early power state and the normal blade operation. OFF: Payload power is disabled Note: This LED is multicolored (red/green/yellow) and is programmable by IPMC.
ATN	Amber: This LED is controlled by higher layer software, such as middle ware or applications.

## Controls, Indicators, and Connectors

Table 3-1 Face Plate LEDs (continued)

LED	Description
ETH Status LEDs	The Ethernet connector provides two status LEDs Link (upper) Green: Port is linked Off: No link Activity (lower) Yellow: Activity Off: No activity
U1, U2	Blinking during BIOS Boot Blinking green to show Base interface activity Red: User controlled2
U3	Blinking during BIOS Boot Green/Red: User controlled. Turns on green following CentOS boot.
H/S	FRU State Machine <b>During blade installation:</b> Permanently blue: On-board IPMC powers up Blinking blue: Blade communicates with shelf manager OFF: Blade is active <b>During blade removal:</b> Blinking blue: Blade notifies shelf manager of its desire to deactivate Permanently blue: Blade is ready to be extracted

### 3.1.2 Reset Button

The blade provides one face plate reset button. When the reset button is pressed, a hard reset is triggered and all the attached on-board devices are reset. The reset button can be disabled via switch SW2.4. See [Table 2-6](#) on page 65.



**You cannot reset the IPMC via this button.**

### 3.1.3 Connectors

The blade provides the following connectors on its face plate:

- 1x SFP+ 10 GbE Ethernet port
- 1x Ethernet port
- 1x Serial Console port
- 1x USB 3.0 port

#### 3.1.3.1 SFP+ Connector

Port 0 from the Platform Controller Hub (PCH) 10 GbE controller is routed to a front panel SFP+ site. The ATCA-7540 provides an SFP+ 20-pin host connector as defined in the SFF-8431 Enhanced Small Form Factor Pluggable Module specification. See the following table for the pinout.

*Table 3-2 SFP+ Connector Pinout*

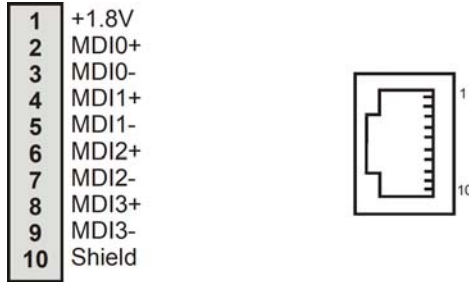
Pin	Function	Function	Pin
1	GND	GND	20
2	TX Fault	Tx Data -	19
3	TX Disable	Tx Data +	18
4	I <sup>2</sup> C SDA	GND	17
5	I <sup>2</sup> C SCL	+3.3V for Tx	16
6	Module Absent	+3.3V for Rx	15
7	Pull up to +3.3V	GND	14
8	Loss of Signal	Rx Data +	13
9	Pull up to 3.3V	Rx Data -	12
10	GND	GND	11

# Controls, Indicators, and Connectors

## 3.1.3.2 Ethernet Connector

Port 2 of the Intel i350 1 GbE controller is routed to a front panel RJ-45 Ethernet connector with magnetics. The pinout of the Ethernet connector is shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-2 Ethernet Interface Connector Pinout

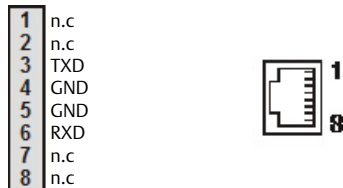


## 3.1.3.3 Serial Interface Connector

The blade provides one RS-232 serial interface connector at its face plate. It is an RJ-45 connector and corresponds to the physical serial interface port 1. By default, the BIOS maps this interface to the serial interface COM1. The on-board switch 2-1 allows the swap of COM1 with COM2, making COM2 accessible through the face plate connector instead. The BIOS serial redirection feature uses COM1 as access interface. Swapping the serial interfaces via SW2-1 also changes the serial connector that you need to access to make use of the serial redirection feature. This will support system installations that favor serial console access from the rear of the chassis.

The pinout of the serial interface connector is shown below.

Figure 3-3 Serial Interface Connector Pinout





### 3.1.3.4 USB 3.0 Connectors

The blade provides one USB 2.0/3.0 connector at its face plate. The pinout of the USB connector is shown in the following table.

Table 3-3 USB Connector Pinout

Pin	Description
1	+5V Power
2	USB 2.0 Data -
3	USB 2.0 Data +
4	Power GND
5	USB 3.0 Rx Data -
6	USB 3.0 Rx Data +
7	Signal GND
8	USB 3.0 Tx Data -
9	USB 3.0 Tx Data +



**Attaching a device to the front panel USB port that exceeds the maximum USB current rating of 500 mA per port will result in the ATCA-7540 protecting itself through a port shutdown.**

## 3.2 On-board Connectors

The blade provides the M.2 SSD module carrier connector on board.

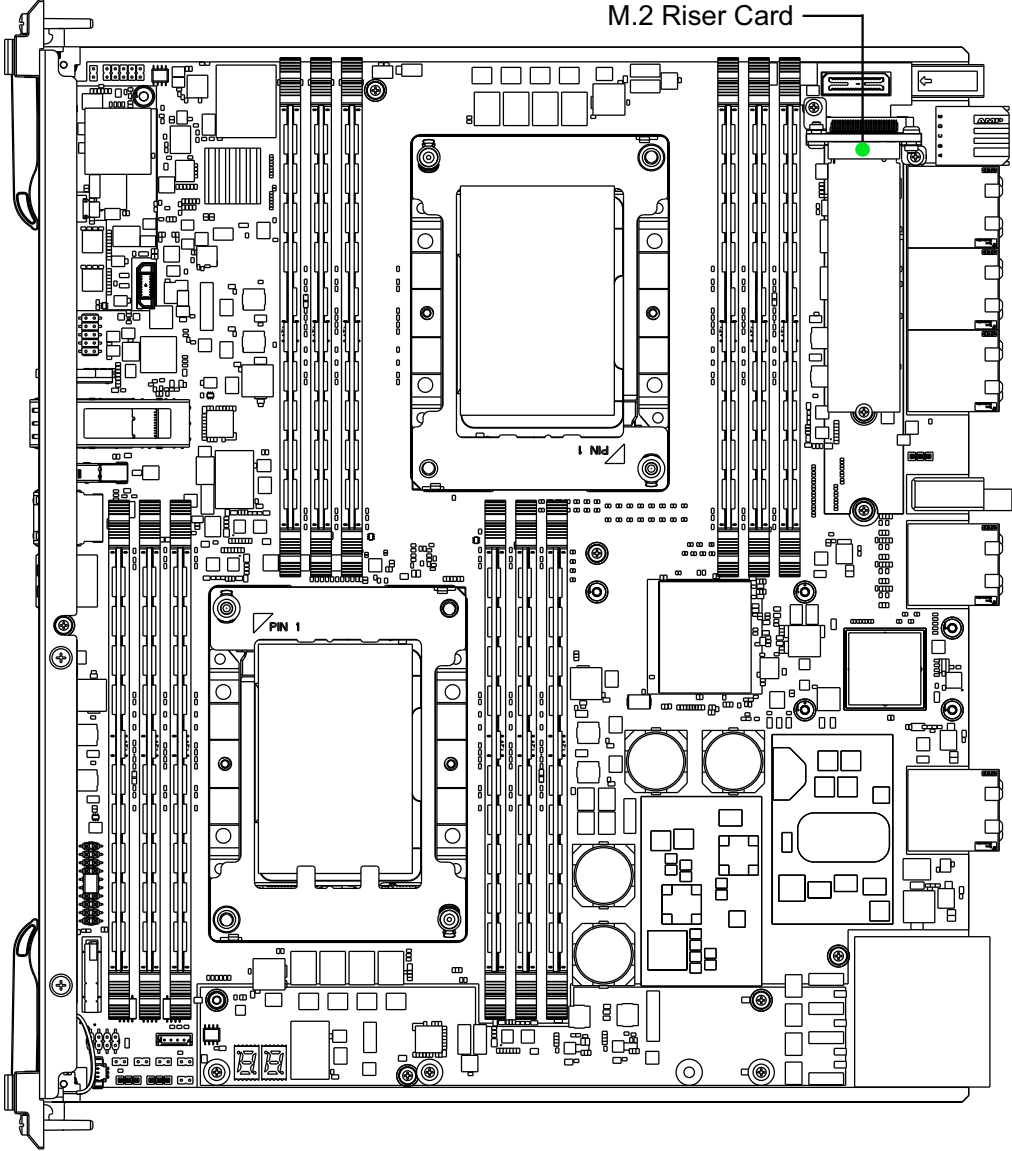
### 3.2.1 M.2 Riser Card Connector

The M.2 riser card connects a SATA 3 and a x4 Gen3 port to each of two M.2 sockets with Type 3 pinout and keying. Each socket will support the installation of an NVMe or SATA M.2 module. The modules may be Type 2280 (80mm) or Type 22110 (110mm) modules.

# Controls, Indicators, and Connectors

The location of the M.2 riser card is illustrated in the following figure.

Figure 3-4 Location of M.2 Riser Card



## Controls, Indicators, and Connectors

The M.2 riser card board connector is a Samtec 80-pin 0.5mm pitch ERM5-040 high speed header. The pinout is provided in the following table.

Table 3-4 M.2 Riser Card Connector Pinout

Pin	Function	Function	Pin
1	3.3V	3.3V	2
3	GND	GND	4
5	PCIE_NGFF1_RX0_P	NGFF1_REFCLK_P	6
7	PCIE_NGFF1_RX0_N	NGFF1_REFCLK_N	8
9	GND	GND	10
11	PCIE_PORT2B_RX1_P	PCIE_NGFF1_TX0_P	12
13	PCIE_PORT2B_RX1_N	PCIE_NGFF1_TX0_N	14
15	GND	GND	16
17	PCIE_PORT2B_TX2_P	PCIE_PORT2B_TX1_P	18
19	PCIE_PORT2B_TX2_N	PCIE_PORT2B_TX1_N	20
21	GND	GND	22
23	3.3V	NGFF0_REFCLK_P	24
25	NGFF0_CLKREQ_L	NGFF0_REFCLK_N	26
27	PCIE_RST_NGFF_L	GND	28
29	NVME0_PEDET	PCIE_NGFF0_TX0_P	30
31	SMB_NGFF_DATA	PCIE_NGFF0_TX0_N	32
33	SMB_NGFF_CLK	GND	34
35	NGFF0_DEVSLP	PCIE_NGFF0_RX0_P	36
37	3.3V	PCIE_NGFF0_RX0_N	38
39	GND	GND	40
41	PCIE_PORT2B_TX3_P	PCIE_PORT2A_TX1_P	42
43	PCIE_PORT2B_TX3_N	PCIE_PORT2A_TX1_N	44

## Controls, Indicators, and Connectors

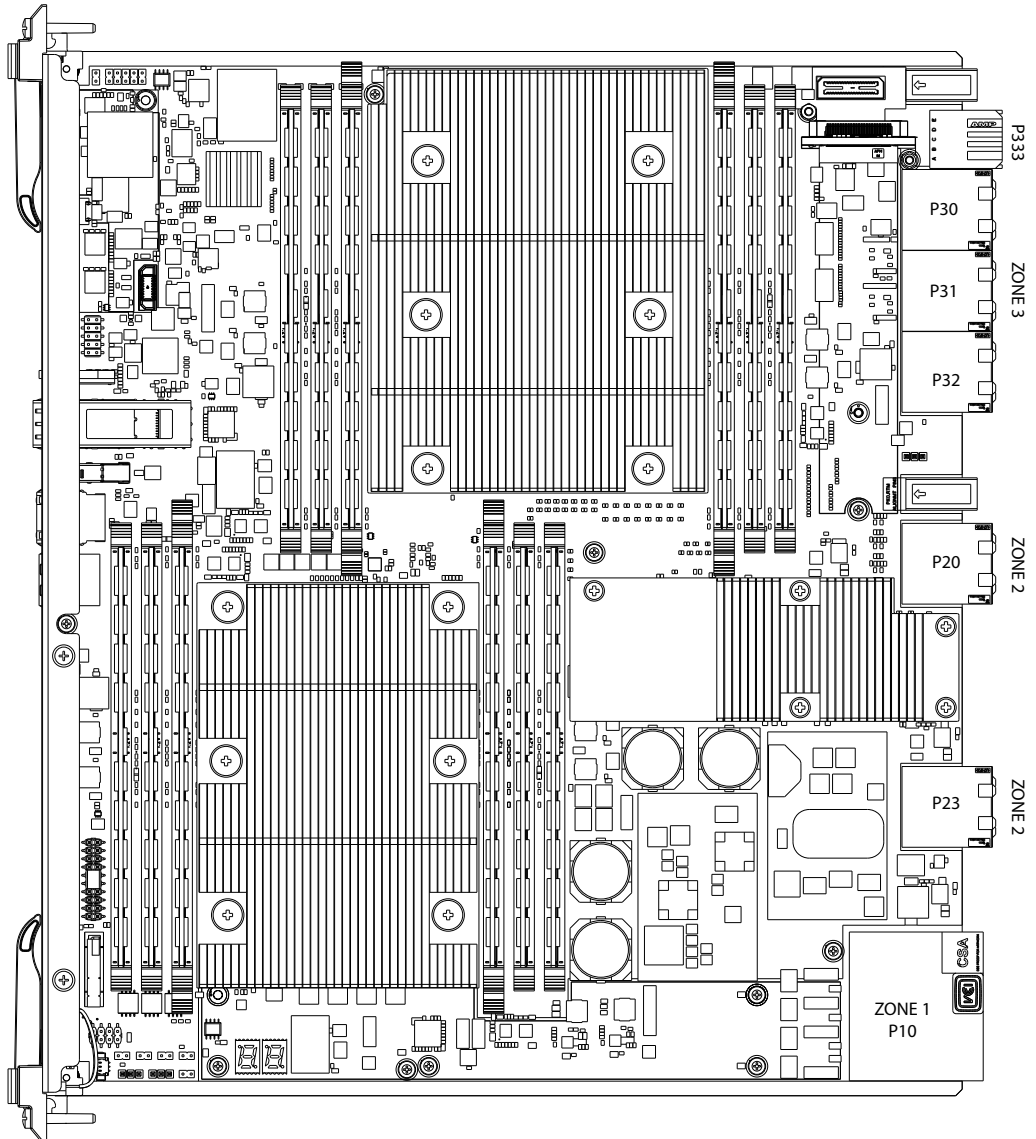
Table 3-4 M.2 Riser Card Connector Pinout (continued)

Pin	Function	Function	Pin
45	GND	GND	46
47	PCIE_PORT2B_RX3_P	PCIE_PORT2A_RX1_P	48
49	PCIE_PORT2B_RX3_N	PCIE_PORT2A_RX1_N	50
51	GND	GND	52
53	PCIE_PORT2B_RX2_P	PCIE_PORT2A_TX2_P	54
55	PCIE_PORT2B_RX2_N	PCIE_PORT2A_TX2_N	56
57	GND	GND	58
59	NGFF1_DEVSLP	PCIE_PORT2A_RX2_P	60
61	CLK_33K_SUSCLK	PCIE_PORT2A_RX2_N	62
63	3.3V	GND	64
65	3.3V	PCIE_PORT2A_TX3_P	66
67	3.3V	PCIE_PORT2A_TX3_N	68
69	3.3V	GND	70
71	NGFF1_CLKREQ_L	PCIE_PORT2A_RX3_P	72
73	NVME1_PEDET	PCIE_PORT2A_RX3_N	74
75	GND	GND	76
77	3.3V	3.3V	78
79	3.3V	3.3V	80

### 3.3 AdvancedTCA Backplane Connectors

The AdvancedTCA backplane connectors reside in Zones 1 to 3 as specified by the ATCA standard, and are called P10, P20 and P23, P30, P31, P32 and P3333. The pinouts of all these connectors are provided in this section.

Figure 3-5 Location of AdvancedTCA Connectors

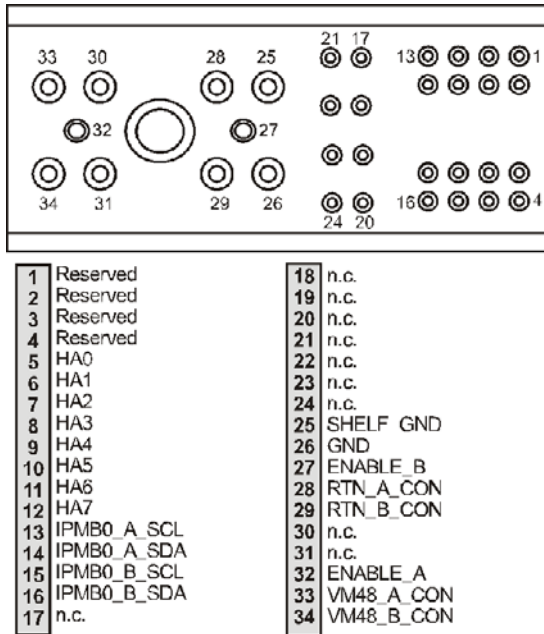


## Controls, Indicators, and Connectors

The connector residing in Zone 1 is called P10 and it carries the following signals:

- Power feed for the blade (VM48\_x\_CON and RTN\_x\_CON)
- Power enable (ENABLE\_x)
- IPMB bus signals (IPMB0\_x\_yyy)
- Geographic address signals (HAX)
- Ground signals (SHELF\_GND and GND)
- Reserved signals

Figure 3-6 P10 Backplane Connector Pinout



Zone 2 contains two connectors: P20 and P23. They carry the following types of signals:

- Telecom clock signals (CLKx\_)
- Base interface signals (BASE\_)
- Fabric interface signal (FAB\_)
- SAS update channel

Some of the pins provided by P20 and P23 are defined as optional in the AdvancedTCA specification and are unused on the blade. If the AdvancedTCA specification defines these signals as input signals, they are terminated on the blade and marked as "TERM\_" in the following pinouts. In all other cases the pins are unconnected and consequently marked as "n.c."

The pinouts of P20, P23, P30, P31, and P32 connectors are shown below.

*Figure 3-7 P20 Backplane Connector Pinout - Rows A to D*

a		b		ab	cd	ef	gh	c	d		
1	CLK1A_P		CLK1A_N					CLK1B_N		CLK1B_N	1
2	UC_P4_TX_P		UC_P4_TX_N					UC_P4_RX_P		UC_P4_RX_N	2
3	UC_P2_TX_P		UC_P2_TX_N					UC_P2_RX_P		UC_P2_RX_N	3
4	UC_P0_TX_P		UC_P0_TX_N					UC_P0_RX_P		UC_P0_RX_N	4
5	n.c.		n.c.					n.c.		n.c.	5
6	n.c.		n.c.					n.c.		n.c.	6
7	n.c.		n.c.					n.c.		n.c.	7
8	n.c.		n.c.					n.c.		n.c.	8
9	n.c.		n.c.					n.c.		n.c.	9
10	n.c.		n.c.					n.c.		n.c.	10

*Figure 3-8 P20 Backplane Connector Pinout - Rows E to H*

e		f		ab	cd	ef	gh	g	h		
1	CLK2A_P		CLK2A_N					CLK2B_P		CLK2B_N	1
2	n.c.		n.c.					n.c.		n.c.	2
3	UC_P3_TX_P		UC_P3_TX_N					UC_P3_RX_P		UC_P3_RX_N	3
4	UC_P1_TX_P		UC_P1_TX_N					UC_P1_RX_P		UC_P1_RX_N	4
5	n.c.		n.c.					n.c.		n.c.	5
6	n.c.		n.c.					n.c.		n.c.	6
7	n.c.		n.c.					n.c.		n.c.	7
8	n.c.		n.c.					n.c.		n.c.	8
9	n.c.		n.c.					n.c.		n.c.	9
10	n.c.		n.c.					n.c.		n.c.	10

# Controls, Indicators, and Connectors

Figure 3-9 P23 Backplane Connector Pinout - Rows A to D

	a	b	ab	cd	ef	gh	c	d	
1	FAB_CH2_TX2_P	FAB_CH2_TX2_N					FAB_CH2_RX2_P	FAB_CH2_RX2_N	1
2	FAB_CH2_TX0_P	FAB_CH2_TX0_N					FAB_CH2_RX0_P	FAB_CH2_RX0_N	2
3	FAB_CH1_TX2_P	FAB_CH1_TX2_N					FAB_CH1_RX2_P	FAB_CH1_RX2_N	3
4	FAB_CH1_TX0_P	FAB_CH1_TX0_N					FAB_CH1_RX0_P	FAB_CH1_RX0_N	4
5	BASE_CH1_TRD1_P	BASE_CH1_TRD1_N					BASE_CH1_TRD2_P	BASE_CH1_TRD2_N	5
6	BASE_CH2_TRD1_P	BASE_CH2_TRD1_N					BASE_CH2_TRD2_P	BASE_CH2_TRD2_N	6
7	n.c	n.c					n.c	n.c	7
8	n.c	n.c					n.c	n.c	8
9	n.c	n.c					n.c	n.c	9
10	n.c	n.c					n.c	n.c	10

Figure 3-10 P23 Backplane Connector Pinout - Rows E to H

	e	f	ab	cd	ef	gh	g	h	
1	FAB_CH2_TX3_P	FAB_CH2_TX3_N					FAB_CH2_RX3_P	FAB_CH2_RX3_N	1
2	FAB_CH2_TX1_P	FAB_CH2_TX1_N					FAB_CH2_RX1_P	FAB_CH2_RX1_N	2
3	FAB_CH1_TX3_P	FAB_CH1_TX3_N					FAB_CH1_RX3_P	FAB_CH1_RX3_N	3
4	FAB_CH1_TX1_P	FAB_CH1_TX1_N					FAB_CH1_RX1_P	FAB_CH1_RX1_N	4
5	BASE_CH1_TRD3_P	BASE_CH1_TRD3_M					BASE_CH1_TRD4_P	BASE_CH1_TRD4_N	5
6	BASE_CH2_TRD3_P	BASE_CH2_TRD3_M					BASE_CH2_TRD4_P	BASE_CH2_TRD4_N	6
7	n.c	n.c					n.c	n.c	7
8	n.c	n.c					n.c	n.c	8
9	n.c	n.c					n.c	n.c	9
10	n.c	n.c					n.c	n.c	10

Zone 3 contains three connectors: P30, P31, and P32. They are used to connect an RTM to the blade and carry the following signals:

- Serial (RS-232\_x\_yyyy)
- Serial ATA (SATAx\_yyy)
- USB (USBxy)
- PCI Express (PCIEx\_yyy)
- IPMI (IPMB1\_xxx, ISMB\_xxx)
- Power (VP12\_RTM, V3P3\_RTM, VP5\_RTM)



- SAS Update channels
- General control signals (BD\_PRESENTx, RTM\_PRSNT\_N, RTM\_RST\_KEY-, RTM\_RST-)

Figure 3-11 P30 Backplane Connector Pinout - Rows A to D

	a	b	ab	cd	ef	gh	c	d	
1	RTM_RXD	RTM_TXD					n.c	n.c	1
2	SAS2_TX_P	SAS2_TX_N					SAS2_RX_P	SAS2_RX_N	2
3	SAS0_TX_P	SAS0_TX_M					SAS0_RX_P	SAS0_RX_N	3
4	USB_RTM_P	USB_RTM_N					n.c	n.c	4
5	n.c	n.c					n.c	n.c	5
6	PCIE_P10_RX0_P	PCIE_P10_RX0_N					PCIE_PORT10_TX0_P	PCIE_PORT10_TX0_N	6
7	PCIE_P10_RX2_P	PCIE_P10_RX2_N					PCIE_PORT10_TX2_P	PCIE_PORT10_TX2_N	7
8	CLK100_P10_P	CLK100_P10_N					PCIE_RST_L	n.c	8
9	IPMB_SCL	IPMB_SDA					V3P3_MGMT	n.c	9
10	VP12	VP12					VP12	VP12	10

Figure 3-12 P30 Backplane Connector Pinout - Rows E to H

	e	f	ab	cd	ef	gh	g	h	
1	n.c	n.c					RTM_PS1_L	RTM_POWERGOOD	1
2	SAS3_TX_P	SAS3_TX_N					SAS3_RX_P	SAS3_RX_N	2
3	SAS1_TX_P	SAS1_TX_N					SAS1_RX_P	SAS1_RX_N	3
4	SATA_P3_TX_P	SATA_P3_TX_N					SATA_P3_RX_P	SATA_P3_RX_N	4
5	n.c	n.c					n.c	n.c	5
6	PCIE_P10_RX1_P	PCIE_P10_RX1_N					PCIE_P10_TX1_P	PCIE_P10_TX1_N	6
7	PCIE_P10_RX3_P	PCIE_P10_RX3_N					PCIE_P10_TX3_P	PCIE_P10_TX3_N	7
8	n.c	n.c					SPI_CLK	SPI_CLK	8
9	n.c	PS0_L					RST_KEY_L	RST_OUT_L	9
10	n.c	EN_L					I2C_CLK	I2C_DAT	10

# Controls, Indicators, and Connectors

Figure 3-13 P31 Backplane Connector Pinout - Rows A to D

	a	b	ab	cd	ef	gh	c	d	
1	PCIE_P3_RX0_P	PCIE_P3_RX0_N					PCIE_P3_TX0_P	PCIE_P3_TX0_N	1
2	PCIE_P3_RX2_P	PCIE_P3_RX2_N					PCIE_P3_TX2_P	PCIE_P3_TX2_N	2
3	PCIE_P3_RX4_P	PCIE_P3_RX4_N					PCIE_P3_TX4_P	PCIE_P3_TX4_N	3
4	PCIE_P3_RX6_P	PCIE_P3_RX6_N					PCIE_P3_TX6_P	PCIE_P3_TX6_N	4
5	PCIE_P3_RX8_P	PCIE_P3_RX8_N					PCIE_P3_TX8_P	PCIE_P3_TX8_N	5
6	PCIE_P3_RX10_P	PCIE_P3_RX10_N					PCIE_P3_TX10_P	PCIE_P3_TX10_N	6
7	PCIE_P3_RX12_P	PCIE_P3_RX12_N					PCIE_P3_TX12_P	PCIE_P3_TX12_N	7
8	PCIE_P3_RX14_P	PCIE_P3_RX14_N					PCIE_P3_TX14_P	PCIE_P3_TX14_N	8
9	CLK100_P3AB_P	CLK100_P3AB_N					CLK100_P3CD_P	CLK100_P3CD_N	9
10	n.c.	n.c.					n.c.	n.c.	10

Figure 3-14 P31 Backplane Connector Pinout - Rows E to H

	e	f	ab	cd	ef	gh	g	h	
1	PCIE_P3_RX1_P	PCIE_P3_RX1_N					PCIE_P3_TX1_P	PCIE_P3_TX1_N	1
2	PCIE_P3_RX3_P	PCIE_P3_RX3_N					PCIE_P3_TX3_P	PCIE_P3_TX3_N	2
3	PCIE_P3_RX5_P	PCIE_P3_RX5_N					PCIE_P3_TX5_P	PCIE_P3_TX5_N	3
4	PCIE_P3_RX7_P	PCIE_P3_RX7_N					PCIE_P3_TX7_P	PCIE_P3_TX7_N	4
5	PCIE_P3_RX9_P	PCIE_P3_RX9_N					PCIE_P3_TX9_P	PCIE_P3_TX9_N	5
6	PCIE_P3_RX11_P	PCIE_P3_RX11_N					PCIE_P3_TX11_P	PCIE_P3_TX11_N	6
7	PCIE_P3_RX13_P	PCIE_P3_RX13_N					PCIE_P3_TX13_P	PCIE_P3_TX13_N	7
8	PCIE_P3_RX15_P	PCIE_P3_RX15_N					PCIE_P3_TX15_P	PCIE_P3_TX15_N	8
9	n.c.	n.c.					n.c.	n.c.	9
10	n.c.	n.c.					n.c.	n.c.	10

Figure 3-15 P32 Backplane Connector Pinout - Rows A to D

a		b		ab	cd	ef	gh	c		d	
1	PCIE_P9_RX0_P		PCIE_P9_RX0_N					PCIE_P9_TX0_P		PCIE_P9_TX0_M	
2	PCIE_P9_RX2_P		PCIE_P9_RX2_M					PCIE_P9_TX2_P		PCIE_P9_TX2_M	
3	PCIE_P8_RX0_P		PCIE_P8_RX0_N					PCIE_P8_TX0_P		PCIE_P8_TX0_M	
4	PCIE_P8_RX2_P		PCIE_P8_RX2_N					PCIE_P8_TX2_P		PCIE_P8_TX2_M	
5	PCIE_P7_RX0_P		PCIE_P7_RX0_N					PCIE_P7_TX0_P		PCIE_P7_TX0_M	
6	PCIE_P7_RX2_P		PCIE_P7_RX2_N					PCIE_P7_TX2_P		PCIE_P7_TX2_M	
7	PCIE_P6_RX0_P		PCIE_P6_RX0_N					PCIE_P6_TX0_P		PCIE_P6_TX0_M	
8	PCIE_P6_RX2_P		PCIE_P6_RX0_N					PCIE_P6_TX2_P		PCIE_P6_TX2_M	
9	CLK100_P9_P		CLK100_P9_N					CLK100_P8_P		CLK100_P8_M	
10	VP12		n.c					n.c		VP12	

Figure 3-16 P32 Backplane Connector Pinout - Rows E to H

e		f		ab	cd	ef	gh	g		h	
1	PCIE_P9_RX1_P		PCIE_P9_RX1_N					PCIE_P9_TX1_P		PCIE_P9_TX1_N	
2	PCIE_P9_RX3_P		PCIE_P9_RX3_N					PCIE_P9_TX3_P		PCIE_P9_TX3_N	
3	PCIE_P8_RX1_P		PCIE_P8_RX1_N					PCIE_P8_TX1_P		PCIE_P8_TX1_N	
4	PCIE_P8_RX3_P		PCIE_P8_RX3_N					PCIE_P8_TX3_P		PCIE_P8_TX3_N	
5	PCIE_P7_RX1_P		PCIE_P7_RX1_N					PCIE_P7_TX1_P		PCIE_P7_TX1_N	
6	PCIE_P7_RX3_P		PCIE_P7_RX3_N					PCIE_P7_TX3_P		PCIE_P7_TX3_N	
7	PCIE_P6_RX1_P		PCIE_P6_RX1_N					PCIE_P6_TX1_P		PCIE_P6_TX1_N	
8	PCIE_P6_RX3_P		PCIE_P6_RX3_N					PCIE_P6_TX3_P		PCIE_P6_TX3_N	
9	CLK100_RTMP_PCIE7_P		CLK100_RTMP_PCIE7_N					CLK100_P6_P		CLK100_P6_N	
10	VP12		PS0_N					MOSI		MOSI	

The 12V RTM power pins provided through P30 and P32 can safely power RTMs up to 50 Watts.

## Controls, Indicators, and Connectors

---

The ATCA-7540 blade has another 12V RTM power connector, P333, which is used to provide additional 12V power to RTMs. With the addition of the P333 connector, the ATCA-7540 can power RTMs up to 100 Watts. P333 is implemented using a Tyco 120955-1 power connector. The pinout is shown below.

*Figure 3-17 P333 Connector Pin Assignment*

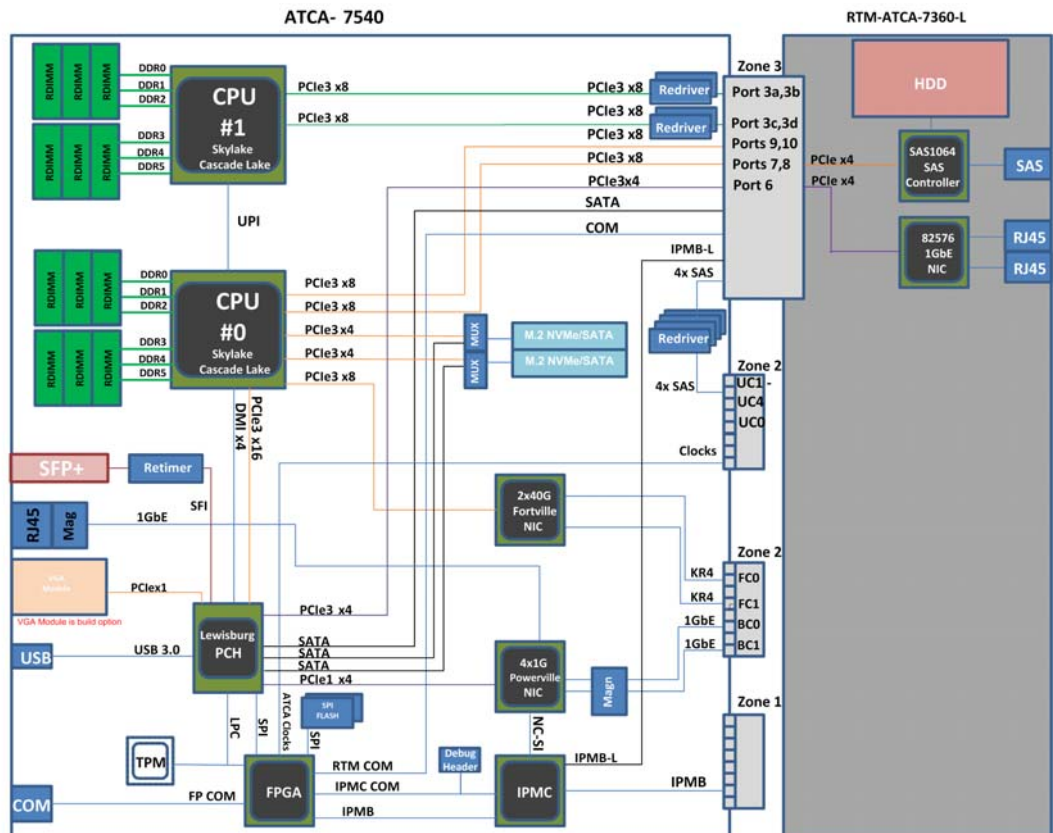
	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>E</b>
1	GND	VP12	100 ohms to GND	GND	VP12
2	GND	VP12	100 ohms to GND	GND	VP12
3	GND	VP12	100 ohms to GND	GND	VP12
4	GND	VP12	100 ohms to GND	GND	VP12

# Functional Description

## 4.1 Block Diagram

The block diagram shows how the devices work together and the data paths used.

Figure 4-1 ATCA-7540 Block Diagram



## 4.2 Processor

ATCA-7540 provides two Intel® Xeon® Scalable Processors (codename: Skylake) as the central processing unit (CPU). Each processor provides 48 PCI Express (PCIe) lanes up to Gen3 speeds (8GT/s). The processors are connected with each other through two Intel® Ultra Path Interconnect (UPI). The links consist of two ports of 20 lanes (TX/RX pairs) operating at 10.4GT/s. Each processor provides an integrated 6-channel DDR4 Integrated Memory Controller (IMC) supporting up to DDR4-2400 MT/s.

## Functional Description

---

The processors have a Direct Media Interface (DMI) link for communication between the CPUs and the PCH. The ATCA-7540 blade has one DMI link between CPU0 and the PCH. It is four-lane link running at PCIe 3.0 speed. The DMI port on CPU1 is not used.

### 4.3 DDR4 Main Memory

The blade provides two CPUs which has six channels of independent DDR4 memory on each CPU. The blade provides support for one RDIMM on each of the 12 DDR4 channels. Registered DDR4 RDIMMs are used for best performance. Enterprise-grade, very high-reliability memory is also optionally available.

The following are the DDR4 module specifications:

- Maximum DDR4 supported 2400MT/s
- Very low profile
- Max two ranks per RDIMM
- Can support up to 32GB capacity per RDIMM
- Standard voltage (1.2V)



**When mixing RDIMMs of different speed selections, the BIOS will set up the lowest speed for all memory channels/RDIMM slots.**

The following are the supported memory features:

- Reliability, Availability and Serviceability (RAS) features supported with ECC (Mirroring, x8/x4 SDDC, Sparing, Scrubbing)
- Memory Error signaling for uncorrectable errors
- Memory Error signaling for correctable memory errors
- Asynchronous DRAM Refresh (ADR) feature to support persistent memory structures in DDR4

### 4.4 Platform Controller Hub (Lewisburg)

The Platform Controller Hub (PCH) provides extensive I/O support for the processors. The PCH (codename: Lewisburg) provides access between processors and the I/O subsystem. The PCH connects to CPU#0 through Intel DMI2.0.

### 4.4.1 PCH I/O Controller Features

The following are the PCH I/O controller features:

- A combination of 26 configurable high speed I/O ports
  - 16 PCIe 3.0 lanes/ports (nine lanes used)
  - 10 USB 3.0 ports (one USB 3.0 and one USB 2.0 port used)
  - Five GbE ports (none used)
  - 14 SATA ports (three ports used)
- 10GbE controller with two ports (one port used)
- SPI/ESPI interface (used in SPI mode)
- LPC bus interface
- SMBus interface
- Management engine
- Platform clocking support for CPU and PCIe clocks
- Optional PCH SKU with Intel® QuickAssist Technology

Intel QuickAssist Technology cryptography and data compression is available on the ATCA-7540 -0GB-QE40 variant. The PCH on this variant contains two QAT engines. Refer to the following Intel web site for QAT details: <https://01.org/intel-quickassist-technology>

### 4.4.2 Firmware Flashes

The blade has two physically separate 32MB flash devices hosting the BIOS firmware.

- Primary (or Default BIOS) Flash (SPI 0)
- Recovery BIOS Flash (SPI 1)T

The flash is allocated for storing the binary code of the BIOS. The ATCA-7540 boots from the primary flash SPI 0 under normal circumstances. If booting BIOS from primary flash SPI 0 fails, a hardware mechanism automatically changes the flash device select logic to boot from the recovery flash SPI 1. The image that the processor will boot from after next reset is determined by the IPMC. It can be selected via dedicated IPMI OEM command.

### 4.5 ATCA Base Interface Ethernet Controller

Four 1000Base-T compliant interfaces are provided from the Intel® i350 Powerville network interface controller (NIC). The i350 resides in the management domain and supports Serial over LAN through the Intelligent Platform Management Controller (IPMC). The IPMC connects through the network controller sideband interface (NCSI) with the i350 and supports the management interface over the Base Ethernet when the payload is off.

The i350 has four integrated PHYs to support 10/100/1000Base-T mode. i350 ports 0 and 1 are connected to the ATCA PICMG 3.0 Base Channels 0 and 1 respectively. Port 2 is routed to a front panel RJ-45 connector with integrated magnetics. Port 3 is unused. The device is configured using a 16 K byte ATC25128B SPI flash device.

### 4.6 ATCA Fabric Interface Ethernet Controller

The ATCA-7540 blade utilizes an Intel® XL710 Dual 40GB Ethernet controller (codename: Fortville) to provide two 40GB Ethernet interfaces to the ATCA Zone 2. All current board variants are configured to operate as two 40GBASE-KR4 ports. The controller configuration file is contained in a 4 Mbyte AT25DF321A SPI flash device. The controller can also be configured as two 1000Base-KX ports to support PICMG 3.1 Option 1 or two 10GBase-KX4 ports to support PICMG 3.1 Option 9. For more information contact your local sales representative.

The ATCA-7540 has eight sequential MAC addresses assigned to the various Ethernet ports. The first two addresses are reserved for IPMC and the remaining addresses are reserved for other Ethernet ports. See the following table for the address assignments.

Table 4-1 MAC Address Assignments

Board MAC Address	Description	Ethernet Device	MAC Address Programmed at Device
N	IPMC MAC Address 1 (Base Channel 0)	U100	U100
N+1	IPMC MAC Address 2 (Base Channel 1)	U100	U100
N+2	XL710 Port 0 (Fabric Channel 0)	U4	U199
N+3	XL710 Port 1 (Fabric Channel 1)	U4	U199
N+4	i350 Port 0 (Base Channel 0)	U7	U62
N+5	i350 Port 1 (Base Channel 1)	U7	U62
N+6	i350 Port 2 (Front Panel 1GbE RJ-45)	U7	U62
N+7	PCH 10GbE Port 0 (Front Panel SFP+)	U5C1	U5000 U5001



## 4.7 Storage Controller

The Penguin Edge™ ATCA-7540 uses three SATA ports from the PCH. Two of the SATA ports are routed to the M.2 riser providing support for M.2 SATA modules. The third SATA port is routed to the RTM Zone 3 connector to support SATA on RTMs.

Using an optional RTM such as the RTM-ATCA-7360-L or RTM-736x-DD, the blade can also support a Serial Attached SCSI (SAS) controller. One on-board hard disk drive (HDD) located on the RTM is connected to the controller. A minimum of two ports are available on the RTM face plate. They can be used to attach an external storage RAID (JBOD). Another SAS port of the controller is routed to ATCA Zone 3 for synchronizing with an RTM-based disk located in a logically paired ATCA slot.

### 4.7.1 ATCA Update Channels

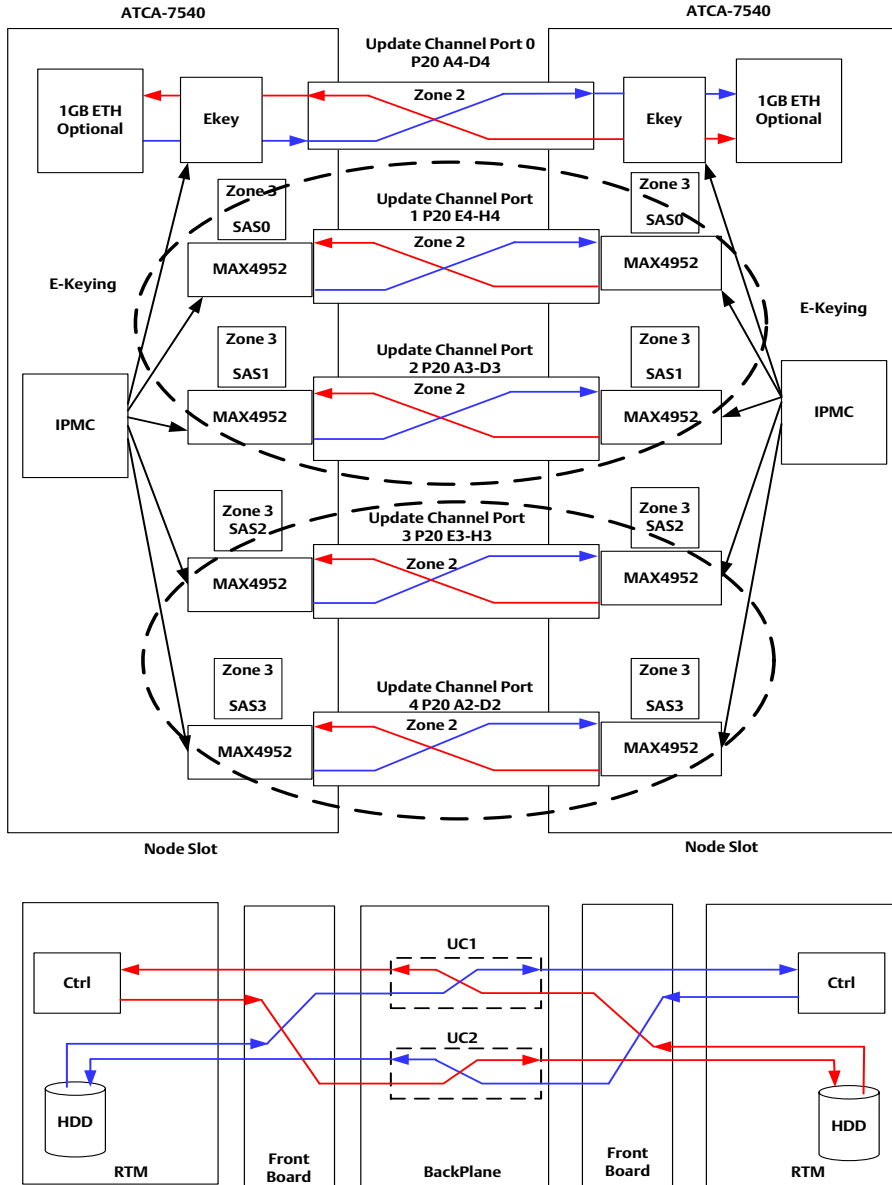
The Update Channel (UC) interface is a set of eight differential signal pairs (four ports: includes both Receiver and Transmitter signals) that interconnect two slots. These signals are used to interconnect two hub boards, or redundant processor boards. The slots which need to be interconnected depend on the backplane design.

UC Ports 1-4 are connected to the Penguin Edge RTM series supporting the SAS controller on the RTM. Port 1, 2 and Port 3, 4 connect an SAS controller port on the RTM to an HDD on the RTM of the UC connected blade respectively.

The block diagrams in [Figure 4-2 on page 98](#) illustrate the SAS update channel implementation. Basically, the SAS controller and HDD reside on the RTM. There is a cross-connection link between a pair of SAS HDDs and SAS controllers of two ATCA-7540 blades (with RTM) from Zone 3 to Zone 2 and connected through the backplane update channel to adjacent slot Zone 2 and back to Zone 3 of the adjacent ATCA-7540 blade's RTM.

# Functional Description

Figure 4-2 SAS Update Channel Implementation



## 4.8 M.2 NVMe/SATA Modules

ATCA-7540 provides a modular solution for up to two M.2 NVMe/SATA modules. ATCA-7540 blade provides a (Samtec 80-pin ERM5-040 0.02 inch [0.5mm] pitch) high speed connector that allows a custom M.2 mezzanine with one or two 3.15 inch (80mm) or 4.33 inch (110mm) M.2 modules to be installed.

## 4.9 VROC RAID on NVMe Modules

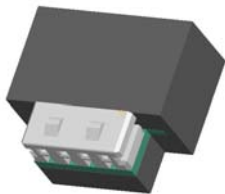
Intel® Virtual RAID on CPU (VROC) is a RAID implemented using Intel Volume Management Device (VMD), a hardware architecture available in Intel Xeon Scalable Processors. Intel VROC is a solution designed to offer RAID functionality to NVMe drives connected to the processor without needing any additional RAID adapters.

The VROC option for the NVMe SSD modules is supported on the ATCA-7540. A VROC hardware key is needed in order to enable the Virtual RAID-on-Chip feature which allows RAID to be enabled on NVMe modules.

**NOTE:** To enable RAID under VROC, refer to the BIOS Version 2.1.2 release notes. Contact your local sales representative for availability.

Figure 4-3 shows the VROC hardware key (Marketing Number: RAID-KEY). Figure 4-4 shows the location of the J3 connector where the VROC hardware key can be installed on the ATCA-7540 blade.

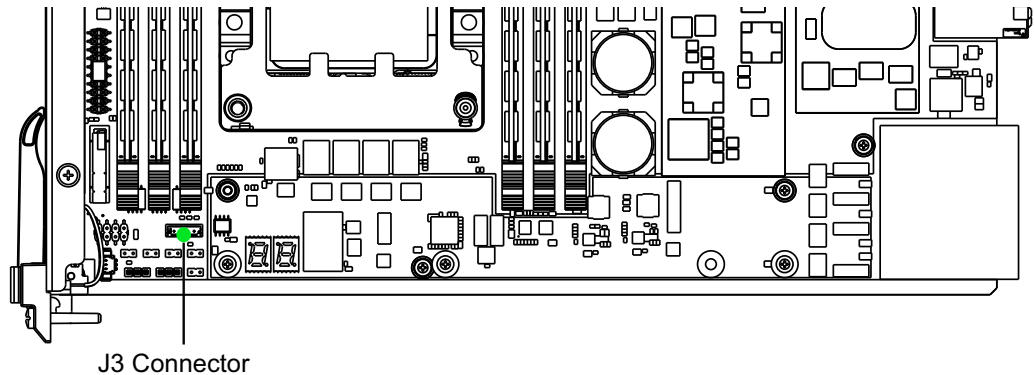
*Figure 4-3 VROC Hardware Key*



## Functional Description

---

Figure 4-4 Location of J3 Connector for VROC Hardware Key Installation



### 4.10 Heat Sink

A passive heat sink is mounted on top of the Skylake FCLGA3647 socket assembly. The maximum thermal design power of the processor is 85W. The thermal resistance of the processor heat sink (including interface material) guarantees a proper cooling in the system. The heat sink fixture withstands shock and vibration tests.

### 4.11 BIOS

ATCA-7540 provides a BIOS firmware that is stored in flash memory. It can be updated remotely via Ethernet or locally via operating system. Along with the BIOS and BIOS Setup program, the flash memory contains POST and Plug and Play support.

The BIOS displays a message during POST identifying the type of BIOS and a revision code.

A BIOS extension is provided for the RTM-based SAS controller to support RAID configuration.

A BIOS extension is provided to enable Intel® VROC functionality to support RAID configuration on NVMe drives.

### 4.12 IPMC

ATCA-7540 contains the IPMC building block from Pigeon Point Systems (PPS). It is based on Microsemi Smartfusion cSOC (customizable System-on-Chip). The PPS IPMC is based on 32-bit Cortex M3 microcontroller operating at 50MHz. The PPS implementation is the BMR-A2F200-AMCC-CM288R utilizing Microsemi Smartfusion A2F200M3F-CSG288I device.

#### 4.12.1 I<sup>2</sup>C Bus

ATCA-7540 contains the IPMC Master-Only I<sup>2</sup>C Bus. This bus is connected to FRU and SEL EEPROMs, CPU Processor Information ROMs, temperature sensors, and GPIO devices.

# Functional Description

Figure 4-5 Master-Only I<sup>2</sup>C Bus Architecture

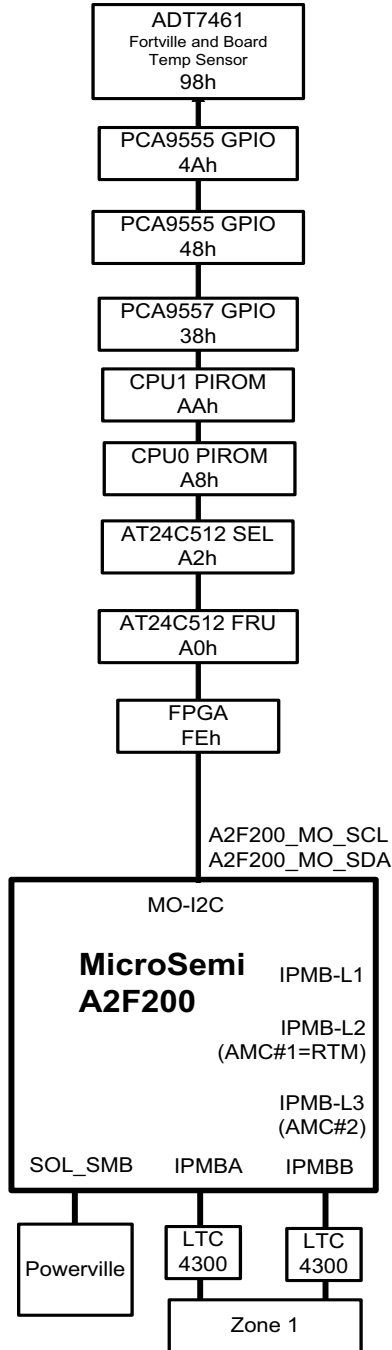


Table 4-2 IPMI I<sup>2</sup>C Bus Address Map

Device Name	Device Type	SMB Address Hex
CPU0 Processor Information ROM	Serial ROM	A8
CPU1 Processor Information ROM	Serial ROM	AC
FRU EEPROM	24C512	A0
SEL EEPROM	24C512	A2
GLUE FPGA	Lattice LFE2-6E	FE
IPMC GPI I/O Expander#1	PCA9555	48
IPMC GPI I/O Expander#2	PCA9555	4A
IPMC GPI I/O Expander#3	PCA9557	38
Intel XL710#1 Temp Sensor and Board Temp Sensor	ADT7461	98

### 4.12.2 FRU Data Serial IDROM

ATCA-7540 contains a 64K Byte IDROM. It contains the FRU data, and blade specific information (e.g., serial number, MAC addresses of network interfaces, and some additional information). The EEPROM has an I<sup>2</sup>C interface and is connected to the on-board Private I<sup>2</sup>C interface of IPMC building block. The IDROM is assigned to I<sup>2</sup>C address 0xA0.

Characteristic	Value	I <sup>2</sup> C Address
Device Type	24C512	A0 <sub>H</sub>

### 4.12.3 System Event Log EEPROM

ATCA-7540 contains a 64K Byte System Event Log (SEL) PROM. The EEPROM has an I<sup>2</sup>C interface and is connected to the on-board Private I<sup>2</sup>C interface of IPMC building block. The IDROM is assigned to I<sup>2</sup>C address 0xA2.

### 4.13 Serial Redirection

The CPU serial redirection reroutes the console input and output; that is the text output to the text screen and input from the standard keyboard. The console is used by the BIOS setup menus, BIOS initialization and boot routines, OS boot loaders, and the loaded operating systems.

The serial console of the payload CPU is available via Serial over Lan (SOL). In addition to the SOL capability, the serial console is also available on the blade face plate using an RJ-45 connector with Cisco pin-out.

If an SOL session is established, only the output is available on the face plate. Input is not possible during this time via the face plate. Alternatively to the CPU serial console, the IPMC serial console is also available on the face plate serial connector. It can be selected via specific IPMI OEM command.

### 4.14 Serial over LAN

Serial over LAN (SOL) enables suitably designed blades and servers to transparently redirect a serial character stream of a baseboard UART to/from a remote client via LAN over RMCP+ sessions. This enables users at remote consoles to access the serial port of a blade/server and interact with a text-based BIOS console, operating system, command line interfaces, and serial text-based applications.

The IPMC provides a dedicated sideband connection to the Base Interface Ethernet controller. This connectivity is not shared with IPMB-0 or any other I<sup>2</sup>C/SMBus/IPMB connections that the IPMC may use on the blade for hardware management. Data from the payload serial redirection is routed through the sideband connection to the Base interface and vice versa. The Ethernet controller filters packets based on either MAC address, RMCP port number, or IP address and forwards them to the serial redirection over the sideband interface.

Client software like openIPMI is required to enable SOL and to communicate with the SOL based serial console.

Two additional MAC addresses are assigned to the board to support SOL connections on each of the Base Interfaces. See the MAC address assignments in [Table 4-1 on page 96](#).



### 4.15 Control Logic

The blade uses a Lattice FPGA to provide control logic for specific functions, which includes:

- Payload power supervision and sequencing
- Payload resets
- Multiple hardware interfaces between payload and IPMC
- Support for sensors as required

Any control circuitry based on programmable logic, whether intended for payload supervision or as part of the payload, is remotely upgradeable. Crisis recovery circuitry is provided to prevent blade lock-ups as the result of a failed remote upgrade of the board control logic.

### 4.16 Front Blade Face Plate

The blade's face plate (reference [Figure 3-1 on page 77](#)) provides the following interfaces and control elements:

- One SFP+ socket
- One USB 3.0 port
- One RJ-45 connector for RS-232 serial console
- One 1GbE RJ-45 connector
- Recessed reset button
- Out of Service, In Service, Attention, User Controlled and Hot Swap LEDs

The blade design provides the possibility to cover unused face plate elements like LEDs or push button behind a custom overlay foil.

### 4.17 Face Plate Serial Interfaces

The ATCA-7540 has two serial interfaces. They are fully compliant to industry standard 16550 asynchronous communication controllers. The two serial line interfaces #1 and #2 are integrated in the FPGA, which distributes them to either face plate, RTM, or IPMC for SOL. The serial line interfaces support baud rates up to 115200 kbps through a programmable baud rate generator.

**NOTE:** The default serial console settings can be found in section [Default Access Parameters on page 184](#).

## Functional Description

### Serial Line Interface #1 (COM #1) and #2 (COM#2) destination

The serial line interface #1/ #2 can be routed either to the Zone 3 connector or to the face plate. Destination selection is through IPMC or SW2-1.

The serial line interface #1 provides two different routing options:

- FPGA <=> RTM
- FPGA <=> Face plate

Table 4-3 Face Plate Serial Interfaces

SW2.1	Connection
HIGH Switch 2.1 OFF Default	FPGA COM1 to Face plate FPGA COM2 to RTM
LOW or Switch 2.1 ON	FPGA COM1 to RTM FPGA COM2 to Face plate

### 4.17.1 IPMC Debug Console

The IPMC Debug Console RS-232 interface connection is normally routed to a 3-pin on-board header (P9). The IPMC Debug monitor terminal output can also be routed to the face plate. The IPMC Debug Console is also available when the ATCA-7540 payload is powered off.

Table 4-4 IPMC Debug Console Destination Selection

SW2.2	Connection
SW2.2 OFF Default	Face plate connected to Payload COM1/2 IPMC Debug Console at three Pin Header
SW2.2 ON	IPMC Debug Console to Face plate

## 4.18 USB 3.0 Interfaces

The Lewisburg Intel PCH provides internal USB 3.0/ USB 2.0 host controllers with up to six USB 3.0 ports (480Mb/s) and eight USB 2.0 ports. One USB 3.0 port is routed to the face plate and one USB 2.0 port is routed to the Zone 3 connector for use on an RTM.

**NOTE:** USB ports can be disabled through the BIOS. Information on this option can be found in the section on [USB Configuration on page 202](#).

### 4.19 Low Pin Count Interface

The PCH provides a 4-bit-wide low pin count (LPC) interface running at 24MHz, which is connected to following on-board I/O devices:

- FPGA register map
- IPMC
- SLB9635TT1.2 FW3.16 TPM controller

### 4.20 Trusted Platform Module

The Trusted Platform Module (TPM) is a specific protected and encapsulated microcontroller security chip used to defend the internal data structures against real intelligent attacks.

The nature of this security chip ensures that the information like keys, password, and digital certificates stored within are made more secure from external software attacks and physical theft. With the handful of keys it stores, all cryptographic functions are performed on the chip.

TPM provides the ability for a computing system to run applications more securely, allows secured remote access, performs electronic transactions, and communication more safely.

The ATCA-7540 provides an on-board Infineon SLB9635TT1.2 FW3.16 TPM controller connected to the LPC bus of PCH. This advanced Infineon controller guarantees that the ATCA-7540 is fully compliant to TPM 1.2 specification.

### 4.21 System Clocks

The ATCA-7540 blade provides the system clocks using the PCH operating in a hybrid clock mode. Most of the clocks are provided directly by the PCH. A 9ZXL0651 clock buffer or equivalent is added to provide the 100MHz PCIe clocks to some of the PCIe devices. Various crystals and crystal oscillators are also used. The PCH CLKOUT\_SRC pins have associated output enable pins which are controlled by the IPMC (for RTM clocks) and the FPGA (for CPU clocks).

### 4.22 SMBus

The PCH provides an SMBus host controller/slave interface along with six SMLink interfaces, SMLink0B and SMLink0-4. These interfaces are intended for system management and are controlled by the Management Engine (ME). SMLink1 is connected to the VR13 power controllers. SMLink0 and SMLink2 are connected to IPMB buses L2 and L3.

Only four interfaces are used on ATCA-7540 as described in the following table.

*Table 4-5 SMBus Interface*

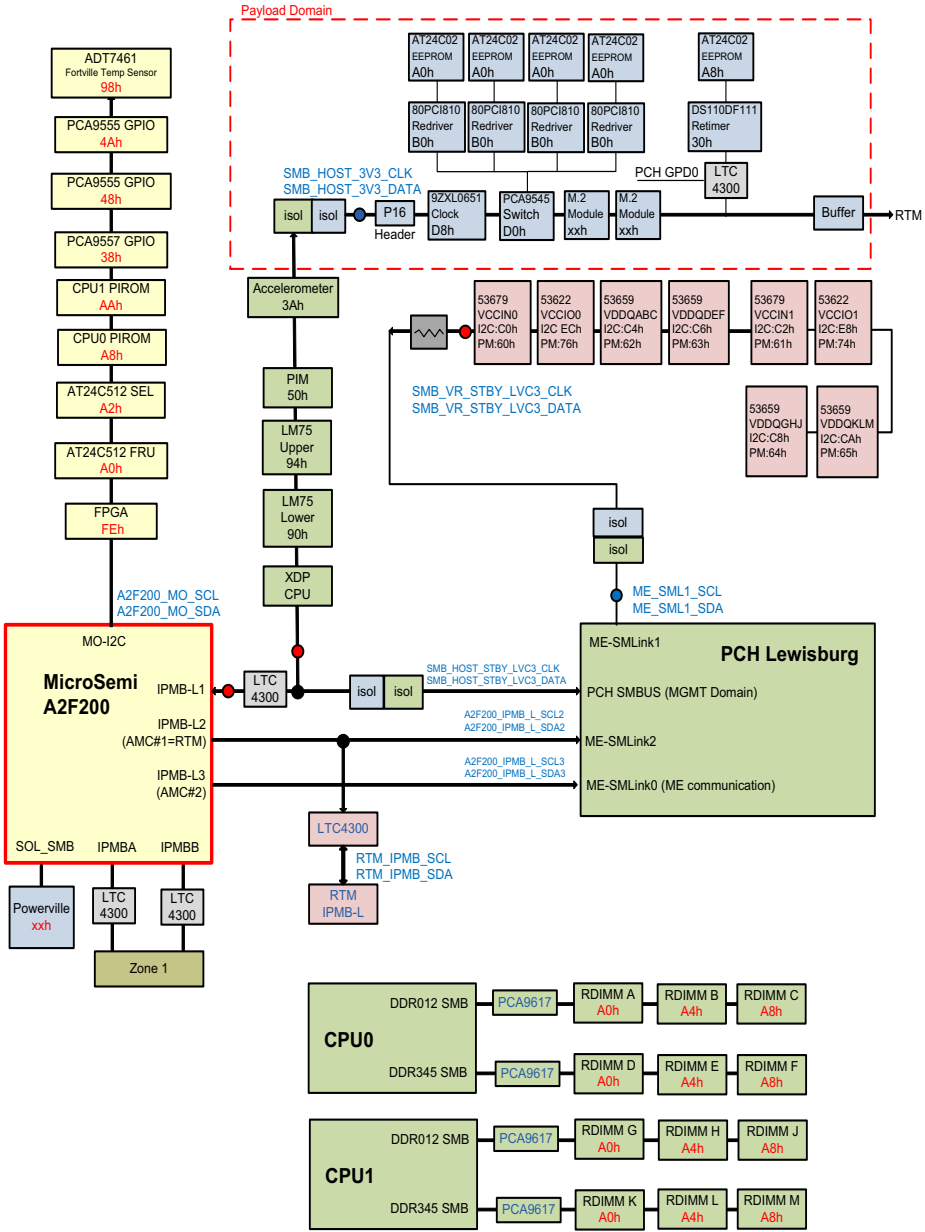
<b>Device / SMBus</b>	<b>Description</b>
SMBus	Host SMBus (Master/Slave)
SMLink0	Connection to external IPMC to report thermal information via PCH internal PECEI bridge to CPU
SMLink1	VR13 power controllers
SMLink 2	IPMB-L2

The Master SMBus interface of the Lewisburg PCH is connected to on-board devices like Clock PLLs, temperature sensors, and so on.

Additionally, both CPUs provide 2x SMBus to connect to the SPD PROMs of the DDR4 memory system.

The following figure shows the ATCA-7540 SMBus architecture.

Figure 4-6 SMBus Architecture



## Functional Description

The following table provides SMBus mapping address details.

Table 4-6 SMBus Address Map

Device Name	DeviceType	Location	SMBus Controller	SMB Address Hex
SPD EEPROM	Serial EEPROM	RDIMM A	CPU0 memory controller 0	A0
SPD EEPROM	Serial EEPROM	RDIMM B	CPU0 memory controller 0	A4
SPD EEPROM	Serial EEPROM	RDIMM C	CPU0 memory controller 0	A8
SPD EEPROM	Serial EEPROM	RDIMM D	CPU0 memory controller 1	A0
SPD EEPROM	Serial EEPROM	RDIMM E	CPU0 memory controller 1	A4
SPD EEPROM	Serial EEPROM	RDIMM F	CPU0 memory controller 1	A8
SPD EEPROM	Serial EEPROM	RDIMM G	CPU1 memory controller 0	A0
SPD EEPROM	Serial EEPROM	RDIMM H	CPU1 memory controller 0	A4
SPD EEPROM	Serial EEPROM	RDIMM J	CPU1 memory controller 0	A8
SPD EEPROM	Serial EEPROM	RDIMM K	CPU1 memory controller 1	A0
SPD EEPROM	Serial EEPROM	RDIMM L	CPU1 memory controller 1	A4
SPD EEPROM	Serial EEPROM	RDIMM M	CPU1 memory controller 1	A8
IPMC Sensor Inlet Temp	LM75	ATCA-7540	PCH	90
IPMC Sensor Outlet Temp	LM75	ATCA-7540	PCH	94
48 V Power Interface Sensor	PIM4328	ATCA-7540	PCH	50
Clock buffer	IDT ZXL0651	ATCA-7540	PCH	D8
Accelerometer	MMA8451	ATCA-7540	PCH	3A
I <sup>2</sup> C Switch	PCA9545	ATCA-7540	PCH	D0
PCIe Redriver	80PCI810	ATCA-7540	PCH (selected by PCA9545)	B0

Table 4-6 SMBus Address Map (continued)

Device Name	DeviceType	Location	SMBus Controller	SMB Address Hex
PCIe EEPROM	AT24C02	ATCA-7540	PCH (selected by PCA9545)	A0
SFI Retimer	DS110DF111	ATCA-7540	PCH (enabled by PCH GPD0)	30
SFI EEPROM	AT24C02	ATCA-7540	PCH (enabled by PCH GPD0)	A8

## 4.23 PCIe Bus Structure

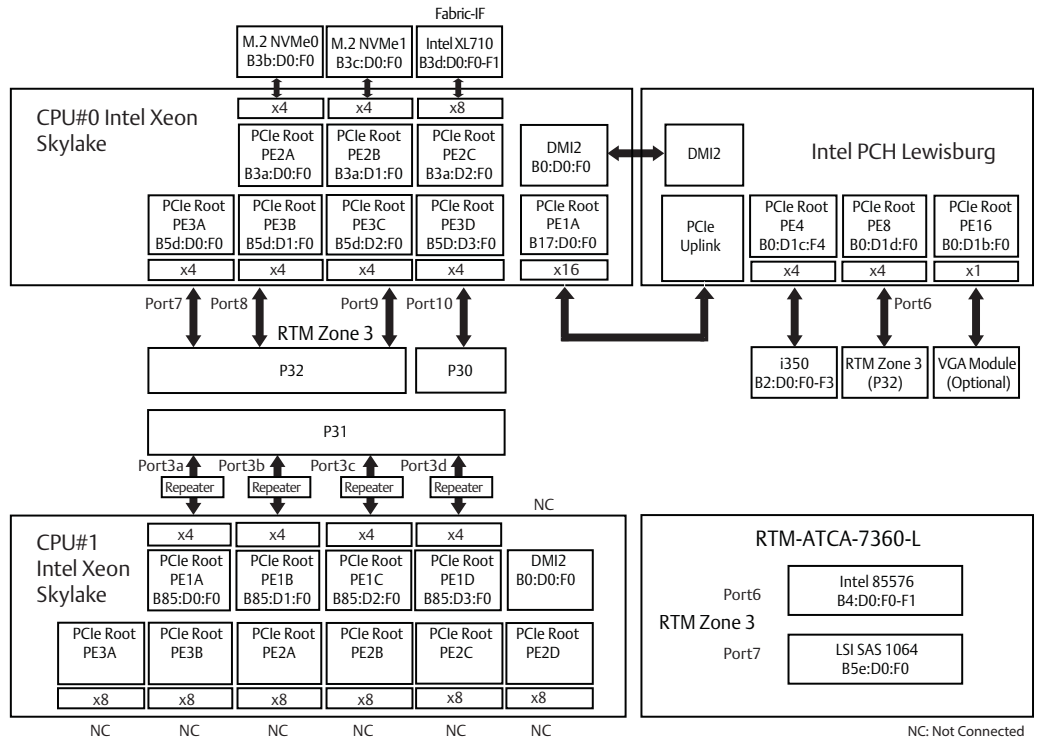
The PCIe devices are connected through CPU0 (x48 PCIe), CPU1(x48 PCIe,) and PCH (x20 PCIe). In the following figure, the notation is provided in **Bx:Dy:Fz** format.

- B represents PCIe bus number (value of type Hexadecimal)
- D represents PCIe device (value of type Hexadecimal)
- F represents Function

# Functional Description

The following figure provides an overview of ATCA-7540 PCIe bus structure.

Figure 4-7 PCIe Bus Structure





# Maps and Registers

## 5.1 FPGA Registers

For register description, the conventions shown in [Table 5-1](#) and [Table 5-2](#) are used.

*Table 5-1 Register Default*

Default	Description
-	Not applicable or undefined
0 or 1	Default value after PWR_GOOD is valid or after PCH_PLTRST_ deassertion
Undef.	Undefined value
<reset>: 0 or 1	Default value after deassertion of the reset signal <reset>
Ext.	External Reset Source. Default depends on external logic level.

*Table 5-2 Register Access Type*

Access	Description
r	Read only
w	Write only
r/w	Read and write
w1c	Write-1-to-clear, ignore bit while reading
r/w1c	Read and write-1-to-clear, write 0 has no effect
r/w1s	Read and write-1-to-set, write 0 has no effect
r/w1t	Read and write-1-to-toggle, write 0 has no effect
LPC:	The prefix "LPC:" signals that the access is restricted to the LPC interface. For example, LPC: r/w means that the register bit is readable/writable from the LPC interface
IPMC:	The prefix "IPMC:" signals that the access is restricted to the IPMC I <sup>2</sup> C interface. For example, IPMC: r/w means that the register bit is readable/writable from IPMC I <sup>2</sup> C interface

## Maps and Registers

---

### 5.1.1 Register Decoding

The FPGA registers can be accessed from the host or the IPMC. For the host access, the low pin count (LPC) bus interface is used. The IPMC uses an I<sup>2</sup>C interface.

#### 5.1.1.1 Low Pin Count (LPC) Decoding

The LPC bus supports different protocols.

##### 5.1.1.1.1 LPC I/O Decoding

The LPC interface responds to LPC I/O accesses listed in the following table. All other LPC I/O accesses are ignored.

*Table 5-3 LPC I/O Register Map Overview*

<b>Base Address</b>	<b>Address Size</b>	<b>Address Range Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
0x4E	2	SIW	Super IO Configuration Registers for Index and Date
0x80	1	POSTCODE	POST Code Register
BASE1	8	COM1	UART1. Serial Port 1 (Logical Device 4). BASE1 address is set up during Super IO Configuration.
BASE2	8	COM2	UART2. Serial Port 2. (Logical Device 4). BASE2 address is set up during Super IO Configuration.
0x600	128	REGISTERS	FPGA Registers

All LPC I/O accesses to address POSTCODE and the address range REGISTERS and within the address ranges of COM1 or COM2 (only when enabled during Super IO configuration) are decoded by the LPC core.

##### 5.1.1.1.2 LPC Memory Decoding

The LPC interface never responds to LPC memory accesses.

##### 5.1.1.1.3 LPC Firmware Decoding

The LPC interface never responds to LPC firmware accesses.

### 5.1.1.2 I<sup>2</sup>C Register Decoding

All I<sup>2</sup>C accesses from the IPMC towards the FPGA when the I<sup>2</sup>C master uses the I<sup>2</sup>C slave address 0x7F (the corresponding 8-bit slave address is 0xFE).

Table 5-4 IPMC SPI Register

I <sup>2</sup> C Address Range	Address Range Name	Description
0x00 - 0x7F	IPMC_REGISTERS	All FPGA registers which are accessible from IPMC

### 5.1.2 POST Code Register

The FPGA provides an 8-bit register to store POST codes to the LPC I/O address 0x80. The 8-bit register data is displayed as two hex values by two 7-segment LED displays.

The IPMC can read the POST code using the SPI interface (with the signal IPMC\_SPI\_SS\_FPGA\_ asserted) and the SPI address 0x7F.

The two 7-segment LED displays are also used for power failure indication.

Table 5-5 POST Code Register

<b>LPC I/O Address: 0x80</b>			
<b>IPMC I<sup>2</sup>C Address: 0x7f</b>			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:0	POST codes from host	0	LPC: r/w IPMC: r

### 5.1.3 Super IO Configuration Register

After an LPC Reset (PCH\_PLTRST\_ is asserted) or “Power On Reset” the Super IO is in the Run Mode with the UARTs disabled. They may be configured using the LPC I/O Address Range (INDEX and DATA) by placing the Super IO into Configuration Mode.

## Maps and Registers

---

The BIOS uses these configuration addresses to initialize the logical devices at POST. The INDEX and DATA addresses are only valid when the Super IO is in Configuration State. The INDEX and DATA addresses are effective only when the Super IO is in the Configuration State. When the Super IO is not in the Configuration State, reads return 0xFF and write data is ignored.

Table 5-6 Super IO Configuration Index Register

LPC I/O Address: 0x4E			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:0	INDEX. Configuration Index.	0xFF	LPC: r/w

Table 5-7 Super IO Configuration Data Register

LPC I/O Address: 0x4F			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:0	DATA. Configuration Data.	0xFF	LPC: r/w

### 5.1.3.1 Entering the Configuration State

The device enters the Configuration State by the following contiguous sequence:

1. Write 80H to Configuration Index Port
2. Write 86H to Configuration Index Port

### 5.1.3.2 Existing the Configuration State

The device exits the Configuration State by the following contiguous sequence:

1. Write 68H to Configuration Index Port
2. Write 08H to Configuration Index Port

### 5.1.3.3 Configuration Mode

The system sets the logical device information and activates desired logical devices through the INDEX and DATA ports.

The desired configuration registers are accessed in two steps:

1. Write the index of the Logical Device Number Configuration Register (i.e., 07) to the INDEX PORT and then write the number of the desired logical device to the DATA PORT.

2. Write the address of the desired configuration register within the logical device to the INDEX PORT and then write or read the configuration register through the DATA PORT.

### **NOTICE**

**If accessing the Global Configuration Registers, Step 1 is not required. The Super IO returns to the RUN state.**

**Only two states are defined (Run and Configuration). In the Run State the Super IO is always ready to enter the Configuration state.**

### 5.1.3.4 Super IO Configuration Registers

Address locations that are not listed are considered reserved register locations. Reads to reserved registers may return non-zero values. Writes to reserved locations may cause system failure.

#### 5.1.3.4.1 Global Control Configuration Registers

The Super IO Global Registers lie in the address range 0x00-0x2F. All eight bits of the ADDRESS port are used for register selection. All unimplemented registers and bits ignore writes and return zero when read. The INDEX PORT is used to select a configuration register in the chip. The DATA PORT is then used to access the selected register. These registers are accessible only in the Configuration Mode.

*Table 5-8 Global Configuration Register Summary*

<b>Index Address</b>	<b>Description</b>
0x07	Super IO Logical Device Number
0x20	Super IO Device ID
0x21	Super IO Device Revision
0x28	Super IO LPC Control
0x29	Super IO SERIRQ and Pre-divide Control

## Maps and Registers

Table 5-9 Super IO Logical Device Number Register

Index Address: 0x07			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:0	Logical Device Number: 0x04: Logical Device 4 (UART 1 Serial Port 1) 0x05: Logical Device 5 (UART2 Serial Port 2) A write to this register selects the current logical device. This allows access to the control and configuration registers for each logical device.	0	LPC: r/w

Table 5-10 Super IO Device Identification Register

Index Address: 0x20			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:0	Device ID	0x0	LPC: r

Table 5-11 Super IO Device Revision Register

Index Address: 0x21			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:0	Device Revision	0x01	LPC: r

Table 5-12 Super IO LPC Control Register

Index Address: 0x28			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	LPC Bus Wait States: 1: Long wait states (sync 6)	1	LPC: r
7:1	Reserved	0	LPC: r

Table 5-13 Global Super IO SERIRQ and Pre-divide Control Register

Index Address: 0x29			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	SERIRQ Enable: 0: disabled. Serial interrupts disabled. 1: enabled. Logical devices participate in interrupt generations.	0	LPC: r/w
1	SERIRQ Mode: 1: Continuous Mode	1	LPC: r
3:2	UART Clock pre-divide 00: divide by 1 01: divide by 8 10: divide by 26 (CLK_UART is 48 MHz) 11: reserved	0	LPC: r/w
7:4	Reserved	0	LPC: r

5.1.3.4.2 Logical Device Configuration Registers

Use to access the registers that are assigned to each logical unit. The Super IO supports two logical units and has two sets of logical device registers. The two logical devices are UART1 (Logical Number 4) and UART2 (Logical Number 5). A separate set (bank) of control and configuration registers exists for each logical device and is selected with the Logical Device Number Register. The INDEX PORT is used to select a specific logical device register. These registers are then accessed through the DATA PORT. The Logical Device registers are accessible only when the device is in the Configuration state.

Table 5-14 Logical Device Configuration Register Summary

Index Address	Description
0x30	Enable
0x60	Base I/O Address MSB
0x61	Base I/O Address LSB
0x70	Primary Interrupt Select
0x74	Reserved
0x75	Reserved

## Maps and Registers

Table 5-14 Logical Device Configuration Register Summary (continued)

Index Address	Description
0xF0	Reserved

The logical register addresses are shown in the following tables:

Table 5-15 Logical Device Enable Register

Index Address: 0x30			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	Logical Device Enable: 0: disabled. Currently selected device is inactive 1: enabled. The currently selected device is enabled	1	LPC: r/w
7:1	Reserved	0	LPC: r

Table 5-16 Logical Device Base I/O Address MSB Register

Index Address: 0x60			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:0	Logical Device Base I/O Address MSB	0	LPC: r/w

Table 5-17 Logical Device Base I/O Address LSB Register

Index Address: 0x61			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
2:0	Bits 0 to 2 are read only. Decode is on 8 Byte boundary.	0	LPC: r
7:3	Logical Device Base I/O Address LSB. (Bits 3 to 7)	0	LPC: r/w

Registers 0x60 (MSB) and 0x61 (LSB) set the Logical Device Base I/O for this logical device. For example, for Base I/O address 0x3F8 the content of Register 0x60 is 0x03 and the content of Register 0x61 is 0xF8. The following table contains the Common Decode Ranges:

Table 5-18 Logical Device Common Decode Ranges

I/O Address Range	Description
0x3F8 - 0x3FF	COM1



Table 5-18 Logical Device Common Decode Ranges (continued)

I/O Address Range	Description
0x2F8 - 0x2FF	COM2
0x2E8 - 0x2EF	COM3
0x3E8 - 0x3EF	COM4

Table 5-19 Logical Device Primary Interrupt Register

Index Address: 0x70			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
3:0	Interrupt level is used for Primary Interrupt: 0x0: no interrupt selected 0x1: IRQ1 0x2: IRQ2 0x3: IRQ3 0x4: IRQ4 0x5: IRQ5 0x6: IRQ6 0x7: IRQ7 0x8: IRQ8 0x9: IRQ9 0xA: IRQ10 0xB: IRQ11 0xC: IRQ12 0xD: IRQ13 0xE: IRQ14 0xF: IRQ15	0	LPC: r/w
7:4	Reserved	0	LPC: r

### NOTICE

An Interrupt is activated by enabling this device (offset 0x30), setting this register to a non-zero value and setting any combination of bits 0-4 in the corresponding UART IER and the occurrence of the corresponding UART event (i.e., Modem Status Change, Receiver Line Error Condition, Transmit Data Request, Receiver Data Available or Receiver Time Out) and setting the OUT2 bit in the MCR.

## Maps and Registers

Table 5-20 Logical Device 0x74 Reserved Register

Index Address: 0x74			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:0	Reserved	0x04	LPC: r

Table 5-21 Logical Device 0x75 Reserved Register

Index Address: 0x75			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:0	Reserved	0x04	LPC: r

Table 5-22 Logical Device 0xF0 Reserved Register

Index Address: 0xF0			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:0	Reserved	0	LPC: r

### 5.1.4 UART1 and UART2 Register Map

The LPC I/O Base addresses BASE1 for UART1 and BASE2 for UART2 are set up during Super IO configuration. See [Super IO Configuration Register on page 115](#).

#### 5.1.4.1 UART Register Overview

[Table 5-23](#) shows the registers and their addresses as offsets of a base address for one of the two UARTs.

The state of the Divisor Latch Access Bit (DLAB), which is the MOST significant bit of the Line Control Register (LCR), affects the selection of certain of the UART registers. The DLAB bit must be set high by the system software to access the Baud Rate Generator Divisor Latches (DLL and DLM).

Table 5-23 UART Register Overview

LPC I/O Address	DLAB value	Description
Base	0	Receiver Buffer (RBR). Read Only.
Base	0	Transmitter Holding (THR). Write Only.

Table 5-23 UART Register Overview (continued)

LPC I/O Address	DLAB value	Description
Base + 1	0	Interrupt Enable Register (IER)
Base + 2	X	Interrupt Identification Register (IIR). Read Only.
Base + 2	X	FIFO Control Register (FCR). Write Only.
Base + 3	X	Line Control Register (LCR)
Base + 4	X	Modem Control Register (MCR)
Base + 5	X	Line Status Register (LSR). Read Only.
Base + 6	X	Modem Status Register (MSR). Read Only.
Base + 7	X	Scratch Register (SCR)
Base	1	Divisor Latch LSB (DLL)
Base + 1	1	Divisor Latch MSB (DLM)

5.1.4.2 UART Registers DLAB=0

5.1.4.2.1 Receiver Buffer Register (RBR)

In non-FIFO mode, this register holds the character received by the UART's Receive Shift Register. If fewer than eight bits are received, the bits are right-justified and the leading bits are zeroed. Reading this register will clear the register bits and reset the Data Ready (DR) bit in the Line Status Register to zero. Other (error) bits in the Line Status Register are not cleared. In FIFO mode, this register latches the value of the data byte at the top of the FIFO.

Table 5-24 Receiver Buffer Register (RBR) if DLAB=0

LPC I/O Address: Base			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:0	Receiver Buffer register (RBR)	Undef.	LPC: r

## Maps and Registers

### 5.1.4.2.2 Transmitter Holding Register (THR)

This register holds the next data byte to be transmitted. When the Transmit Shift Register becomes empty, the contents of the Transmit Holding Register are loaded into the shift register and the transmit data request (TDRQ) bit in the Line Status Register is set to one.

Table 5-25 Transmitter Holding Register (THR) if DLAB=0

LPC I/O Address: Base			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:0	Transmitter Holding register (THR)	Undef.	LPC: w

In FIFO mode, writing to THR puts data to the top of the FIFO. The data at the bottom of the FIFO is loaded to the shift register when it is empty.

### 5.1.4.2.3 Interrupt Enable Register (IER)

This register enables four types of interrupts which independently activate the int signal and set a value in the Interrupt Identification Register. Each of the four interrupt types can be disabled by resetting the appropriate bit of the IER register. Similarly, by setting the appropriate bits, selected interrupts can be enabled.

Table 5-26 Interrupt Enable Register (IER), if DLAB=0

LPC I/O Address: Base + 1			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	Receive data interrupt enable/disable: 1: receive data interrupt enabled 0: receive data interrupt disabled	0	LPC: r/w
1	Transmitter holding register empty (THRE) interrupt enable/disable: 1: THRE interrupt enabled 0: THRE interrupt disabled	0	LPC: r/w
2	Receiver line status interrupt enable/disable: 1: receiver line status interrupt enabled 0: receiver line status interrupt disabled	0	LPC: r/w
3	Modem status interrupt enable/disable: 1: modem status interrupt enabled 0: modem status interrupt disabled	0	LPC: r/w

Table 5-26 Interrupt Enable Register (IER), if DLAB=0 (continued)

LPC I/O Address: Base + 1			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:4	Reserved	0	LPC: r

5.1.4.2.4 Interrupt Identification Register (IIR)

In order to minimize software overhead during data character transfers, the UART prioritizes interrupts into four levels (listed in table below) and records these in the Interrupt Identification Register (IIR). The IIR stores information indicating that a prioritized interrupt is pending and the source of that interrupt.

Table 5-27 UART Interrupt Priorities

Priority Level	Interrupt Source
1 (highest)	Receiver Line Status. One or more error bits were set.
2	Received Data is available. In FIFO mode, trigger level was reached; in non-FIFO mode, RBR has data.
2	Receiver Time out occurred. It happens in FIFO mode only, when there is data in the receive FIFO but no activity for a time period.
3	Transmitter requests data. In FIFO mode, the transmit FIFO is half or more than half empty; in non-FIFO mode, THR is read already.
4	Modem Status: one or more of the modem input signals has changed state.

Table 5-28 Interrupt Identification Register (IIR)

LPC I/O Address: Base + 2			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	Interrupt status bit: 1: no interrupt pending 0: interrupt pending	1	LPC: r
2:1	Interrupt priority level and source: 11: Receiver line status 10: Receiver data available 01: Transmitter holding register empty 00: Modem status	0	LPC: r

## Maps and Registers

---

Table 5-28 Interrupt Identification Register (IIR) (continued)

LPC I/O Address: Base + 2			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
3	Time Out Detected: 0: No time out interrupt is pending 1: Character time-out indication (FIFO mode only)	0	LPC: r
5:4	Reserved	0	LPC: r
7:6	FIFO Mode Enable bits: 00: Default mode 01: Reserved 10: Reserved 11: FIFO mode	0	LPC: r

Table 5-29 Interrupt Identification Register Decode

Interrupt ID	Interrupt Set/Reset Function				
	3:0	Priority	Type	Source	Reset Control
0b0001	-	None	No Interrupt is pending.		-
0b0110	1	Receiver Line Status	Overrun Error, Parity Error, Framing Error, Break Interrupt.		Reading the Line Status Register.
0b0100	2	Received Data Available.	Non-FIFO mode: Receive Buffer is full.	Non-FIFO mode: Reading the Receiver Buffer Register.	
			FIFO mode: Trigger level was reached.	FIFO mode: Reading bytes until Receiver FIFO drops below trigger level or setting RESETRF bit in FCR register.	
0b1100		Character Timeout indication.	FIFO Mode only: At least 1 character is in receiver FIFO and there was no activity for a time period.		Reading the Receiver FIFO or setting RESETRF bit in FCR register.
0b0010	3	Transmit FIFO Data Request	Non-FIFO mode: Transmit Holding Register Empty.	Reading the IIR Register (if the source of the interrupt) or writing into the Transmit Holding Register.	
			FIFO mode: Transmit FIFO has half or less than half data.	Reading the IIR Register (if the source of the interrupt) or writing to the Transmitter FIFO.	
0b0000	4	Modem Status	Clear to Send, Data Set Ready, Ring Indicator, Received Line Signal Detect.		Reading the modem status register.

## Maps and Registers

### 5.1.4.2.5 FIFO Control Register (FCR)

FCR is a write-only register that is located at the same address as the IIR (IIR is a read-only register). FCR enables/disables the transmitter/receiver FIFOs, clears the transmitter/receiver FIFOs, and sets the receiver FIFO trigger level.

Table 5-30 FIFO Control Register (FCR)

LPC I/O Address: Base + 2			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	FIFO enable/disable: 1: Transmitter and Receiver FIFO enabled 0: FIFO disabled	0	LPC: w
1	Receiver FIFO reset: 1: Bytes in receiver FIFO and counter are reset. Shift register is not reset (bit is self-clearing) 0: No effect	0	LPC: w
2	Transmit FIFO reset: 1: Bytes in receiver FIFO and counter are reset. Shift register is not reset (bit is self-clearing) 0: No effect	0	LPC: w
3	Receiver/Transmitter ready. Not supported.	0	LPC: w
5:4	Reserved	0	LPC: w
7:6	Receiver FIFO interrupt trigger level: 00: 1 byte 01: 4 bytes 10: 8 bytes 11: 14 bytes	0	LPC: w

### 5.1.4.2.6 Line Control Register (LCR)

In the Line Control Register (LCR), the system programmer specifies the format of the asynchronous data communications exchange. The serial data format consists of a start bit (logic 0), five to eight data bits, an optional parity bit, and one or two stop bits (logic 1). The LCR has bits for accessing the Divisor Latch and causing a break condition. The programmer can also read the contents of the Line Control Register. The read capability simplifies system programming and eliminates the need for separate storage in system memory.



Table 5-31 Line Control Register (LCR)

LPC I/O Address: Base + 3			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
1:0	Serial character WORD length: 00: 5 bits 01: 6 bits 10: 7 bits 11: 8 bits	0	LPC: r/w
2	Stop bit length: 1: 1.5 stop bits for 5 bit WORD length 1: 2 stop bits for 6, 7, and 8 bit WORD length 0: 1 stop bit for any serial character WORD length	0	LPC: r/w
3	Parity enable/disable When bit 3 is set, a parity bit is generated in transmitted data between the last data WORD bit and the first stop bit. In received data, if bit 3 is set, parity is checked. When bit 3 is cleared, no parity is generated or checked: 1: Parity enabled 0: Parity disabled	0	LPC: r/w
4	Parity even/odd When parity is enabled and bit 4 is set, even parity (an even number of logic ones in the data and parity bits) is selected. When parity is disabled and bit 4 is cleared, odd parity (an odd number of logic ones) is selected: 1: Even parity 0: Odd parity	0	LPC: r/w
5	Stick parity When bits 3, 4, and 5 are set, the parity bit is transmitted and checked as cleared. When bits 3 and 5 are set and bit 4 is cleared, the parity bit is transmitted and checked as set. If bit 5 is cleared, stick parity is disabled: 1: Stick parity enabled 0: Stick parity disabled	0	LPC: r/w

## Maps and Registers

---

Table 5-31 Line Control Register (LCR) (continued)

LPC I/O Address: Base + 3			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
6	Break control bit Bit 6 is set to force a break condition, i.e. a condition where TXD is forced to the spacing (cleared) state. When bit 6 is cleared, the break condition is disabled and has no affect on the transmitter logic. It only effects TXD: 1: Break condition enabled 0: Break condition disabled	0	LPC: r/w
7	Divisor latch access bit (DLAB) Bit 7 must be set to access the divisor latches of the baud generator during a read or write. Bit 7 must be cleared during a read or write to access the RBR, THR, or IER: 1: Access to DLL and DLM registers 0: Access to RBR, THR and IER registers	0	LPC: r/w

5.1.4.2.7 Modem Control Register (MCR)

This 8-bit register controls the interface with the modem or data set (or a peripheral device emulating a modem).

Table 5-32 Modem Control Register (MCR)

LPC I/O Address: Base + 4			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	Data terminal ready (DTR#) output control: 1: DTR# output in low (active) state 0: DTR# output in high state	0	LPC: r/w
1	Request to send (#) output control: 1: # output in low (active) state 0: # output in high state	0	LPC: r/w
2	User output control signal (OUT1#): 1: OUT1# output in high state 0: OUT1# output in low state Not supported	0	LPC: r/w
3	User output control signal (OUT2#): 1: OUT2# output in high state 0: OUT2# output in low state Not supported	0	LPC: r/w
4	Local loop back diagnostic control When loop back is activated: Transmitter TXD is set high. Receiver RXD is disconnected. Output of Transmitter Shift register is looped back into the receiver shift register input. Modem control inputs are disconnected Modem control outputs are internally connected to modem control inputs. Modem control outputs are forced to the inactive (high) levels: 1: Loop back mode activated 0: Normal operation	0	LPC: r/w
5	Autoflow control enable (AFE): 1: Autoflow control enabled (auto-# and auto-CTS# or auto-CTS# only enabled) 0: Autoflow control disabled	0	LPC: r/w

## Maps and Registers

Table 5-32 Modem Control Register (MCR) (continued)

LPC I/O Address: Base + 4			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:6	Reserved	0	LPC: r

### 5.1.4.2.8 Line Status Register (LSR)

This register provides status information to the processor concerning the data transfers. Bits 5 and 6 show information about the transmitter section. The rest of the bits contain information about the receiver.

In non-FIFO mode, three of the LSR register bits (parity error, framing error, and break interrupt) show the error status of the character that has just been received. In FIFO mode, these three bits of status are stored with each received character in the FIFO. LSR shows the status bits of the character at the top of the FIFO. When the character at the top of the FIFO has errors, the LSR error bits are set and are not cleared until software reads LSR, even if the character in the FIFO is read and a new character is now at the top of the FIFO.

Bits one through four are the error conditions that produce a receiver line status interrupt when any of the corresponding conditions are detected and the interrupt is enabled. These bits are not cleared by reading the erroneous byte from the FIFO or receive buffer. They are cleared only by reading LSR. In FIFO mode, the line status interrupt occurs only when the erroneous byte is at the top of the FIFO. If the erroneous byte being received is not at the top of the FIFO, an interrupt is generated only after the previous bytes are read and the erroneous byte is moved to the top of the FIFO.

Table 5-33 Line Status Register (LSR)

LPC I/O Address: Base + 5			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	Receiver data ready (DR) indicator DR is set whenever a complete incoming character has been received and transferred into the RBR or the FIFO. DR is cleared by reading all of the data in the RBR or the FIFO: 1: New data received 0: No new data	0	LPC: r

Table 5-33 Line Status Register (LSR) (continued)

LPC I/O Address: Base + 5			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
1	<p>Overrun error (OE) indicator</p> <p>When OE is set, it indicates that before the character in the RBR was read, it was overwritten by the next character transferred into the register. OE is cleared every time the CPU reads the contents of the LSR. If the FIFO mode data continues to fill the FIFO beyond the trigger level, an overrun error occurs only after the FIFO is full and the next character has been completely received in the shift register. An overrun error is indicated to the CPU as soon as it happens. The character in the shift register is overwritten but it is not transferred to the FIFO:</p> <p>1: Overrun error occurred 0: No overrun error</p>	0	LPC: r
2	<p>Parity Error (PE) indicator</p> <p>When PE is set, it indicates that the parity of the received data character does not match the parity selected in the LCR (bit 4). PE is cleared every time the CPU reads the contents of the LSR. In the FIFO mode, this error is associated with the particular character in the FIFO to which it applies. This error is revealed to the CPU when its associated character is at the top of the FIFO:</p> <p>1: Parity error occurred 0: No parity error</p>	0	LPC: r
3	<p>Framing Error (FE) indicator</p> <p>When FE is set, it indicates that the received character did not have a valid (set) stop bit. FE is cleared every time the CPU reads the contents of the LSR. In the FIFO mode, this error is associated with the particular character in the FIFO to which it applies. This error is revealed to the CPU when its associated character is at the top of the FIFO. The ACE tries to resynchronize after a framing error. To accomplish this, it is assumed that the framing error is due to the next start bit. The ACE samples this start bit twice and then accepts the input data:</p> <p>1: Framing error occurred 0: No framing error</p>	0	LPC: r

## Maps and Registers

Table 5-33 Line Status Register (LSR) (continued)

LPC I/O Address: Base + 5			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
4	<p>Break Interrupt (BI) indicator</p> <p>When BI is set, it indicates that the received data input was held low for longer than a full-word transmission time. A full-word transmission time is defined as the total time to transmit the start, data, parity, and stop bits. BI is cleared every time the CPU reads the contents of the LSR. In the FIFO mode, this error is associated with the particular character in the FIFO to which it applies. This error is revealed to the CPU when its associated character is at the top of the FIFO. When a break occurs, only one 0 character is loaded into the FIFO. The next character transfer is enabled after RXD goes to the marking state for at least two Receiver CLK samples and then receives the next valid start bit:</p> <p>1: Full WORD transmission time exceeded 0: Normal operation</p>	0	LPC: r
5	<p>Transmit Holding Register Empty (THRE) indicator</p> <p>THRE is set when the THR is empty, indicating that the ACE is ready to accept a new character. If the THRE interrupt is enabled when THRE is set, an interrupt is generated. THRE is set when the contents of the THR are transferred to the TSR. THRE is cleared concurrent with the loading of the THR by the CPU. In the FIFO mode, THRE is set when the transmit FIFO is empty; it is cleared when at least one byte is written to the transmit FIFO:</p> <p>1: THR/Transmit FIFO empty 0: THR/Transmit FIFO contains data</p>	1	LPC: r
6	<p>Transmitter Empty (TEMT) indicator</p> <p>TEMT bit is set when the THR and the TSR are both empty. When either the THR or the TSR contains a data character, TEMT is cleared. In the FIFO mode, TEMT is set when the transmitter FIFO and shift register are both empty:</p> <p>1: THR/Transmit FIFO/TSR empty 0: THR/Transmit FIFO/TSR contains data</p>	1	LPC: r

Table 5-33 Line Status Register (LSR) (continued)

LPC I/O Address: Base + 5			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7	<p>FIFO data error</p> <p>In the FIFO mode, LSR7 is set when there is at least one parity, framing, or break error in the FIFO. It is cleared when the microprocessor reads the LSR and there are no subsequent errors in the FIFO. If FIFO is not used, bit always reads 0:</p> <p>1: FIFO data error encountered</p> <p>0: No FIFO error encountered</p>	0	LPC: r

**5.1.4.2.9 Modem Status Register (MSR)**

This 8-bit register provides the current state of the control lines from the modem or data set (or a peripheral device emulating a modem) to the processor. In addition to this current state information, four bits of the Modem Status Register provide change information. Bits 03:00 are set to a logic 1 when a control input from the Modem changes state. They are reset to a logic 0 when the processor reads the Modem Status Register.

When bits 0, 1, 2, or 3 are set to logic 1, a Modem Status interrupt is generated if bit 3 of the Interrupt Enable Register is set.

Table 5-34 Modem Status Register (MSR)

LPC I/O Address: Base + 6			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	<p>Change in clear-to-send (DCTS) indicator</p> <p>DCTS indicates that the CTS# input has changed state since the last time it was read by the CPU. When DCTS is set (autoflow control is not enabled and the modem status interrupt is enabled), a modem status interrupt is generated. When autoflow control is enabled (DCTS is cleared), no interrupt is generated:</p> <p>1: Change in state of CTS# input since last read</p> <p>0: No change in state of CTS# input since last read</p>	0	LPC: r/w

## Maps and Registers

Table 5-34 Modem Status Register (MSR) (continued)

LPC I/O Address: Base + 6			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
1	Change in data set ready (DDSR) indicator DDSR indicates that the DSR# input has changed state since the last time it was read by the CPU. When DDSR is set and the modem status interrupt is enabled, a modem status interrupt is generated: 1: Change in state of DSR# input since last read 0: No change in state of DSR# input since last read	0	LPC: r/w
2	Trailing edge of the ring indicator (TERI) detector TERI indicates that the RI# input to the chip has changed from a low to a high level. When TERI is set and the modem status interrupt is enabled, a modem status interrupt is generated. Not supported.	0	LPC: r/w
3	Change in data carrier detect (DDCD) indicator DDCD indicates that the DCD# input to the chip has changed state since the last time it was read by the CPU. When DDCD is set and the modem status interrupt is enabled, a modem status interrupt is generated. Not supported.	0	LPC: r/w
4	Complement of the clear-to-send (CTS#) input When the Asynchronous Communications Element (ACE) is in diagnostic test mode (LOOP [MCR4] = 1), this bit is equal to the MCR bit 1 (#).	Ext.	LPC: r
5	Complement of the data set ready (DSR#) input When the ACE is in the diagnostic test mode (LOOP [MCR4] = 1), this bit is equal to the MCR bit 0 (DTR#).	Ext.	LPC: r
6	Complement of the ring indicator (RI#) input When the ACE is in the diagnostic test mode (LOOP [MCR4] = 1), this bit is equal to the MCR bit 2 (OUT1#). Not supported.	Ext.	LPC: r
7	Complement of the data carrier detect (DCD#) input When the ACE is in the diagnostic test mode (LOOP [MCR4] = 1), this bit is equal to the MCR bit 3 (OUT2#). Not supported.	Ext.	LPC: r



### 5.1.4.2.10 Scratch Register (SCR)

This 8-bit read/write register has no effect on the UART. It is intended as a scratch pad register for use by the programmer.

Table 5-35 Scratch Register (SCR)

LPC I/O Address: Base + 7			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:0	Scratch Register (SCR) The scratch register is an 8-bit register that is intended for the programmer's use as a scratch pad in the sense that it temporarily holds the programmer's data without affecting any other ACE operation.	Undef.	LPC: r/w

### 5.1.4.3 Programmable Baud Rate Generator

The UART contains a programmable Baud Rate Generator that is capable of taking the UART\_CLK input and dividing it by any divisor from 1 to  $(2^{16}-1)$ . The output frequency of the Baud Rate Generator is 16 times the baud rate. Two 8-bit latches store the divisor in a 16-bit binary format. These divisor latches must be loaded during initialization to ensure proper operation of the Baud Rate Generator. If both divisor latches are loaded with 0, the 16X output clock is stopped. Upon loading either of the divisor latches, a 16-bit baud counter is immediately loaded. This prevents long counts on initial load. Access to the divisor latch can be done with a word write.

The UART\_CLK is the CLK\_UART (48MHz) input divided by the pre-divider set by the Super IO Configuration Register (Offset 0x29).

The baud rate of the data shifted in/out of the UART is given by:

$$\text{Baud Rate} = \text{UART\_CLK} / (16X \text{ Divisor})$$

For example, if the pre-divider is 26, the UART\_CLK is 1.8461538MHz. When the divisor is 12, the baud rate is 9600.

A divisor value of 0 in the Divisor Latch Register is not allowed.

Table 5-36 Divisor Latch LSB Register (DLL), if DLAB=1

PC I/O Address: Base			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:0	Divisor Latch LSB (DLL)	Undef.	LPC: r/w

## Maps and Registers

Table 5-37 Divisor Latch MSB Register (DLM), if DLAB=1

LPC I/O Address: Base + 1			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:0	Divisor Latch MSB (DLM)	Undef.	LPC: r/w

### 5.1.5 FPGA Register Mapping

#### 5.1.5.1 LPC I/O Register Map

The FPGA registers can be accessed via LPC I/O cycles in the I/O address range REGISTERS. See [Table 5-38](#) FPGA Register Map Overview. For a LPC register access the host uses the base address, 0x600. Individual registers can be accessed by adding an offset to the base address. An LPC I/O write access to an address not listed in this table or marked with an “-” in the LPC I/O column is ignored. A corresponding read access delivers always zero – used and reserved for future extensions. A reserved register is read only and deliver always zero. A reserved bit is read-only and always reads zero.

### NOTICE

**LPC I/O Address = 0x600 + Address Offset**

#### 5.1.5.2 IPMC I<sup>2</sup>C Register Map

Some FPGA registers may be accessed via IPMC Private I<sup>2</sup>C transactions (Slave address 0x7F). See [Table 5-38](#) FPGA Register Map Overview. An IPMC write access to an address not listed in this table or marked with a “-” in the IPMC I<sup>2</sup>C column is ignored. A corresponding read access delivers always zero. The address offsets not mentioned below are not used and reserved for future extensions. A reserved register is read-only and always deliver zero. A reserved bit is read-only and always reads zero.

Table 5-38 FPGA Register Map Overview

LPC Address Offset	LPC I/O	IPMC I <sup>2</sup> C	Description
0x00-0x01	r	r	Module Identification Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-39</a> )
0x02	r	r	FPGA Version Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-40</a> )
0x03	r/w	r	Serial Redirection Control Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-41</a> )

Table 5-38 FPGA Register Map Overview (continued)

LPC Address Offset	LPC I/O	IPMC I <sup>2</sup> C	Description
0x04	r	r/w	Serial over LAN Control Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-42</a> )
0x05	r	r/w	Serial Line Routing Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-43</a> )
0x06	r	r/w	IPMC Power Level Register
0x07	r	r/w	IPMC Power Level Multiplier Register
0x08	-	r	ME Power Failure State Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-44</a> )
0x09	-	r	ME Power Failure Cause Register (See, <a href="#">Table 5-46</a> )
0x0A	-	r	Payload Power Failure State Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-47</a> )
0x0B	-	r	Payload Power Failure Cause Register 1 (See <a href="#">Table 5-49</a> )
0x0C	-	r	Payload Power Failure Cause Register 2 (See <a href="#">Table 5-50</a> )
0x0D	-	r	Payload Power Failure Cause Register 3 (See <a href="#">Table 5-51</a> )
0x0E	-	r	Power Status Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-52</a> )
0x10	r/w1c	r	BIOS Reset Source Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-53</a> )
0x11	r/w	r	Reset Mask Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-54</a> )
0x12	r/w1c	r	BIOS IPMC Watchdog Timeout Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-55</a> )
0x13	w	-	BIOS Push Button Enable Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-56</a> )
0x14	r/w1c	r	OS Reset Source Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-57</a> )
0x15	r/w1c	r	OS IPMC Watchdog Timeout Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-58</a> )
0x16	-	r/w	IPMC Watchdog Timeout Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-59</a> )
0x17	-	r/w1c	IPMC Reset Source Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-60</a> )
0x18	r/w	r	DIMM ADR Feature Configuration Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-62</a> )
0x19	-	r/w1c	IPMC Interrupt Status Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-61</a> )
0x1A	r/w1c	r	DIMM ADR Status Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-63</a> )

## Maps and Registers

Table 5-38 FPGA Register Map Overview (continued)

LPC Address Offset	LPC I/O	IPMC I <sup>2</sup> C	Description
0x1E	-	w	CPU Control Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-64</a> )
0x20	-	w	NMI Generation Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-65</a> )
0x20	r/w1c	-	NMI Status Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-66</a> )
0x21	r/w1c	w	Internal Interrupt Status Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-67</a> )
0x22	r	-	Telecom Interrupt Status Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-68</a> )
0x23	r/w	-	Telecom Interrupt Control Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-69</a> )
0x24	r	-	External Interrupt Status Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-70</a> )
0x25-0x27	r/w	-	<a href="#">Interrupt Mask and Map Registers on page 163</a>
0x30- 0x37	r/w	r/w	<a href="#">CPU0 Hot Plug I<sup>2</sup>C I/O Expander Registers on page 164</a>
0x38-0x3F	r/w	r/w	<a href="#">CPU1 Hot Plug I<sup>2</sup>C I/O Expander Registers on page 165</a>
0x40	r	r/w	Flash Status Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-76</a> )
0x41	r/w	r	PCH Output Enable Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-77</a> )
0x42	r/w	-	RTM SPI Address/Command Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-78</a> )
0x43	r/w	-	RTM SPI Write Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-79</a> ) RTM SPI Read Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-80</a> )
0x48	r/w	r	Update Channel Equalization Control Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-81</a> )
0x4A	r/w	r	RTM USB Control Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-82</a> )
0x4B	-	r	RTM Status Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-83</a> )
0x4C	-	r/w1c	RTM Interrupt Status Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-84</a> )
0x50	r/w	r	LED Control Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-85</a> )
0x52	r	r	Spare Signal Status Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-86</a> )
0x54	r	r	CPU Presence Detection Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-87</a> )

Table 5-38 FPGA Register Map Overview (continued)

LPC Address Offset	LPC I/O	IPMC I <sup>2</sup> C	Description
0x57	r	r	CPU Error Status Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-88</a> )
0x60	r/w	-	Telecom Clock Monitor Control Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-90</a> )
0x61	r/w1c	-	Telecom Clock Monitor Status Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-91</a> )
0x62	r/w1c	-	Telecom Clock Monitor Out of Range Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-92</a> )
0x63	r/w	-	Telecom Clock Monitor Select Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-93</a> )
0x64	r/w	-	Telecom Clock Monitor Time Base Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-94</a> )
0x66-0x67	r/w	-	Telecom Clock Monitor Frequency/Period Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-95</a> )
0x68-0x69	r/w	-	Telecom Clock Monitor Lower Limit Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-96</a> )
0x6A-0x6B	r/w	-	Telecom Clock Monitor Upper Limit Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-97</a> )
0x74	r/w	r	BIOS Version Register 1 (See <a href="#">Table 5-98</a> )
0x75	r/w	r	BIOS Version Register 2 (See <a href="#">Table 5-99</a> )
0x76	r/w	r	BIOS Version Register 3 (See <a href="#">Table 5-100</a> )
0x78	r	r/w	IPMC BIOS Communication Register 1 (See <a href="#">Table 5-101</a> )
0x79	r	r/w	IPMC BIOS Communication Register 2 (See <a href="#">Table 5-102</a> )
0x7A	r	r/w	IPMC BIOS Communication Register 3 (See <a href="#">Table 5-103</a> )
0x7D	r/w	r	LPC Scratch Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-104</a> )
0x7E	r	r/w	IPMC Scratch Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-105</a> )
0x7F <sup>1</sup>	-	r	POST Code Register (See <a href="#">Table 5-5</a> )

<sup>1</sup> For LPC I/O address 0x80 is used. See [Table 5-5](#) POST Code Register.

## Maps and Registers

### 5.1.6 Module Identification Register

The Module Identification Register identifies the ATCA-7540 blade.

Table 5-39 Module Identification Register

Address Offset: 0x00			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
15:0	ATCA-7540 Blade Module Identification	0x7540	r

### 5.1.7 Version Register

The version register provides the version of the FPGA bit stream. The initial value starts at 0x01 and will be incremented with each new release.

Table 5-40 FPGA Version Register

Address Offset: 0x02			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:0	Specifies FPGA version	0x1 (Initial Value)	r

### 5.1.8 Serial Redirection Control Register

BIOS sets the corresponding bit, which is used for serial redirection. The IPMC uses this information to route the corresponding port to serial IPMC interface in case of SOL.

## NOTICE

**BIOS should never set both status bits.**

Table 5-41 Serial Redirection Control Register

Address Offset: 0x03			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	COM1 used for serial redirection: 0: COM1 not used for serial redirection 1: COM1 used for serial redirection	0	LPC: r/w IPMC: r

Table 5-41 Serial Redirection Control Register (continued)

Address Offset: 0x03			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
1	COM2 use for serial redirection: 0: COM2 not used for serial redirection 1: COM2 used for serial redirection	0	LPC: r/w IPMC: r
7:2	Reserved	0	r

### 5.1.9 Serial over LAN Control Register

The IPMC software can route serial data from serial port 1 (COM1) or serial port 2 (COM2) to the IPMC.

## NOTICE

**When both control bits are enabled, bit 1 is ignored.**  
**Serial over LAN is done through NCSI from IPMC MAC to PCH. Therefore this register is implemented as backup option.**

Table 5-42 Serial over LAN Control Register

Address Offset: 0x04			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	SOL over COM1 enable: 0: disabled 1: enabled. COM1 is forwarded to IMPC	PWR_GOOD: 0	IPMC: r/w LPC: r
1	SOL over COM2 enable: 0: disabled 1: enabled. COM2 is forwarded to IMPC	PWR_GOOD: 0	IPMC: r/w LPC: r
7:2	Reserved	0	r

## Maps and Registers

### 5.1.10 Serial Line Routing Register

The following table contains the Serial Line Routing Register information.

Table 5-43 Serial Line Routing Register

Address Offset: 0x05			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	Inverted level of signal SEL_SERIAL, which is controlled by switch SW2.1. 0: COM1 to Face plate and COM2 to RTM 1: COM1 to RTM and COM2 to Face plate Note: Setting may be overwritten by IPMC Software controlling Bit 4	Ext. (SW2.1) 0: OFF 1: ON	r
1	Inverted level of signal IPMC_SER_2_HEADER, which is controlled by switch SW2.2. 0: IPMC Serial Debug Interface to 3 Pin Header 1: IPMC Serial Debug Interface to Face plate Note: Setting may be overwritten by IPMC Software controlling Bit 5	Ext. (SW2.2) 0: OFF 1: ON	r
3:2	Reserved	0	r
4	IPMC_COM_ROUTE_A 0: COM1 to Face plate and COM2 to RTM 1: COM1 to RTM and COM2 to Face plate	PWR_GOOD:0	IPMC: r/w LPC: r
5	IPMC_COM_ROUTE_DEBUG 0: IPMC Serial Debug Interface to 3 Pin Header 1: IPMC Serial Debug Interface to Face plate	PWR_GOOD:0	IPMC: r/w LPC: r
7:6	Reserved	0	r

### 5.1.11 IPMC Power Failure Registers

There are eight failure registers implemented to indicate the cause of a power failure and report some status information.

The content of the failure registers are also displayed via the seven segment LED displays.



5.1.11.1 ME Power Failure Registers

When an ME failure occurs, the red power failure LED (signal PWR\_FAIL\_) starts blinking. (The LED is one second ON and one second OFF).

The error state is kept until ME wakes up (signal SLP\_A\_ becomes high).

Table 5-44 ME Power Failure State Register

Address Offset: 0x08			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
2:0	ME Power Failure State. Latched last ME state when failure occurred. See <a href="#">Table 5-48</a> ME Power Failure States. Note: Only valid with ME Failure (Bit 7) set	PWR_GOOD:0	IPMC: r
6:3	Reserved	0	IPMC: r
7	ME Failure. ME state machine sampled a failing ME Power status: 0: No ME Failure. Normal ME operation. 1: ME failure. ME failure detected.	PWR_GOOD:0	IPMC: r

The table below shows all possible failing states and their coding.

Table 5-45 ME Power Failure States

State Coding	State Name	Description
0	ME_OFF	Timeout. ASW power good for more than 45ms also ME is in ME_OFF state.
2	ME_ON	ASW power good lost
3	ME_PWR	Timeout. No ASW power good after 45ms
4	ME_WAIT	ASW power good lost
5	ME_WAIT_OFF	ASW power good lost
Other	-	These values will never occur

## Maps and Registers

The table below shows the failing cause for the ME power failure.

Table 5-46 ME Power Failure Cause Register

Address Offset: 0x09			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	Active Sleep Well (ASW) power failure: 0: No ASW power failure. ASW power is as expected. 1: ASW power failure. ASW power has different value as expected.  Note: Only valid when ME Failure (Bit 7) of ME Power Failure State Register ( <a href="#">Table 5-47</a> ) is set.	PWR_GOOD:0	IPMC: r
7:1	Reserved	0	IPMC: r

### 5.1.11.2 Payload Power Failure Registers

When a payload power failure occurs, the red power failure LED is switched ON (signal PWR\_FAIL\_ is driven low).

The power failing state is kept until payload power is turned off:

- Manual powering: Setting the switch, SW100.1 from OFF to ON.
- IPMC controlled powering: The IPMC shut down the payload power (signal IPMC\_VP48\_EN\_ is de-asserted)

Table 5-47 Payload Power Failure State Register

Address Offset: 0x0A			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
4:0	Payload Power Failure State. Latched last Payload Power state when failure occurred. See <a href="#">Table 5-48</a> . Note: Only valid with Payload Failure (Bit 7) is set.	PWR_GOOD:0	IPMC: r
6:5	Reserved	0	IPMC: r
7	Payload Power Failure. Payload Power state machine sampled a failing Payload Power status: 0: No Payload Power Failure. Normal Payload operation. 1: Payload Power failure. Payload Power failure detected.	PWR_GOOD:0	IPMC: r

The table below shows all possible failing states and their coding. When the blade is powered via switch SW100.1, the debug mode is enabled, where some timeouts are disabled. With debug mode enabled, the failure transition to SHUTDOWN is disabled for the states CLK\_ENABLE, WAIT\_100MS and S0. The failing state and the failing causes are latched.

Table 5-48 Payload Power Failure States

State Coding	State Name	Description
0x1	CLK_ENABLE	One or more voltages have failed, which have been already enabled and sampled good.
0x4	S0	One or more voltages have failed, which have been already enabled and sampled good. Other cause: Thermtrip
0x5	S3	One or more of these voltages have failed: 12V, 5V aux, VPP or VDD
0x7	TRACK_MASTE R_ON	Timeout (debug disabled) after 280ms. Tracked voltages are not good. Other cause: 12V or 5V aux power failure
0x8	VCCIN_ENABL E	Timeout (debug disabled) after 280ms. VCCIN voltages are not good. Other cause: One or more voltages have failed, which have been already enabled and sampled good.
0x9	VCCIO_VPP_E NABLE	Timeout (debug disabled) after 280ms. VCCIO and VPP voltages are not good. Other cause: One or more voltages have failed, which have been already enabled and sampled good.
0xA	VDDQ_ENABLE	Timeout (debug disabled) after 280ms. VDD voltages are not good. Other cause: One or more voltages have failed, which have been already enabled and sampled good.
0xB	VP12_ON	Timeout (debug disabled) after 280ms. 12V or 5V aux voltages are not good.
0xC	VTT_ENABLE	Timeout (debug disabled) after 280ms. VTT voltages are not good. Other cause: One or more voltages have failed, which have been already enabled and sampled good.

## Maps and Registers

Table 5-48 Payload Power Failure States (continued)

State Coding	State Name	Description
0xD	WAIT_100MS	One or more voltages have failed, which have been already enabled and sampled good.
0xE	WAKE_UP	Timeout. Blade does not wake up within 5s.
Other	-	These values will never occur.

The tables below shows more details about the payload power failure. The Payload Power Failure Registers 1 to 3 content is always 0, when the Payload Power Failure status (bit 7) of Payload Power Failure State Register ([Table 5-47](#)) is not set.

Table 5-49 Payload Power Failure Cause Register 1

Address Offset: 0x0B			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	Payload wakeup failure: 0: No wakeup issue. Blade wakes up within 5s timeout. 1: Wakeup failure. Blade does not wake up (SLP_S3_ stays low) within 5s timeout	PWR_GOOD: 0	IPMC: r
1	VCCIO power good failure (signal PWRGD_PVCCIO): 0: No VCCIO power issue. 1: VCCIO power failure.	PWR_GOOD: 0	IPMC: r
6:2	Reserved	0	IPMC: r
7	Thermtrip failure (signal THERMTRIP_ 0: No Thermtrip issue. 1: Thermtrip detected. THERMTRIP_ was asserted in S0 state.	PWR_GOOD: 0	IPMC: r

The Payload Power Failure Cause Register 2 covers the main blade voltages.

Table 5-50 Payload Power Failure Cause Register 2

<b>Address Offset: 0x0C</b>			
<b>Bit</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Default</b>	<b>Access</b>
0	12V power good failure (signal PWRGD_VP12): 0: No 12V power issue. 1: 12V power failure.	PWR_GOOD:0	IPMC: r
1	5V aux power good failure (signal PWRGD_VP5AUX): 0: No 5V aux power issue. 1: 5V aux power failure.	PWR_GOOD:0	IPMC: r
2	5V power good failure (signal PWRGD_VP5): 0: No 5V power issue. 1: 5V power failure.	PWR_GOOD:0	IPMC: r
3	1.0V power good failure (signal PWRGD_V1P0): 0: No 1.0V power issue. 1: 1.0V power failure.	PWR_GOOD:0	IPMC: r
4	0.75V power good failure (signal PWRGD_V0P75): 0: No 0.75V power issue. 1: 0.75V power failure.	PWR_GOOD:0	IPMC: r
5	3.3V and 1.05V power good failure (signal PWRGD_V3P3_V1P05): 0: No 3.3V and 1.05 power issue. 1: 3.3V and 1.05 power failure.	PWR_GOOD:0	IPMC: r
6	1.8V power good failure (signal PWRGD_V1P8): 0: No 1.8V power issue. 1: 1.8V power failure.	PWR_GOOD:0	IPMC: r
7	1.5V power good failure (signal PWRGD_V1P5): 0: No 1.5V power issue. 1: 1.5V power failure.	PWR_GOOD:0	IPMC: r

The Payload Power Failure Cause Register 3 covers CPU specific voltages. When a CPU is not mounted (detected via CPU0\_SKTOCC\_ and CPU1\_SKTOCC\_), the corresponding power failure bits will never be set.

## Maps and Registers

Table 5-51 Payload Power Failure Cause Register 3

<b>Address Offset: 0x0D</b>			
<b>Bit</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Default</b>	<b>Access</b>
0	VPP CPU0 power good failure (signal PWRGD_PVPP_ABCD): 0: No VPP CPU0 power issue 1: VPP CPU0 power failure	PWR_GOOD: 0	IPMC: r
1	VPP CPU1 power good failure (signal PWRGD_PVPP_EFGH): 0: No VPP CPU1 power issue 1: VPP CPU1 power failure	PWR_GOOD: 0	IPMC: r
2	VDD CPU0 power good failure (signal PWRGD_VDD_ABCD): 0: No VDD CPU0 power issue 1: VDD CPU0 power failure	PWR_GOOD: 0	IPMC: r
3	VDD CPU1 power good failure (signal PWRGD_VDD_EFGH): 0: No VDD CPU1 power issue 1: VDD CPU1 power failure	PWR_GOOD: 0	IPMC: r
4	VTT CPU0 power good failure (signal PWRGD_VTT_ABCD): 0: No VTT CPU0 power issue 1: VTT CPU0 power failure	PWR_GOOD: 0	IPMC: r
5	VTT CPU1 power good failure (signal PWRGD_VTT_EFGH): 0: No VTT CPU1 power issue 1: VTT CPU1 power failur	PWR_GOOD: 0	IPMC: r
6	VCCIN CPU0 power good failure (signal PWRGD_PVCCIN_CPU0): 0: No VCCIN CPU0 power issue 1: VCCIN CPU0 power failure	PWR_GOOD: 0	IPMC: r

Table 5-51 Payload Power Failure Cause Register 3 (continued)

Address Offset: 0x0D			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7	VCCIN CPU1 power good failure (signal PWRGD_PVCCIN_CPU1): 0: No VCCIN CPU1 power issue 1: VCCIN CPU1 power failure	PWR_GOOD: 0	IPMC: r

### 5.1.11.3 Power Status Register

This register provides some status information of external signals connected to the FPGA. The content corresponds to the external signal level.

Table 5-52 Power Status Register

Address Offset: 0x0E			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	Status of signal SLP_A_	Ext.	IPMC: r
1	Status of signal SLP_S4_	Ext.	IPMC: r
2	Status of signal SLP_S3_	Ext.	IPMC: r
3	Reserved	0	IPMC: r
4	Status of signal CPU_PWRGD	Ext.	IPMC: r
5	Status of signal XDP_HOOK1_SEL	Ext.	IPMC: r
6	Status of signal XDP_PWRGD_RST_	Ext.	IPMC: r
7	Status of signal XDP_CPU_SYSPWROK	Ext.	IPMC: r

## Maps and Registers

### 5.1.12 Reset Registers

#### 5.1.12.1 BIOS Reset Source Register

The BIOS Reset Source Register stores the source of the most recent reset. A “1” in the register bit indicates that the associated reset has occurred. If more than one reset occurs from different sources without clearing the corresponding register bits, one cannot determine the most recent reset source since more than one bit will be set. The same situation will happen if two reset sources go active at the same time.

### NOTICE

The OS should never write to this register.

Table 5-53 BIOS Reset Source Register

Address Offset: 0x10			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	PWR_GOOD Payload Power-on reset 1: Reset occurred	PWR_GOOD:1	LPC: r/w1c IPMC: r
1	XDPx reset request (Any one of XDPx signal caused reset) 1: Reset occurred	PWR_GOOD:0	LPC: r/w1c IPMC: r
2	PB_RST_ face plate push button reset 1: Reset occurred	PWR_GOOD:0	LPC: r/w1c IPMC: r
3	Reserved	0	r
4	RTM_PB_RST_ Reset key at RTM 1: Reset occurred	PWR_GOOD:0	LPC: r/w1c IPMC: r
5	Reserved	0	r
6	PCH_PLTRST_ reset 1: Reset occurred	PWR_GOOD:0	LPC: r/w1c IPMC: r
7	IPMC_RST_REQ_ Payload Reset from IPMC 1: Reset occurred	PWR_GOOD:0	LPC: r/w1c IPMC: r



**5.1.12.2 Reset Mask Register**

The reset mask register enables or disables forwarding of a reset source to reset output signal. Only Push Button Reset requests are masked using the reset mask register. The register default values are latched when PWR\_GOOD is asserted. This register can be read or written by the host CPU. A “1” in the register bit indicates that the associated reset is enabled. A “0” indicates that the associated reset source is masked.

*Table 5-54 Reset Mask Register*

<b>Address Offset: 0x11</b>			
<b>Bit</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Default</b>	<b>Access</b>
1:0	Reserved	0	r
2	PB_RST_ face plate push button reset 1: enabled 0: disabled	Ext.: FACE_PB_EN 1: (SW2.4 is OFF) 0: (SW2.4 is ON)	LPC: r/w
3	Reserved	0	r
4	RTM_PB_RST_ Reset key at RTM 1: enabled 0: disabled	Ext.: FACE_PB_EN 1: (SW2.4 is OFF) 0: (SW2.4 is ON)	LCP: r/w
7:5	Reserved	0	r

**5.1.12.3 BIOS IPMC Watchdog Timeout Register**

When one of the IPMC Watchdog Timeout bit of IPMC Watchdog Timeout Register is set, the corresponding BIOS IPMC Watchdog Timeout bit is set. The BIOS clears this status bit by writing one.

<b>NOTICE</b>
<b>The OS should never write to this register</b>

## Maps and Registers

Table 5-55 BIOS IPMC Watchdog Timeout Register

Address Offset: 0x12			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	BIOS IPMC Watchdog Timeout: 1: IPMC Watchdog Timeout occurred	PWR_GOOD:0	LPC: r/w1c IPMC: r
1	BIOS IPMC Pre-Timeout: 1: IPMC Pre-Timeout occurred	PWR_GOOD:0	LPC: r/w1c IPMC: r
7:2	Reserved	0	r

### 5.1.12.4 BIOS Push Button Enable Register

The BIOS needs to write to this register to enable the Front Panel push button reset, the RTM push button reset and the IPMC reset.

## NOTICE

After a timeout of 8s, the resets are armed again.

Table 5-56 BIOS Push Button Enable Register

Address Offset: 0x13			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:0	BIOS Push Button Enable Register	-	LPC: w

### 5.1.12.5 OS Reset Source Register

The OS Reset Source Register stores the source of the most recent reset. It is similar to the BIOS Reset Source Register. A “1” in the register bit indicates that the associated reset has occurred. If more than one reset occurs from different sources without clearing the corresponding register bits, one cannot determine the most recent reset source since more than one bit will be set. The same will happen if two reset sources go active at the same time.

## NOTICE

The BIOS should never write to this register.

Table 5-57 OS Reset Source Register

Address Offset: 0x14			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	PWR_GOOD Payload Power-on reset 1: Reset occurred	PWR_GOOD: 1	LPC: r/w1c IPMC: r
1	XDPx reset request (Any one of XDPx signal caused reset) 1: Reset occurred	PWR_GOOD: 0	LPC: r/w1c IPMC: r
2	PB_RST_ face plate push button reset 1: Reset occurred	PWR_GOOD: 0	LPC: r/w1c IPMC: r
3	Reserved	0	r
4	RTM_PB_RST_ Reset key at RTM 1: Reset occurred	PWR_GOOD: 0	LPC: r/w1c IPMC: r
5	Reserved	0	r
6	PCH_PLTRST_ reset 1: Reset occurred	PWR_GOOD: 0	LPC: r/w1c IPMC: r
7	IPMC_RST_REQ_ Payload Reset from IPMC. 1: Reset occurred	PWR_GOOD: 0	LPC: r/w1c IPMC: r

### 5.1.12.6 OS IPMC Watchdog Timeout Register

When one of the IPMC Watchdog Timeout bits of IPMC Watchdog Timeout Register is set, the corresponding OS IPMC Watchdog Timeout Register bit is set. The OS clears this status bit by writing one.

## NOTICE

**The BIOS should never write to this register.**

Table 5-58 OS IPMC Watchdog Timeout Register

Address Offset: 0x15			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	OS IPMC Watchdog Timeout: 1: IPMC Watchdog Timeout occurred	PWR_GOOD:0	LPC: r/w1c IPMC: r

## Maps and Registers

Table 5-58 OS IPMC Watchdog Timeout Register (continued)

Address Offset: 0x15			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
1	OS IPMC Pre-Timeout: 1: IPMC Pre-Timeout occurred	PWR_GOOD:0	LPC: r/w1c IPMC: r
7:2	Reserved	0	r

### 5.1.12.7 IPMC Watchdog Timeout Register

The IPMC SW sets the corresponding bit to signal of an IPMC watchdog timeout event. When the IPMC Watchdog Timeout bit is set from low to high, the corresponding bits in [Table 5-55](#) and [Table 5-58](#) are set.

## NOTICE

**The IPMC needs to clear the IPMC watchdog timeout bit to arm IPMC watchdog timeout event recognition.**

Table 5-59 IPMC Watchdog Timeout Register

Address Offset: 0x16			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	IPMC Watchdog Timeout: 0: No IPMC Watchdog Timeout 1: IPMC Watchdog Timeout occurred	PWR_GOOD:0	IPMC: r/w
1	IPMC Pre-Timeout: 0: No IPMC Pre-Timeout 1: IPMC Pre-Timeout occurred	PWR_GOOD:0	IPMC: r/w
7:2	Reserved	0	r

5.1.12.8 IPMC Reset Source Register

The IPMC Reset Source Register stores the source of the most recent reset. A “1” in the register bit indicates that the associated reset has occurred. If more than one reset occurs from different sources without clearing the corresponding register bits, one cannot determine the most recent reset source since more than one bit will be set. The same situation will happen if two reset sources go active at the same time.

Table 5-60 IPMC Reset Source Register

Address Offset: 0x17			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	PWR_GOOD Payload Power-on reset 1: Reset occurred	PWR_GOOD:1	IPMC: r/w1c
1	XDPx reset request (Any one of XDPx signal caused reset) 1: Reset occurred	PWR_GOOD:0	IPMC: r/w1c
2	PB_RST_ face plate push button reset 1: Reset occurred	PWR_GOOD:0	IPMC: r/w1c
3	Reserved	0	r
4	RTM_PB_RST_ Reset key at RTM 1: Reset occurred	PWR_GOOD:0	IPMC: r/w1c
5	Reserved	0	r
6	PCH_PLTRST_ reset 1: Reset occurred	PWR_GOOD:0	IPMC: r/w1c
7	IPMC_RST_REQ_ Payload Reset from IPMC 1: Reset occurred	PWR_GOOD:0	IPMC: r/w1c

5.1.12.9 IPMC Interrupt Status Register

The IPMC Interrupt Status Register stores the IPMC interrupt event. The event is cleared by IMPC with write one to clear.

<b>NOTICE</b>
<b>IPMC version 1.2.0018 or higher is needed to clear the interrupt flag. Otherwise the IPMC interrupt will always be active and produce infinite IPMC interrupts.</b>

## Maps and Registers

Table 5-61 IPMC Interrupt Status Register

Address Offset: 0x19			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	IPMC interrupt status 1: Platform Reset occurred (PCH_PLT_RST_)	PWR_GOOD:0	IPMC: r/w1c
7:1	Reserved	0	r

### 5.1.12.10 DIMM ADR Configuration Register

The DIMM ADR Configuration Register enables or disables the ADR feature. Each bit of this register corresponds to a reset source. When a bit is set, it enables the ADR for the corresponding reset signal. Upon receiving a reset event, FPGA reset logic looks if the ADR is enabled for that particular reset. When enabled, PCH\_ADR\_IRQ\_ signal is asserted. When PCH signals completion with assertion of ADR\_COMPLETE the Reset State Machine asserts PCH\_SYS\_RST\_. If ADR is not enabled PCH\_SYS\_RST\_ is generated immediately without the assertion of PCH\_ADR\_IRQ\_ signal.

Table 5-62 DIMM ADR Feature Configuration Register

Address Offset: 0x18			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	ADR enable for Push button reset 1: ADR enabled 0: ADR disabled	PWR_GOOD:0	LPC: r/w IPMC: r
1	ADR enable for RTM Push button reset 1: ADR enabled 0: ADR disabled	PWR_GOOD:0	LPC: r/w IPMC: r
2	ADR enable for IPMI reset 1: ADR enabled 0: ADR disabled	PWR_GOOD:0	LPC: r/w IPMC: r
7:3	Reserved	0	r

### 5.1.12.11 DIMM ADR Status Register

BIOS can read the status of PCH\_ADR\_IRQ\_ signal from this register on boot up. This gives BIOS the information that the DIMM has data stored from last boot. BIOS must clear this register after boot up. Writing “1” to this register bit clears the register bit.

Table 5-63 DIMM ADR Status Register

Address Offset: 0x1A			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	Indicates if the ADR feature is enabled. (GPIO37 of Cavetecreek) 0: ADR disabled (PCH_ADR_IRQ_ is driven high) 1: ADR enabled (PCH_ADR_IRQ_ is driven low)	PWR_GOOD:0	LPC: r/w1c IPMC: r
7:1	Reserved	0	r

### 5.1.13 CPU Control Register

The following table contains the CPU Control Register information.

Table 5-64 CPU Control Register

Address Offset: 0x1E			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	PCH_PSTATE_ pulse generation. Minimum low pulse width is X $\mu$ s: 0: No action 1: Generate PSTATE low pulse	-	IPMC: w
1	PCH_RCIN_ pulse generation. Minimum low pulse width is X $\mu$ s: 0: No action 1: Generate RCIN low pulse	-	IPMC: w
7:2	Reserved	-	-

### 5.1.14 Non-maskable Interrupt (NMI) Control Status Registers

IPMC can initiate an NMI. Host can identify NMI comes from IPMC.

## Maps and Registers

### 5.1.14.1 NMI Generation Register

IPMC can initiate an NMI high pulse writing 0xA5 to this register. The minimum pulse width of the NMI is 175 $\mu$ s.

Table 5-65 NMI Generation Register

Address Offset: 0x20			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:0	NMI pulse generation. Minimum pulse width is 175 $\mu$ s: 0xA5: Generate NMI pulse All other values are ignored	-	IPMC: w

### 5.1.14.2 NMI Status Register

When the IPMC has generated an NMI pulse, the host can identify this event reading the register below. The host needs to clear this flag.

Table 5-66 NMI Status Register

Address Offset: 0x20				
Bit	Signal/Group	Description	Default	Access
0	PCH_NMI	NMI pulse triggered by IPMC	PWR_GOOD: 0	LPC: r/1wc
7:1	-	Reserved	0	r

### 5.1.15 Interrupt Control and Status Registers

The interrupt status registers indicate events of the interrupt input signals. When an interrupt event occurred, the corresponding status bit is read 1. Writing 1 of the corresponding bit clears the bit.



### 5.1.15.1 Internal Interrupt Status Register

The following table contains the Internal Interrupt Status Register information.

Table 5-67 Internal Interrupt Status Register

Address Offset: 0x21			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	IPMC signals interrupt. Host clears flag.	0	LPC: r/1wc
	IPMC generates host interrupt: 0: no action 1: generate minimum 175 µs interrupt pulse	-	IPMC: w
7:1	Reserved	0	r

### 5.1.15.2 Telecom Interrupt Status Register

This register reflects the status of telecom related interrupt signals. The corresponding Telecom interrupt sources need to be enabled. Use of this register is optional; the same information can be found in [Table 5-91](#) and [Table 5-92](#). These tables also show how to clear the corresponding interrupt status bits.

Table 5-68 Telecom Interrupt Status Register

Address Offset: 0x22			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
3: 0	Telecom CLK_MONITOR_FINISHED interrupt: One or more Telecom Clock measurements have finished.	-	LPC: r
7:4	Telecom CLK_MONITOR_OUT_OF_RANGE interrupt: One or more Telecom Clocks are out of range	-	LPC: r

## Maps and Registers

### 5.1.15.3 Telecom Interrupt Control Register

Each of the Telecom interrupt source can be enabled.

Table 5-69 Telecom Interrupt Control Register

Address Offset: 0x23			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
3:0	Telecom CLK_MONITOR_FINISHED interrupt enable: Enable/Disable interrupt for the corresponding Clock source: 0: interrupt is disabled 1: Interrupt is enabled	0	LPC: r/w
7:4	Telecom CLK_MONITOR_OUT_OF_RANGE interrupt: Enable/Disable interrupt for the corresponding Clock source: 0: interrupt is disabled 1: Interrupt is enabled	0	LPC: r/w

### 5.1.15.4 RTM Interrupt Status Register

The RTM Interrupt Status Register will be located in the RTM SPI address space. The host can access the RTM register using the RTM SPI Master Interface.

### 5.1.15.5 External Interrupt Status Register

The following table contains the External Interrupt Status Register.

Table 5-70 External Interrupt Status Register

Address Offset: 0x24				
Bit	Signal/Group	Description	Default	Access
0	RTM_SPI_MIS O	RTM interrupt sources 0: RTM_SPI_MISO is high. No RTM interrupt. 1: RTM_SPI_MISO is low. One or more RTM interrupt sources are active. When RTM SPI Master face is active the current level is latched.	Ext.	LPC: r
7:1	-	Reserved	0	r

5.1.15.6 Interrupt Mask and Map Registers

Interrupts from different interrupt sources including the External Interrupt sources can be mapped to any IRQ Frame number of the serialized IRQ protocol.

Multiple interrupt sources may share the same IRQ Frame. In this case all interrupt sources need to be of type “level active low”. Each interrupt source has an Interrupt Mask and Map Register. See the following table for details.

Table 5-71 Address Map of Interrupt Mask and Map Registers

<b>Interrupt Source(s)</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Address Offset of Interrupt Mask</b>
IPMC to Host Interrupt	IPMC signals interrupt	0x25
Telecom Interrupt	Telecom interrupt	0x26
RTM_SPI_MISO	RTM interrupt sources	0x27

## Maps and Registers

Each Interrupt Mask and Map Register has the same layout. See the following table for more details.

Table 5-72 *Interrupt Mask and Map Registers*

Address Offset: 0x25 - 0x27			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
4:0	IRQ Frame Number of Serialized IRQ protocol. Any valid Frame number enables interrupt. 0x00: Interrupt is disabled. 0x01: Frame number 1. IRQ0 0x02: Frame number 2. IRQ1 0x03: Frame number 3. IRQ2 (SMI_) 0x04: Frame number 4. IRQ3 0x05: Frame number 5. IRQ4 0x06: Frame number 6. IRQ5 0x07: Frame number 7. IRQ6 0x08: Frame number 8. IRQ7 0x09: Frame number 9. IRQ8 0x0A: Frame number 10. IRQ9 0x0B: Frame number 11. IRQ1 0x0C: Frame number 12. IRQ11 0x0D: Frame number 13. IRQ12 0x0E: Frame number 14. IRQ13 0x0F: Frame number 15. IRQ14 0x10: Frame number 16. IRQ15 0x11: Frame number 17. IOCHK_ 0x12: Frame number 18. INTA_ 0x13: Frame number 19. INTB_ 0x14: Frame number 20. INTC_ 0x15: Frame number 21. INTD_ 0x16 - 0x1F: Frame number 22-31. IRQ Frame Number not valid. Value is ignored.	0	LPC: r/w
7:5	Reserved	0	r

### 5.1.16 PCI Express Hot Plug I<sup>2</sup>C I/O Expander Registers

Each CPU supports four PCI Express Hot Plug ports.

#### 5.1.16.1 CPU0 Hot Plug I<sup>2</sup>C I/O Expander Registers

The Hot Plug registers for CPU0 are mapped to 0x30 to 0x37

5.1.16.2 CPU1 Hot Plug I<sup>2</sup>C I/O Expander Registers

The Hot Plug registers for CPU1 are mapped to 0x38 to 0x3F.

5.1.16.3 Hot-Plug Virtual Pin Port Registers

Each port has a Hot Plug Interface, which can be accessed by the Hot-Plug Virtual Pin Port Register, as shown in the following table.

Table 5-73 Hot-Plug Virtual Pin Port Register

<b>Address Offset:</b> <b>CPU0: Port 1: 0x30,Port 2: 0x31, Port 3: 0x32, Port 4: 0x33</b> <b>CPU1: Port 1: 0x38,Port 2: 0x39, Port 3: 0x3A, Port 4: 0x3B</b>					
Bit	Signal Name	Direction	Description	Default	Access
0	ATNLED	Output	This indicator is connected to the Attention LED on the baseboard. For a precise definition refer to PCI Express Base Specification, Revision 3.0.	Ext.	r
1	PWRLED	Output	This indicator is connected to the Power LED on the baseboard. For a precise definition refer to PCI Express Base Specification, Revision 3.0.	Ext.	r
2	PWREN#	Output	Output signal allowing software to enable or disable power to a PCI Express slot.	Ext.	r
3	BUTTON#	Input	Input signal per slot which indicates that the user wishes to hot remove or hot add a PCI Express card/module.	1	IPMC: r/w LPC: r
4	PRSNT#	Input	Input signal that indicates if a hot pluggable PCI Express card/module is currently plugged into the slot.	1	IPMC: r/w LPC: r
5	PWRFLT#	Input	Input signal from the power controller to indicate that a power fault has occurred.	1	IPMC: r/w LPC: r

## Maps and Registers

Table 5-73 Hot-Plug Virtual Pin Port Register (continued)

Address Offset: CPU0: Port 1: 0x30, Port 2: 0x31, Port 3: 0x32, Port 4: 0x33 CPU1: Port 1: 0x38, Port 2: 0x39, Port 3: 0x3A, Port 4: 0x3B					
Bit	Signal Name	Direction	Description	Default	Access
6	MRL#/ EMILS	Input	Manual retention latch status or Electromechanical latch status input indicates that the retention latch is closed or open. Manual retention latch is used on the platform to mechanically hold the card in place and can be open/closed manually. Electromechanical latch is used to electro-mechanically hold the card in place and is operated by software. MRL# is used for card-edge and EMLSTS# is used for SIOM form-factors.	1	IPMC: r/w LPC: r
7	EMIL	Output	Electromechanical retention latch control output that opens or closes the retention latch on the blade for this slot. A retention latch is used on the platform to mechanically hold the card in place. Refer to PCI Express Server/Workstation Module Electromechanical Spec Rev 1.0 for details of the timing requirements of this pin output.	Ext.	r

**5.1.16.4 PCA9555 Internal Register Access**

For debug purposes, the internal virtual PCA9555 registers can be read by the IPMC and the Service Processor.

*Table 5-74 Address Control for PCA9555 Internal Register*

<b>Address Offset:</b> <b>CPU0 Device1 (Slave address 0x20): 0x34</b> <b>CPU0 Device2 (Slave address 0x21): 0x36</b> <b>CPU1 Device1 (Slave address 0x20): 0x3C</b> <b>CPU1 Device1 (Slave address 0x21): 0x3E</b>			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
2:0	Internal PCA9555 register address	0	r/w
7:3	Reserved	0	r

*Table 5-75 Content of PCA9555 Internal Register*

<b>Address Offset:</b> <b>CPU0 Device1 (Slave address 0x20): 0x35</b> <b>CPU0 Device2 (Slave address 0x21): 0x37</b> <b>CPU1 Device1 (Slave address 0x20): 0x3D</b> <b>CPU1 Device1 (Slave address 0x21): 0x3F</b>			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:0	Content of PCA9555 register.	0	r

**5.1.17 Flash Status and Selection Registers**

The flash status register indicates the actual status of the mechanical switches SW1.3 (Signal BOOT\_TSOP), SW3.1 (Signal BOOT\_SEL\_EN\_) and SW3.2 (Signal BOOT\_DEFAULT).

The register also provides information about the actual Boot Flash selection (status bit CURRENT\_BOOT\_SELECT) and the IPMC selected Boot Flash (status bit TARGET\_BOOT\_SELECT).

## Maps and Registers

The IPMC Target Boot Flash selection will become active with next platform reset. When the bits, TARGET\_BOOT\_SELECT and CURRENT\_BOOT\_SELECT are different, an alternate BIOS needs to be selected. In this case the platform reset will be transformed by the FPGA logic to payload power cycle including the ME. This is done to guarantee no SPI access to boot flash when switching the other device.

Table 5-76 Flash Status Register

<b>Address Offset: 0x40</b>			
<b>Bit</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Default</b>	<b>Access</b>
0	CURRENT_BOOT_SELECT: Current Boot Flash selection. Is valid until next platform reset.	0	r
3:1	Reserved	0	r
4	TSOP or PLCC Boot select. Signal BOOT_TSOP. 0: TSOP selected 1: PLCC selected	Ext. 0: SW1.3 OFF 1: SW1.3 ON	r
5	Manual Boot Flash select enable. Signal BOOT_SEL_EN_. 0: Signal BOOT_SELECT selects active Boot Flash 1: Switch SW3.2 selects the active Boot Flash.	Ext. 0: SW3.1 OFF 1: SW3.1 ON	r
6	Manual Boot Flash select. Signal BOOT_DEFAULT. Used when SW3.1 is ON: 0: Selects Default Boot SPI Flash. 1: Selects Recover Boot SPI Flash.	Ext. 0: SW3.2 OFF 1: SW3.2 ON	r
7	TARGET_BOOT_SELECT. Target Boot Flash Selection. 0: Selects Default Boot SPI Flash 1: Selects Recovery Boot SPI Flash Note: New Flash selection valid with next platform reset	PWR_GOOD: 0	LPC: r IPMC: r/w

### 5.1.18 PCH Output Enable Register

The output signals, PCH\_RCIN\_, PCH\_SCI\_ and PCH\_PSTATE\_ are connected to the GPIO Pins of the PCH. After power-up, the PCH drives these signals. To avoid signal contention, the outputs are tri-stated. After software has configured the PCH GPIO pins as inputs, the corresponding outputs can be enabled with this register.



Table 5-77 PCH Output Enable Register

Address Offset: 0x41			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	PCH_RCIN_ enable: 0: Disabled. Signal is tri-state 1: Enabled. Drive pch_rcin	0	LPC: r/w
1	PCH_SCI_ enable: 0: Disabled. Signal is tri-state 1: Enabled. Drive pch_sci	0	LPC: r/w
2	PCH_PSTATE_ enable: 0: Disabled. Signal is tri-state 1: Enabled. Drive pch_pstate	0	LPC: r/w
7:3	Reserved	0	0

### 5.1.19 RTM SPI Interface Registers

The signals, RTM\_SPI\_SCK, RTM\_SPI\_SS\_, RTM\_SPI\_MISO and RTM\_SPI\_MOSI are used to support a SPI master protocol. The signal, RTM\_SPI\_MISO is also used to signal an RTM interrupt to the baseboard. See [Flash Status and Selection Registers on page 167](#).

<b>NOTICE</b>
<b>At the moment there is no RTM with an SPI interface defined.</b>

A write access to the RTM SPI Address/Command Register starts the SPI transaction. The write cycle terminates when SPI transaction is finished.

Table 5-78 RTM SPI Address/Command Register

Address Offset: 0x42			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	Command Bit 0: Write 1: Read	0	LPC: r/w
7:1	RTM SPI Address bits [6:0]	0	LPC: r/w

## Maps and Registers

A write access to the RTM SPI Address/Command Register with the Command Bit 0 (Write) starts a SPI write transaction. The data byte in the SPI Write Register is written to the SPI device.

Table 5-79 RTM SPI Write Register

Address Offset: 0x43			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:0	RTM SPI write data	-	LPC: w

A write access to the RTM SPI Address/Command Register with the Command Bit 1 (Read) starts a SPI read transaction. This contains the data read from the SPI device.

Table 5-80 RTM SPI Read Register

Address Offset: 0x43			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:0	RTM SPI read data	0	LPC: r

### 5.1.20 Update Channel Equalization Control Register

The following table contains Update Channel Equalization Control Register information.

Table 5-81 Update Channel Equalization Control Register

Address Offset: 0x48			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	Control output Signal UC1_EQ_RX: 0: UC1_EQ_RX is driven low 1: UC1_EQ_RX is tri-state	0	LPC: r/w IPMC: r
1	Control output Signal UC1_EQ_TX: 0: UC1_EQ_TX is driven low 1: UC1_EQ_TX is tri-state	0	LPC: r/w IPMC: r
2	Control output Signal UC2_EQ_RX: 0: UC2_EQ_RX is driven low 1: UC2_EQ_RX is tri-state	0	LPC: r/w IPMC: r

Table 5-81 Update Channel Equalization Control Register (continued)

Address Offset: 0x48			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
3	Control output Signal UC2_EQ_TX: 0: UC2_EQ_TX is driven low 1: UC2_EQ_TX is tri-state	0	LPC: r/w IPMC: r
4	Control output Signal UC3_EQ_RX: 0: UC3_EQ_RX is driven low 1: UC3_EQ_RX is tri-state	0	LPC: r/w IPMC: r
5	Control output Signal UC3_EQ_TX: 0: UC3_EQ_TX is driven low 1: UC3_EQ_TX is tri-state	0	LPC: r/w IPMC: r
6	Control output Signal UC4_EQ_RX: 0: UC4_EQ_RX is driven low 1: UC4_EQ_RX is tri-state	0	LPC: r/w IPMC: r
7	Control output Signal UC4_EQ_TX: 0: UC4_EQ_TX is driven low 1: UC4_EQ_TX is tri-state	0	LPC: r/w IPMC: r

### 5.1.21 RTM USB Control Register

The following tables contain information about the RTM Control, Status and Interrupt Status Registers.

Table 5-82 RTM USB Control Register

Address Offset: 0x4A			
Bit	Description		Access
0	Reserved	0	r
1	Disable/Enable USB Port 2 to RTM: 0: RTMUSB_ENABLE_ driven low. Enabled 1: RTMUSB_ENABLE_ driven high. Disabled	PWR_GOOD: 1	LPC: r/w IPMC: r
7:2	Reserved	0	r

## Maps and Registers

Table 5-83 RTM Status Register

Address Offset: 0x4B			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	RTM power good status: 0: RTM power not stable or RTM not powered 1: RTM power good	Ext: RTM_PWRGD	IPCM: r
7:1	Reserved	0	IPCM: r

Table 5-84 RTM Interrupt Status Register

Address Offset: 0x4C			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	Face plate Ethernet 1 Interrupt (signal PV_FPETH_1_INT_): 0: No interrupt 1: Interrupt detected (falling edge PV_FPETH_1_INT_)	0	IPCM: r/w1c
1	Base Ethernet 1 Interrupt (signal PV_BASE_1_INT_): 0: No interrupt 1: Interrupt detected (falling edge PV_BASE_1_INT_)	0	IPCM: r/w1c
7:2	Reserved	0	IPMC: r

### 5.1.22 LED Status and Control Register

The following table contains LED Control Register information.

Table 5-85 LED Control Register

Address Offset: 0x50			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	Control green LED output Signal LED_GREEN_: 0: LED_GREEN_ is driven high. LED off 1: LED_GREEN_ is driven low. LED on	0	r/w
1	Control red LED output Signal LED_RED_: 0: LED_RED_ is driven high. LED off 1: LED_RED_ is driven low. LED on	0	r/w

Table 5-85 LED Control Register (continued)

Address Offset: 0x50			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
2	Control user LED output Signal LED_USER1_: 0: LED_USER1_ is driven high. LED off 1: LED_USER1 is driven low. LED on	0	r/w
3	Control user LED output Signal LED_USER2_: 00: LED_USER2_ is driven high. LED off 01: LED_USER2 is driven low. LED on	0	r/w
7:4	Reserved	0	r

### 5.1.23 Spare Signals Status Registers

The following table contains information about the Spare Signals Status Registers.

Table 5-86 Spare Signal Status Register

Address Offset: 0x52			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
0	Signal level of SW100_2 (Connected to SW100.2)	Ext.	r
1	Signal level of SW1.4 (Connected to SW1.4)	Ext.	r
3:2	Signal level of spare connections SPARE[2:1]	Ext.	r
7:4	Reserved	Ext.	r

### 5.1.24 CPU Presence Detection Register

The following table contains information about the CPU Presence Detection Register.

Table 5-87 CPU Presence Detection Register

Address Offset: 0x54			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
1:0	Reserved	0	r

## Maps and Registers

Table 5-87 CPU Presence Detection Register (continued)

<b>Address Offset: 0x54</b>			
<b>Bit</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Default</b>	<b>Access</b>
2	CPU0 Presence Detection (Status of signal CPU0_SKTOCC_) 0: CPU present in socket 1: CPU not present. Socket is empty	Ext.	r
3	CPU1 Presence Detection (Status of signal CPU1_SKTOCC_) 0: CPU present in socket 1: CPU not present. Socket is empty	Ext.	r
7:4	Reserved	0	r

### 5.1.25 CPU Error Status Register

The following table contains information about the CPU Error Status Register.

Table 5-88 CPU Error Status Register

<b>Address Offset: 0x57</b>				
<b>Bit</b>	<b>Signal</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Default</b>	<b>Access</b>
0	CPU_ERR_[0]	CPU Error status signals. Bit 0 = Non critical Error	Ext.	r
1	CPU_ERR_[1]	Bit 1 = Non-fatal error (operating system or firmware action required to contain and recover)	Ext.	r
2	CPU_ERR_[2]	Bit 2 = Fatal error (system reset likely required to recover)	Ext.	r
7:3	-	Reserved	0	r

### 5.1.26 Telecom Clock Supervision Registers

All incoming telecom clocks can be monitored and measured in the range from 1 Hz to 166 MHz. Up to four different clock inputs may be monitored. See the following table.

Table 5-89 Supervised Telecom Clocks Reference List

Number	Name	Description
0	SYSCLK_IN_CLK1A	CLK1A from backplane
1	SYSCLK_IN_CLK1B	CLK1B from backplane
2	SYSCLK_IN_CLK2A	CLK2A from backplane
3	SYSCLK_IN_CLK2B	CLK2B from backplane

Table 5-90 Telecom Clock Monitor Control Register

Address: 0x60			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
3:0	Enable supervised Telecom Clock 0 to 3 Set corresponding bit enable monitoring.	0	LPC: r/w
7:4	Reserved	0	r

When at least one bit shown in [Table 5-90](#) is set, the corresponding status bit CLK\_MONITOR\_FINISHED shown in [Table 5-68](#) is also set.

Table 5-91 Telecom Clock Monitor Status Register

Address: 0x61			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
3:0	Result available for supervised Telecom Clock 0 to 3. Corresponding bit is set when measurement has finished. Clearing bit triggers new measurement.	0	LPC: r/w1c
7:4	Reserved	0	r

## Maps and Registers

When at least one bit shown in [Table 5-92](#) is set, the corresponding status bit CLK\_MONITOR\_OUT\_OF\_RANGE shown in [Table 5-69](#) is also set.

*Table 5-92 Telecom Clock Monitor Out of Range Register*

<b>Address: 0x62</b>			
<b>Bit</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Default</b>	<b>Access</b>
3:0	Frequency of supervised Telecom Clock 0 to 3 is out of range. Gate Mode: Corresponding bit is set when the number of positive Clock edges within the selected time base is: < Lower limit or > Upper limit Period Mode: Corresponding bit is set when the Clock 0 Period within the selected time base is: < Lower limit or > Upper limit Clearing bit triggers new sequence of measurements.	0	LPC: r/w1c
7:4	Reserved	0	r

*Table 5-93 Telecom Clock Monitor Select Register*

<b>Address: 0x63</b>			
<b>Bit</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Default</b>	<b>Access</b>
1:0	Select supervised Telecom Clocks. See <a href="#">Table 5-89</a> Supervised Telecom Clocks Reference List: 0-3: Select corresponding clock	0	LPC: r/w
7:2	Reserved	0	r



The following tables refer to the clock selected with [Table 5-93](#).

Table 5-94 Telecom Clock Monitor Time Base Register

Address: 0x64			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
4:0	Select Time base for clock supervision with Gate Mode: 0: Gate is open for 250µs 1: Gate is open for 500µs 2: Gate is open for 1ms 3: Gate is open for 2ms 4: Gate is open for 4ms 5: Gate is open for 8ms 6: Gate is open for 16ms 7: Gate is open for 32ms 8: Gate is open for 64ms 9: Gate is open for 128ms 10: Gate is open for 256ms 11: Gate is open for 512ms 12: Gate is open for 1024ms 13: Gate is open for 2048ms 14: Gate is open for 4096ms 15: Gate is open for 8192ms 16: Gate is open for 16384ms 17 and all others: Gate is open for 32768ms	0	LPC: r/w
	Select Time base for clock supervision with Period Mode: 0: Period Counter incremented with each master clock 1: Period Counter incremented with each 2nd master clock 2: Period Counter incremented with each 4th master clock 3: Period Counter incremented with each 8th master clock 4: Period Counter incremented with each 16th master clock 5: Period Counter incremented with each 32th master clock 6: Period Counter incremented with each 64th master clock 7: Period Counter incremented with each 128th master clock 8: Period Counter incremented with each 256th master clock 9 and all others: Period Counter incremented with each 512th master clock		

## Maps and Registers

Table 5-94 Telecom Clock Monitor Time Base Register (continued)

Address: 0x64			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
6:5	Reserved	0	r
7	Measurement Mode: 0: Gate Mode. Count positive clock edges during open gate. 1: Period Mode. Count number of clocks which fit in one period.	0	LPC: r/w

Table 5-95 Telecom Clock Monitor Frequency/Period Register

Address: 0x65-0x66			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
15:0	Result of supervised Telecom Clock. Gate mode: 0: No clock edge sampled. Clock to slow for time base 1 - 65534: Number of sampled clocks during timer base 65535: Overflow. Clock to fast for time base. Period Mode 0: No clock edge sampled. Clock to fast for time base 1 - 65534: Number of clocks during one supervised clock period. 65535: Overflow. Supervised clock to slow for time base. Note: Only valid when corresponding bit in <a href="#">Table 5-91</a> Telecom Clock Monitor Status Register is set.	0	LPC: r

Table 5-96 Telecom Clock Monitor Lower Limit Register

Address: 0x67 -0x68			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
15:0	Lower Limit for supervised Telecom Clock: Used by <a href="#">Table 5-92</a> Telecom Clock Monitor Out of Range Register	0	LPC: r/w

Table 5-97 Telecom Clock Monitor Upper Limit Register

Address: 0x69 -0x6A			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
15:0	Upper Limit for supervised Telecom Clock: Used by <a href="#">Table 5-92</a> Telecom Clock Monitor Out of Range Register	0xFFFF	LPC: r/w

### 5.1.27 BIOS Version Registers

The following tables contain information on the BIOS Version Registers.

Table 5-98 BIOS Version Register 1

Address Offset: 0x74			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:0	BIOS Version bits 0 to 7	0	LPC: r/w IPMC: r

Table 5-99 BIOS Version Register 2

Address Offset: 0x75			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:0	BIOS Version bits 8 to 15	0	LPC: r/w IPMC: r

Table 5-100 BIOS Version Register 3

Address Offset: 0x76			
Bit	Description	Default	Access
7:0	BIOS Version bits 16 to 23	0	LPC: r/w IPMC: r

## Maps and Registers

### 5.1.28 IPMC BIOS Communication Registers

The following tables contain information about the IPMC BIOS Communication Registers.

*Table 5-101 IPMC BIOS Communication Register 1*

<b>Address Offset: 0x7A</b>			
<b>Bit</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Default</b>	<b>Access</b>
7:0	IPMC BIOS Communication bits	PWR_GOOD:0	LPC: r/w IPMC: r/w

*Table 5-102 IPMC BIOS Communication Register 2*

<b>Address Offset: 0x7B</b>			
<b>Bit</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Default</b>	<b>Access</b>
7:0	IPMC BIOS Communication bits	PWR_GOOD:0	LPC: r/w IPMC: r/w

*Table 5-103 IPMC BIOS Communication Register 3*

<b>Address Offset: 0x7C</b>			
<b>Bit</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Default</b>	<b>Access</b>
7:0	IPMC BIOS Communication bits	PWR_GOOD:0	LPC: r/w IPMC: r/w

### 5.1.29 Scratch Registers

The following tables contain LPC Scratch Register information.

*Table 5-104 LPC Scratch Register*

<b>Address Offset: 0x7D</b>			
<b>Bit</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Default</b>	<b>Access</b>
7:0	LPC Scratch bits	PWR_GOOD:0	LPC: r/w IPMC: r

Table 5-105 IPMC Scratch Register

<b>Address Offset: 0x7E</b>			
<b>Bit</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Default</b>	<b>Access</b>
7:0	LPC Scratch bits	PWR_GOOD:0	IPMC: r/w LPC: r



# Basic Input/Output System

---

## 6.1 Introduction

The Basic Input/Output System (BIOS) provides an interface between the operating system and the hardware of the blade and is used for hardware configuration. Before loading the operating system, the BIOS performs basic hardware tests and prepares the blade for the initial boot-up procedure.

During blade production, identical BIOS images are programmed into both boot flash banks. Either flash bank can be selected as the boot device via an IPMI command. For further details refer to the section [System Boot Options Parameter #96 on page 246](#).

The BIOS used on the blade is based on the Insyde UEFI BIOS with several Penguin Edge extensions integrated. Its main features are:

- Initialize CPU, chipset, and memory
- Initialize PCI devices
- Setup utility for setting configuration data
- IPMC support
- Serial console redirection for remote blade access
- Boot operation system

The BIOS complies with the following specifications:

- UEFI Specification 2.3.1
- Plug and Play BIOS Specification 1.0a
- PCI BIOS Specification 2.1
- SMBIOS Specification 2.8
- BIOS Boot Specification 1.01
- PXE 2.1
- Multiprocessor Specification 1.4
- ACPI 5.0

The BIOS setup program is required to configure the blade hardware. This configuration is necessary for operating the blade and connected peripherals. The configuration data are stored in the same flash device from which the blade boots.

## Basic Input/Output System

---

When you are not sure about configuration settings, restore the default values. This option is provided in case a value has been changed and you want to reset settings.



**Loading the BIOS default values affect all setup items and reset options previously altered.**

**If you set the default values, the displayed default values take effect only after the BIOS setup is saved and closed.**

## 6.2 Accessing the Blade Using the Serial Console Redirection

The blade's firmware provides a serial console redirection feature allowing remote access to the blade through a terminal connected to the blade's serial interface.

The terminal can be connected to display VGA text information. Terminal keyboard input is redirected and treated as a normal PC keyboard input. The serial console redirection feature can be configured via a setup utility.

### 6.2.1 Requirements for Serial Console Redirection

For serial console redirection, the following are required:

- Terminal or terminal emulation which supports a VT100 mode
- NULL-modem cable

Terminal emulation programs such as TeraTermPro or Putty can be used.

### 6.2.2 Default Access Parameters

By default, the blade is accessed using the serial interface COM1. By default, this interface is accessible using an RJ-45 connector at the blade's face plate.

A NULL-Modem cable **RJ45-DSUB-ATCA** is available as an accessory kit for the blade. It converts the RJ-45 connector to a standard DSUB connector which can be connected to a remote terminal. By default, the following communication parameters are used:

- Baud rate: 115200
- Flow control: None
- VT-100
- Eight data bits
- No parity
- One stop bit



## 6.2.3 Connecting to the Blade

### Procedure

To connect to the blade using the serial console redirect feature:

1. Configure terminal to communicate using the same parameters as in BIOS setup.
2. Connect the terminal to NULL-modem cable.
3. Connect the NULL-modem cable to COM port of the blade.
4. Start up the blade.

## 6.3 Changing Configuration Settings

When the system is switched on or rebooted, the presence and functionality of the system components is tested by Power-On Self-Test (POST).

Press <F2> key when requested. The main menu appears. It looks similar to the one shown in the following figure.

Figure 6-1 Main Menu

```

InsydeH2O Setup Utility                               Rev. 5.0
Main  Advanced Security Power Boot Exit
-----
BIOS Version                1.0.1                |Select the current
Processor Type              Intel(R) Xeon(R) Gold |default language used by
                           5119T CPU @ 1.90GHz          |the InsydeH2O.
System Bus Speed           100 MHz
System Memory Speed        2133 MHz
Cache RAM                  14336 KB
Total Memory               16384 MB
Language                   <English>
System Time                 [23:02:22]
System Date                 [02/10/2016]
-----
Esc Exit                    </> Select Item    Enter          Select > F10 Save and Exit

```

## Basic Input/Output System

---



**Make sure BIOS is properly configured prior to installing the operating system and its drivers.**

**If you save changes in setup, the next time the blade boots up, BIOS configures the system according to the setup selections stored. If those values cause the system boot to fail, reboot and enter setup to get the default values or to change the selections that caused the failure.**

In order to navigate in setup, use the arrow keys on the keyboard to highlight items on the menu. All other navigation possibilities are shown at the bottom of the menu.

Additionally, an item-specific help is displayed on the right side of the window.

## 6.4 Boot Support

### 6.4.1 Boot Mode

BIOS supports **UEFI** boot mode and **Legacy** boot mode.

Legacy boot mode refers to BIOS boot mode introduced by IBM on their first Personal Computer. UEFI boot mode is specified in the UEFI specification.

Legacy boot from a hard disk uses the Master Boot Record (MBR) partition scheme, whereas UEFI boot mode uses the GUID Partition Table (GPT).

Legacy boot maintains a list of all devices which may be of bootable type (for example, SATA devices, network devices).

In UEFI boot mode, BIOS maintains a list of operating system loaders, which are present in the so called EFI System Partition. The EFI System Partition is a small partition (~100 Mbyte) with FAT32 file system, which contains the OS loader.

During the POST procedure the UEFI BIOS scans all storage devices that are connected to the system for a valid GUID Partition Table (GPT). If there is a known boot loader found in the EFI System Partition, a new entry is added to the boot order list. For example, if the EFI System Partition contains the \EFI\redhat\grub.efi file, BIOS will add Red Hat Linux to the boot list.

In UEFI boot mode, network devices are handled in the same way as in legacy mode, they are simply added to the boot order list.

A detailed description of UEFI boot mechanism can be found in the UEFI Specification Chapter 3 Boot Manager and Chapter 5 GUID Partition Table (GPT) Disk Layout (<http://www.uefi.org/specifications>).

**NOTE:** Boot options in the Boot Menu change depending on what is selected. Enabling or Disabling devices requires the OPROM to be loaded to become an active boot device. An immediate reboot is recommended to make the boot entry visible.

### 6.4.2 Boot Type

In BIOS Setup **Boot Menu** the following Boot Types can be selected:

- Dual Boot Type: Legacy and UEFI Boot is enabled. With the Boot Priority option, you can determine whether UEFI devices or legacy devices are placed first in the boot order list. Additionally with the setup option **PXE Boot capability**, the type of network boot can be selected between **Legacy** and **UEFI**.

**Note:** If Legacy devices are placed first in the boot order list, the UEFI devices are not executed and the blade will be automatically restarted. This is a limitation of the Legacy Compatibility Support Module of the BIOS.

- Legacy Boot Type: Only legacy boot devices are in the boot order list.
- UEFI Boot Type: Only UEFI boot devices/OS loader are in the boot order list.

### 6.4.3 Supported Boot Devices

The BIOS supports booting from the following devices/sources:

- NVMe disk connected to the NVMe interface (available only when NVMe SSD is assembled)
- Solid State Disk connected to the SATA interface (available only when SSD SATA is assembled)
- USB devices, floppy, CD ROM, and hard disk
- PXE boot from Front Panel Ethernet, Base Ethernet and Fabric Ethernet

### 6.4.4 Selecting the Boot Device

To determine the device from which BIOS attempts to boot, the following are the possibilities:

- By setup, to select a permanent order of boot devices
- By boot selection menu, to select any device for the next boot-up procedure only. Refer to section [Boot on page 217](#).
- By changing the *bootorder* parameter of IPMI Boot parameter. For more information, refer to sections [IPMI Boot Parameter on page 194](#) and [System Boot Options Parameter #100 on page 247](#).

## Basic Input/Output System

### By Setup

To select the boot device by setup, proceed as follows:

1. From the BIOS setup menu, select **Boot**.
2. Select **Legacy Boot Order** and/or **EFI Boot Order**.
3. Select the order of the devices from which BIOS attempts to boot the operating system.

Figure 6-2 Boot Device Priority

```
InsydeH2O Setup Utility                               Rev. 5.0
-----
Boot
-----
|EFI
|
|CentOS Linux (Samsung                               [ ]
|SSD 850 EVO M.2 250GB)
|EFI Fabric Network 2_1                               [ ]
| (IPv4)
|EFI Fabric Network 1_1                               [ ]
| (IPv4)
|EFI FrontPanel Network 2                             [ ]
| (IPv4)
|EFI FrontPanel Network 1                             [ ]
| (IPv4)
|EFI Base Network 2 (IPv4)                             [ ]
|EFI Base Network 1 (IPv4)                             [ ]
|Internal EFI Shell                                   [ ]
|
|-----|
|Configure boot order: Use
|arrow keys (^ and v) to
|select a device.
| F5/F6 moves entry
|up/down.
| space enables / disables
|a device.
|[X]: Device enabled
|[ ]: Device disabled
|
|-----|
|Esc Exit      </> Select Item  Enter      Select > F10 Save and Exit
|-----|
```



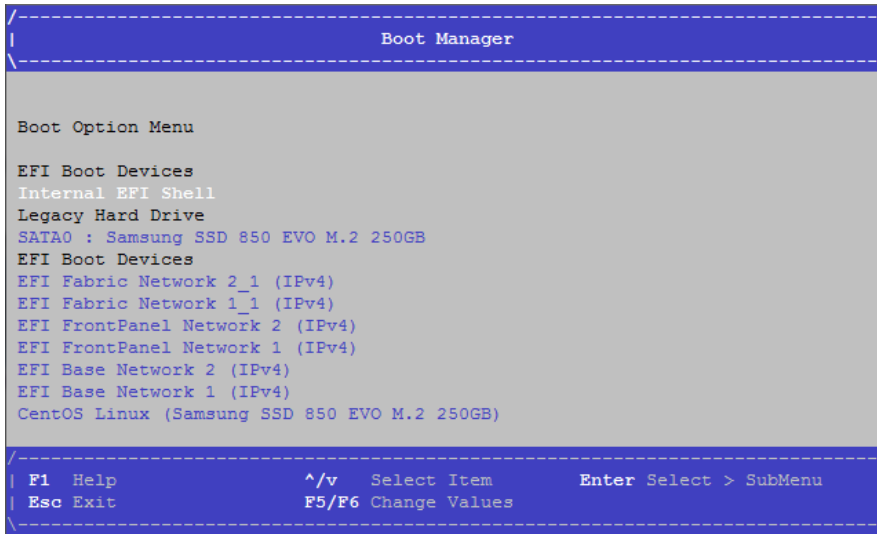
If the BIOS is not successful at booting from one device, it tries to boot from the next device on the list. When the BIOS does not find any bootable device, the blade will be restarted by a cold reset.

### By Boot Menu

1. Press <F4> key to enter the **Boot** menu.
2. Enter **Boot Manager**.

3. Override existing boot sequence by selecting another boot device from the boot list.

Figure 6-3 Boot Menu



If a selected legacy boot device does not load the operating system, BIOS will reset the blade.  
 If an EFI boot device does not load the operating system, it will return to the Boot Manager.

## 6.5 iSCSI Boot

The BIOS supports iSCSI boot in UEFI mode from Front Panel Ethernet, Base Ethernet and Fabric Ethernet. This section describes the iSCSI configuration menu.

Ensure that in the BIOS Setup, in the Boot Menu the Boot Type is set to Dual Boot Type or UEFI Boot Type, and the PXE Boot capability is set to UEFI:IPv4.

### Steps to configure iSCSI boot

1. Enter the Boot Menu/Front Page by pressing the <F4> key.
2. Select Device Manager from the Boot Menu.
3. Select the iSCSI Configuration Menu.
4. Enter an iSCSI Initiator Name.
5. Add one or more iSCSI Attempts.

## Basic Input/Output System

6. Save the iSCSI configuration with F10 key.

Figure 6-4 iSCSI Configuration

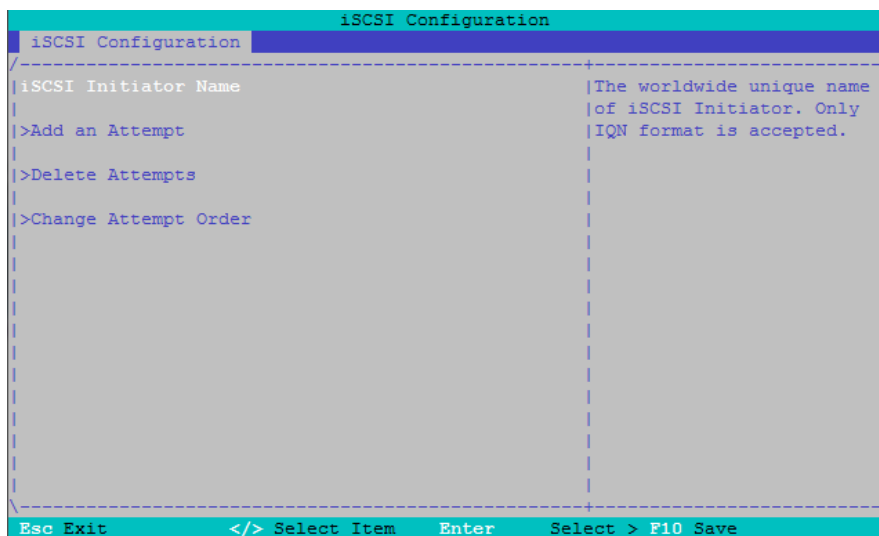


Table 6-1 iSCSI Configuration Menu

Item	Values	IPMI Boot Parameter	Description
iSCSI Initiator Name	--	--	The worldwide unique name of the iSCSI Initiator. Only IQN format is accepted.
Add Attempt			Add an iSCSI Attempt
Delete Attempts			Delete an iSCSI Attempt
Change Attempt Order			Change the order of iSCSI Attempts

Figure 6-5 Attempt Configuration 1

```

iSCSI Configuration
iSCSI Configuration
-----
iSCSI Attempt Name      1                |Disabled, Enabled,
                                     |Enabled for MPIO
iSCSI Mode               <Enabled>
Internet Protocol       <IP4>
Connection Retry Count  [0]
Connection Establishing |Timeout      [1000]
ISID                    2C9ECD1E769E
Enable DHCP             [ ]
  Initiator IP Address  0.0.0.0
  Initiator Subnet Mask 0.0.0.0
  Gateway               0.0.0.0
Target Name
Target IP Address      0.0.0.0
-----
Esc Exit      </> Select Item  Enter      Select > F10 Save
  
```

Figure 6-6 Attempt Configuration 2

```

iSCSI Configuration
iSCSI Configuration
-----
Enable DHCP             [ ]
  Initiator IP Address  0.0.0.0
  Initiator Subnet Mask 0.0.0.0
  Gateway               0.0.0.0
Target Name
Target IP Address      0.0.0.0
Target Port            [3260]
Boot LUN               0
Authentication Type    <CHAP>
  CHAP Type            <One way>
  CHAP Name
  CHAP Secret
>Save Changes
>Back to Previous Page
-----
Esc Exit      </> Select Item  Enter      Select > F10 Save
  
```

## Basic Input/Output System

Table 6-2 Add an iSCSI Attempt Menu

Item	Values	IPMI Boot Parameter	Description
iSCSI Mode	Disabled/Enabled / Enabled for MPIO	--	Set to Enabled. Use Enabled for Multipath I/O (MPIO) if your target is also configured for MPIO.
Internet Protocol	IP4/IP6/ Autoconfigure		Can be set to IP4, IP6, or Autoconfigure. In Autoconfigure mode, the iSCSI driver attempts to connect to the iSCSI target using the IPv4 stack. If this fails, then the iSCSI driver attempts to connect using the IPv6 stack.
Connection Retry Count  The count range is 0 to 16. If set to 0, there are no retries.	0 .. 40		The minimum value is 0 and the maximum is 40. 0 means no retry. It will stall 1 second and reconnect.
Connection Establishing Timeout	100 ... 20000		The timeout value in milliseconds. The minimum value is 100 milliseconds and the maximum is 20 seconds.
Configure ISID	Derived from the MAC address		The OUI-format ISID is 6 bytes. The default value is derived from the MAC address. Only the last 3 bytes are configurable. Example: Update 0ABBCCDDEEFF to 0ABBCCF07901 by inputting F07901
Enable DHCP	Disabled/Enabled		Enable or disable DHCP
Initiator IP Address	--		Use to set initiator IP address in dotted-decimal notation.
Initiator Subnet Mask	--		Use to set initiator subnet mask IP address in dotted-decimal notation.
Gateway	--		Use to set initiator gateway IP address in dotted-decimal notation.



Table 6-2 Add an iSCSI Attempt Menu (continued)

Item	Values	IPMI Boot Parameter	Description
Target Name	--		The worldwide unique name of the target. Only IQN format is accepted.
Target IP address	--		Use to set target IP address in dotted-decimal notation.
Target Port	--		Use to change target port number. Default is 3260.
Boot LUN	--		Use to set the hexadecimal representation of the boot logical unit number (LUN). Example: 4752-3A4F-6b7e-2F99
Authentication Type	CHAP/None		Define the Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP). Available settings are CHAP, Kerberos, and None.
CHAP Type	One Way/Mutual		Use to set CHAP type to either One Way or Mutual
CHAP Name	--		Set the CHAP name
CHAP Secret	--		Use to set the CHAP secret password. The secret length range is 12 to 16 bytes.
Save Changes	--		Save Changes. The system must be rebooted manually for changes to take place.
Back to Previous Page	--		Back to Previous Page

### 6.6 IPMI Boot Parameter

Many BIOS setup parameters and setup default parameters are stored as Intelligent Platform Management Interface (IPMI) boot parameters within a non-volatile memory controlled by the Intelligent Platform Management Controller (IPMC). The IPMI boot parameter supports USER and DEFAULT areas. The USER area contains the current BIOS setup settings. The parameters in the USER area can be modified by the BIOS setup utility and can also be modified remotely by IPMI commands, for example, through the shelf manager.

The DEFAULT area holds the BIOS default settings. This area is read only. BIOS default settings are loaded when selecting the Restore Defaults Item on BIOS Save and Exit Menu.

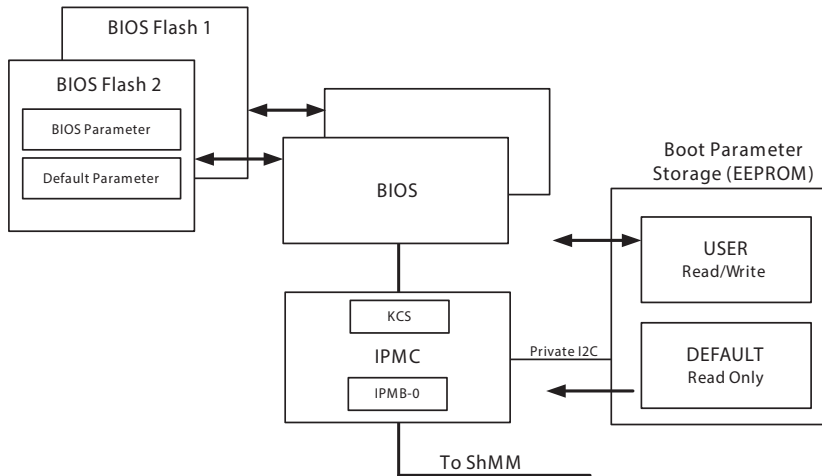
A detailed description of the IPMI Boot Parameter and the corresponding IPMI commands is available in [System Boot Options Parameter #100 on page 247](#).

The main advantage of using IPMI boot parameter is that the parameters stored as IPMI boot parameters are not changed after a BIOS upgrade or a BIOS boot bank switch. BIOS will not return to the BIOS default settings after a BIOS upgrade.

Normally, the BIOS setup parameters are stored within the BIOS flash. The following figure and description helps you to understand how a BIOS setup parameter and an IPMI boot parameter interact.

**NOTE:** The user and default boot parameter storage areas (refer to [Figure 6-7 IPMI Boot Parameter on page 195](#)) are both programmed by Penguin Solutions. BIOS and IPMI upgrades will not affect any parameters saved in the boot parameter storage area. Not all BIOS parameters are saved in the boot parameter storage area. Only the BIOS parameters listed in the boot parameter table provided with the blade are saved, others will be set to default during a BIOS upgrade.

Figure 6-7 IPMI Boot Parameter



## Blade Start

1. BIOS loads BIOS Parameter from Flash and uses them for initialization.
2. BIOS loads IPMI Boot Parameter from USER area.
3. BIOS updates the BIOS Parameter in the flash according to the IPMI Boot Parameter.
4. BIOS will reset the blade if BIOS Parameter changes.

## Change Settings

1. User enters the BIOS setup and changes some parameters.
2. User selects **Save** or **Save and Exit** option.
3. BIOS writes the parameter to the BIOS Parameter in the Flash.
4. BIOS writes the parameter to the IPMI Boot Parameter USER area.

## Load Defaults

1. User enters BIOS setup and selects Load Defaults.
2. BIOS reads Default Parameter from Flash into the Setup.
3. BIOS reads IPMI Boot Parameter DEFAULT area into the Setup.
4. User selects **Save** or **Save and Exit** option.
5. BIOS writes the parameter to the BIOS Parameter in the Flash.
6. BIOS writes the parameter to the IPMI Boot Parameter USER area.

# 6.7 BIOS Setup Configuration

This section provides information about the various configurations in the BIOS setup menu.

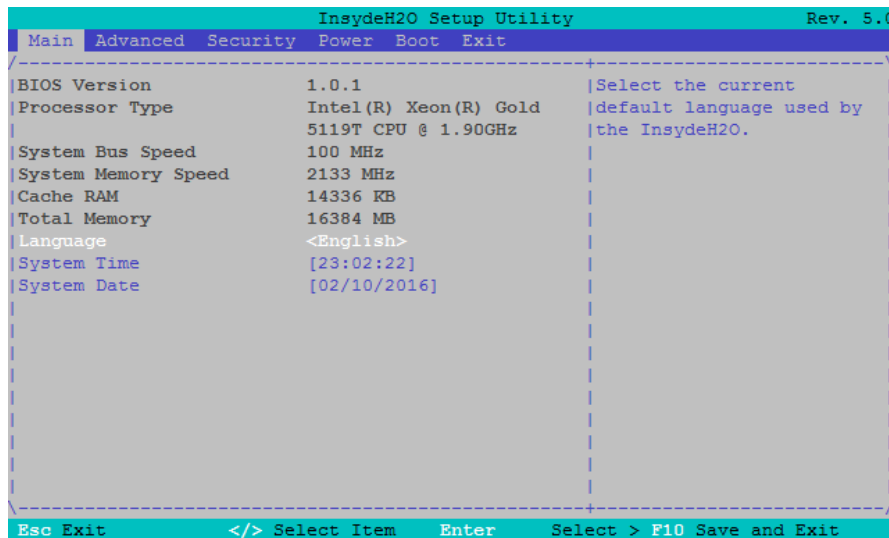
**NOTE:** The following command can be used to read the IPMI boot parameters default area:

```
#ipmibpar -b
```

## 6.7.1 Main

The figure below shows the Main menu options.

Figure 6-8 Main Menu Options



The following table contains descriptions for the Main menu options.

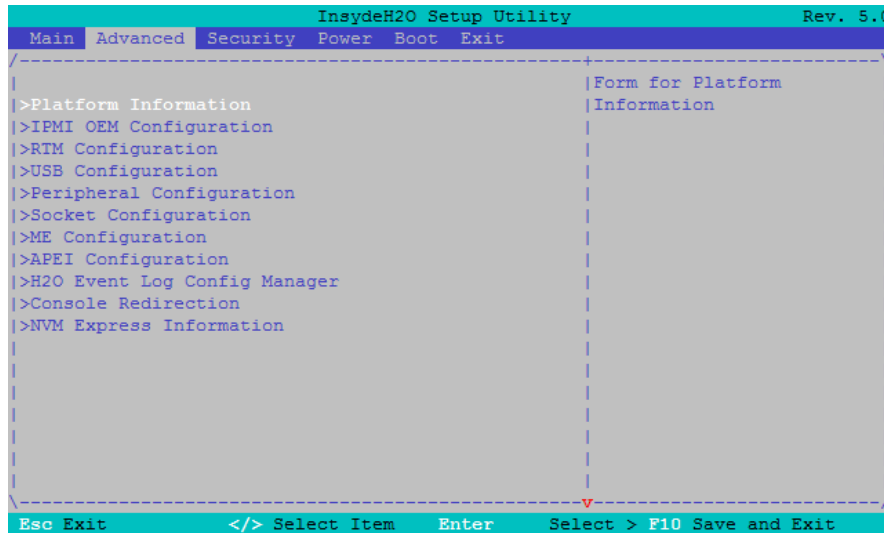
Table 6-3 Main Menu

Item	Values	IPMI Boot Parameter	Description
System Time	[15:48:21]	--	Set the Time. Use Enter to switch between Time elements.
System Date	[Thu 11/11/2014]	--	Set the Date. Use Enter to switch between Date elements.

## 6.7.2 Advanced

This figure below shows the Advanced menu options.

Figure 6-9 Advanced Menu



## Basic Input/Output System

### 6.7.2.1 Platform Information

This option shows important Platform Information.

Figure 6-10 Platform Information

```
InsydeH2O Setup Utility Rev. 5.0
Advanced
-----
Platform Information
Platform Board Type : ATCA-7540
PCH Reversion : LBG QS/PRQ - 2 - S1
Acm Version 1.3.9
-----
Esc Exit </> Select Item Enter Select > F10 Save and Exit
```

### 6.7.2.2 RTM Configuration

Figure 6-11 RTM Configuration

```
InsydeH2O Setup Utility Rev. 5.0
Advanced
-----
RTM Configuration
-----
Connected RTM: none
CPU0 PCIe to RTM Width disabled
CPU1 PCIe to RTM Width disabled
Auto-Detect RTM <Enabled>
-----
If enabled, the RTM is detected and the RTM PCIe parameter are set for this RTM. If disabled the RTM PCIe parameter can be set manually.
-----
Esc Exit </> Select Item Enter Select > F10 Save and Exit
```

The following table contains descriptions for the RTM Configuration options.

*Table 6-4 Advanced >> RTM Configuration*

Item	Values	IPMI Boot Parameter	Description
Auto-Detect RTM	Enabled Disabled	rtm_auto	If enabled, the RTM is detected and the RTM PCI Express parameter are set for this RTM.  If disabled, the RTM PCI Express parameter can be set manually.
CPU0 PCIe to RTM Width	X4x4x4x4 x4x4x8 x8x4x4 x8x8	rtm_cpu0_bif	Selects CPU0 PCIe Bifurcation for Zone 3 connector (RTM)
CPU0 PCIe Port 3A	Auto Gen 1 (2.5GT/s) Gen 2 (5GT/s) Gen 3 (8GT/s)	rtm_cpu0_3a	Selects CPU0 PCIe Port 3A Speed for Zone 3 connector (RTM)
CPU0 PCIe Port 3B	Auto Gen 1 (2.5GT/s) Gen 2 (5GT/s) Gen 3 (8GT/s)	rtm_cpu0_3b	Selects CPU0 PCIe Port 3B Speed for Zone 3 connector (RTM)
CPU0 PCIe Port 3C	Auto Gen 1 (2.5GT/s) Gen 2 (5GT/s) Gen 3 (8GT/s)	rtm_cpu0_3c	Selects CPU0 PCIe Port 3C Speed for Zone 3 connector (RTM)
CPU0 PCIe Port 3D	Auto Gen 1 (2.5GT/s) Gen 2 (5GT/s) Gen 3 (8GT/s)	rtm_cpu0_3d	Selects CPU0 PCIe Port 3D Speed for Zone 3 connector (RTM)
CPU1 PCIe to RTM Width	X4x4x4x4 x4x4x8 x8x4x4 x8x8	rtm_cpu1_bif	Selects CPU1 PCIe Bifurcation for Zone 3 connector (RTM)
CPU1 PCIe Port 3A	Auto Gen 1 (2.5GT/s) Gen 2 (5GT/s) Gen 3 (8GT/s)	rtm_cpu1_3a	Selects CPU1 PCIe Port 3A Speed for Zone 3 connector (RTM)
CPU1 PCIe Port 3B	Auto Gen 1 (2.5GT/s) Gen 2 (5GT/s) Gen 3 (8GT/s)	rtm_cpu1_3b	Selects CPU1 PCIe Port 3B Speed for Zone 3 connector (RTM)

## Basic Input/Output System

Table 6-4 Advanced >> RTM Configuration (continued)

Item	Values	IPMI Boot Parameter	Description
CPU1 PCIe Port 3C	Auto Gen 1 (2.5GT/s) Gen 2 (5GT/s) Gen 3 (8GT/s)	rtm_cpu1_3c	Selects CPU1 PCIe Port 3C Speed for Zone 3 connector (RTM)
CPU1 PCIe Port 3D	Auto Gen 1 (2.5GT/s) Gen 2 (5GT/s) Gen 3 (8GT/s)	rtm_cpu1_3d	Selects CPU1 PCIe Port 3D Speed for Zone 3 connector (RTM)
RTM-748X Network QSFP1/2	Bank1 Bank2 No Change	rtm_7480_sel1	Selects the QSFP1/2 Configuration on RTM-748X. Bank 1 or Bank 2
RTM-748X Network QSFP3/4	Bank1 Bank2 No Change	rtm_7480_sel2	Selects the QSFP3/4 Configuration on RTM-748X. Bank 1 or Bank 2

### 6.7.2.3 Peripheral Configuration

Figure 6-12 Peripheral Configuration

```

InsydeH2O Setup Utility                                     Rev. 5.0
-----
Advanced
-----
Peripheral Configuration
| PCIe SR-IOV          <Enabled>
| PCIe ARI            <Enabled>
| ARI Forward         <Disabled>
|
| Spread Spectrum     <Disabled>
|
|-----|
|ENABLE : Enable SR-IOV
|function if PCIe Add-in
|Card Support.  DISABLE :
|Disable SR-IOV function
|if PCIe Add-in Card
|Support.
|-----|
Esc Exit          </> Select Item  Enter      Select > F10 Save and Exit
  
```



The following tables contain descriptions for the Peripheral Configuration options.

*Table 6-5 Advanced >> Peripheral Configuration*

<b>Item</b>	<b>Values</b>	<b>IPMI Boot Parameter</b>	<b>Description</b>
PCIe SR-IOV Support	Enabled, Disabled	pci_sriov	Enables/Disables PCI Express Single Root I/O Virtualization
PCIe ARI	Enabled, Disabled	pci_ari	Enables/Disables Alternative Routing ID Interpretation (ARI)
ARI Forward	Enabled, Disabled		Enables/Disables ARI Forward
Spread Spectrum	Enabled, Disabled	clock_ssc	Enables/Disables Spread Spectrum Clock setting to affect EMI Front Panel Ethernet

*Table 6-6 Advanced >> Peripheral Configuration >> Intel VT for Directed I/O (VT-d)*

<b>Item</b>	<b>Values</b>	<b>IPMI Boot Parameter</b>	<b>Description</b>
Intel VT for Directed I/O (VT-d)	Enabled, Disabled	vtd	Enables/Disables Intel Virtualization Technology for Directed I/O (VT-d) by reporting the I/O device assignment to VMM through DMAR ACPI Tables
Interrupt Remapping	Enabled, Disabled	vtd_ir	Enables/Disables VT_D Interrupt Remapping Support

## Basic Input/Output System

### 6.7.2.4 NVM Express Information

Figure 6-13 NVM Express Information

```
InsydeH2O Setup Utility Rev. 5.0
Advanced
-----
|Location          000:059:00.0
|Model Number     INTEL SSDPEKCR128G7
|Total Namespaces 1
|
|Namespace ID     1
|IEEE EUI64       00-00-00-00-00-00-00
|Storage Capacity 128GB
|Block Number     250069680
|Block Size       512
|
|-----|
|Esc Exit      </> Select Item  Enter  Select > F10 Save and Exit
```

### 6.7.2.5 USB Configuration

Figure 6-14 USB Configuration

```
InsydeH2O Setup Utility Rev. 5.0
Advanced
-----
|USB Configuration
|USB BIOS Support <Enabled>
|
|-----|
|USB
|keyboard/mouse/storage
|support under UEFI and
|DOS environment. It will
|supporting UEFI
|environment only if set
|to UEFI Only
|
|-----|
|Esc Exit      </> Select Item  Enter  Select > F10 Save and Exit
```

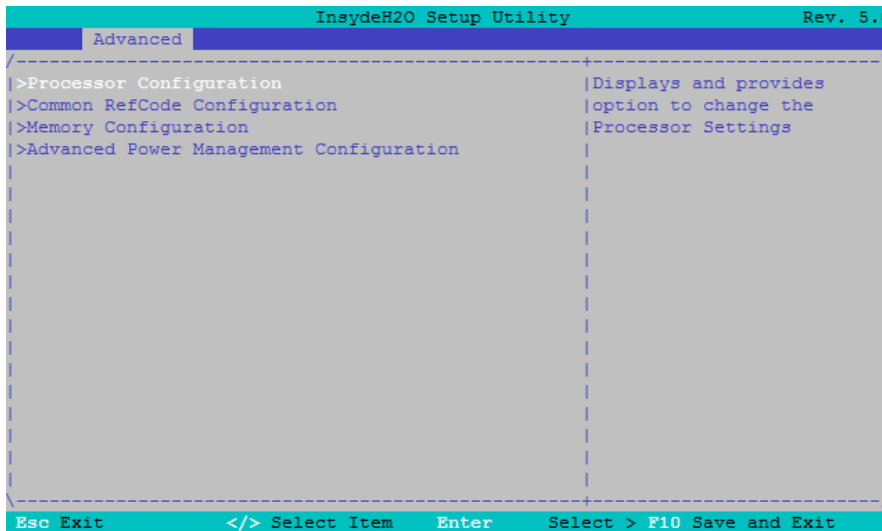
The following table contains the description for the USB Configuration option.

Table 6-7 Advanced >> USB Configuration

Item	Values	IPMI Boot Parameter	Description
USB BIOS Support	Enabled, Disabled, UEFI Only	usb	Enables/Disables USB keyboard/mouse/storage support under UEFI and DOS environment. If UEFI Only is set, it supports only in UEFI environment.

## 6.7.2.6 Socket Configuration

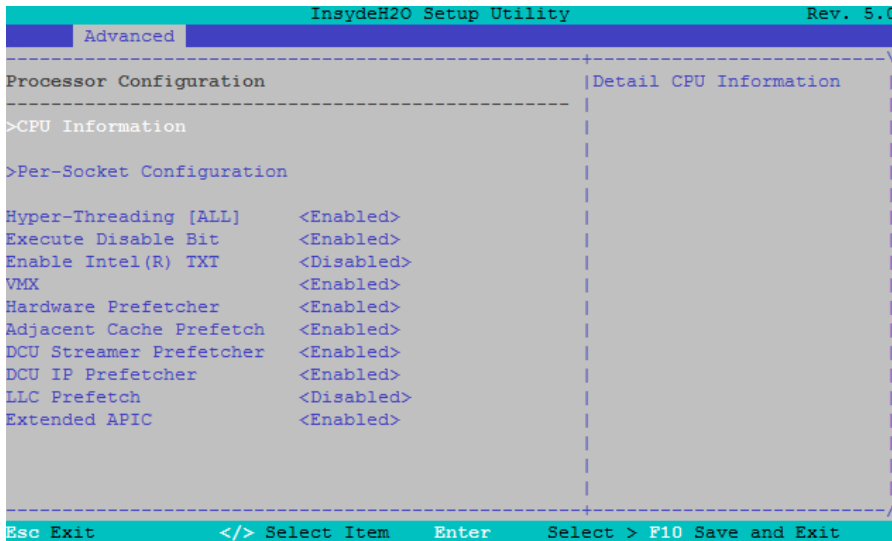
Figure 6-15 Socket Configuration



## Basic Input/Output System

### 6.7.2.7 Processor Configuration

Figure 6-16 Processor Configuration



The following table contains the description for the Processor Configuration options.

Table 6-8 Processor Configurations

Item	Values	IPMI Boot Parameter	Description
Hyper-Treading	Enabled, Disabled	cpu_ht	Enables Hyper Threading Software Method to Enable/Disable logical processor threads
Execute Disable Bit	Enabled, Disabled	cpu_ed	When Disabled, forces the XD feature flag to always return 0
Enable Intel TXT	Enabled, Disabled	cpu_txt	Enables/Disables the Intel Trusted Execution Technology (TXT)
VMX	Enabled, Disabled	cpu_vt	Enables/Disables Intel Virtual Machine Extensions (VMX)
Hardware Prefetcher	Enabled, Disabled	cpu_hp	Enables/Disables the hardware prefetcher

Table 6-8 Processor Configurations (continued)

Item	Values	IPMI Boot Parameter	Description
Adjacent Cache Prefetch	Enabled, Disabled	cpu_acp	When enabled, optimizes the system for application that require high utilization of sequential memory access. When disabled, optimizes the system for applications that require high utilization of random memory accesses.
DCU Streamer Prefetcher	Enabled, Disabled		Enables/Disables the Data-Cache-Unit (DCU) prefetcher
DCU IP Prefetcher	Enabled, Disabled		Enables/Disables the DCU IP prefetcher
LLC Prefetch	Enabled, Disabled		Enables/Disables the Last-Level-Cache (LLC) prefetcher
Extended APIC	Enabled, Disabled	cpu_x2apic	Enables/Disables the extended APIC support

## Per Socket Configuration

There is one Menu for every CPU (0/1).

Figure 6-17 Per Socket Configuration

```

InsydeH2O Setup Utility                                     Rev. 5.0
-----
Advanced
-----
CPU Socket 0 Configuration
-----
Core Disable Bitmap(Hex)  [0x0]
IOT Cfg                   <Disabled>
-----
|0x0: Enable all cores.
|0xFFFFFFFF: Disable all
|cores (Note: The value is
|valid when at least one
|core enables)
-----
Esc Exit      </> Select Item  Enter      Select > F10 Save and Exit
  
```

## Basic Input/Output System

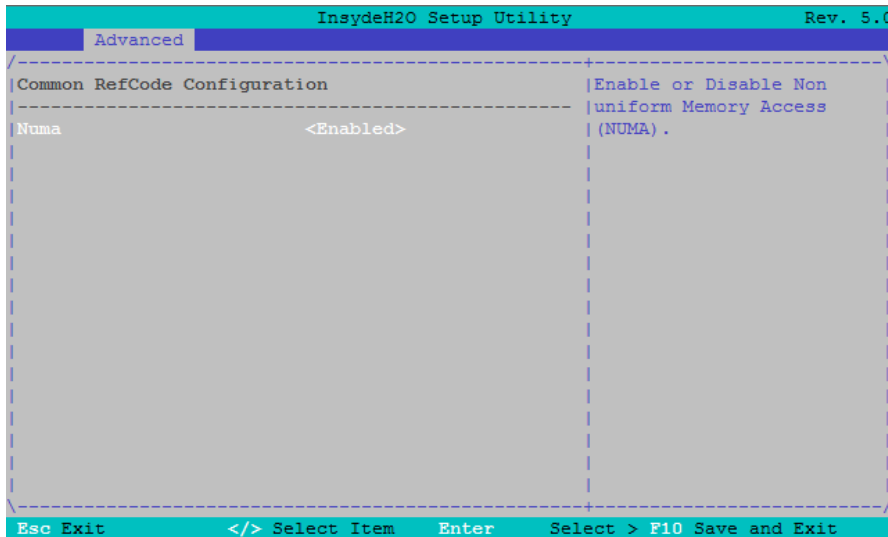
The following table contains descriptions for the Per Socket Configuration options.

Table 6-9 Per Socket Configuration

Item	Values	IPMI Boot Parameter	Description
Core Disable Bitmap	0 to 0xFFFFFFFF	Cpu0_dism/Cpu1_dism	Core Disable Bitmap Hex Value 0: Enable all Cores Valid Range: 0 to 0xFFFFFFFF
IOT Cfg	Enabled, Disabled		Configures the bit to enable IOT/OCLA

### 6.7.2.8 Common RefCode Configuration

Figure 6-18 Common RefCode Configuration



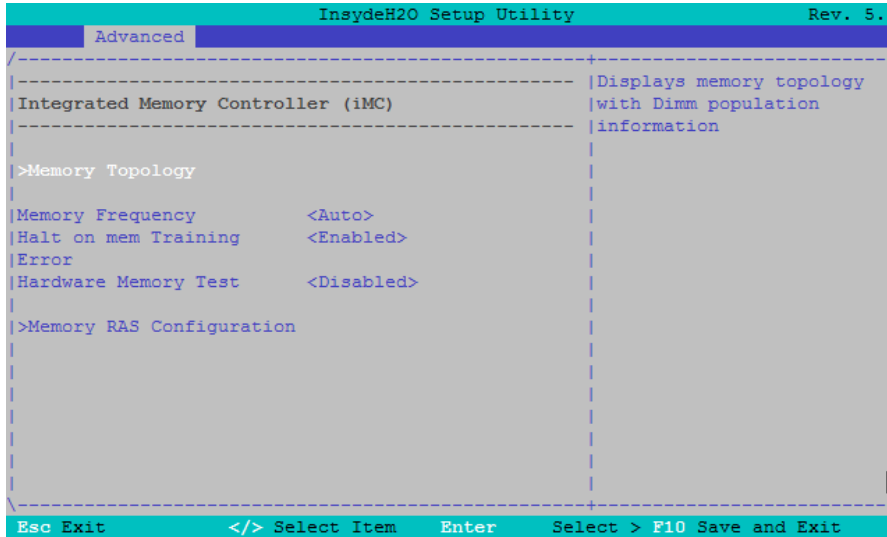
The following table contains the description for the Common RefCode Configuration option.

Table 6-10 Common RefCode Configuration

Item	Values	IPMI Boot Parameter	Description
Numa	Enabled, Disabled	mem_numa	Enables/Disables non uniform memory access (NUMA)

### 6.7.2.9 Memory Configuration

Figure 6-19 Memory Configuration



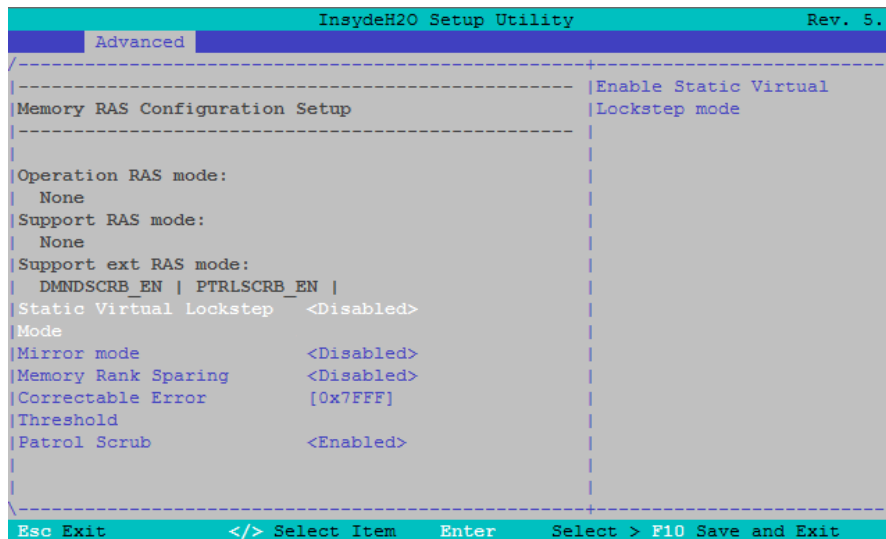
The following table contains descriptions for the Memory Configuration options.

Table 6-11 Memory Configuration

Item	Values	IPMI Boot Parameter	Description
Memory Frequency	Auto, 800-2800	mem_speed	Maximum Memory Frequency Selections in MHz
Halt on mem Training Error	Enabled, Disabled	mem_halt	Enables/Disables Halt on Memory Training Error
Hardware Memory Test	Disabled, Short, Long	Mem_test	Select Hardware Memory test

## Memory RAS Configuration

Figure 6-20 Memory RAS Configuration



The following table contains descriptions for the Memory RAS Configuration options.

Table 6-12 Memory RAS Configuration

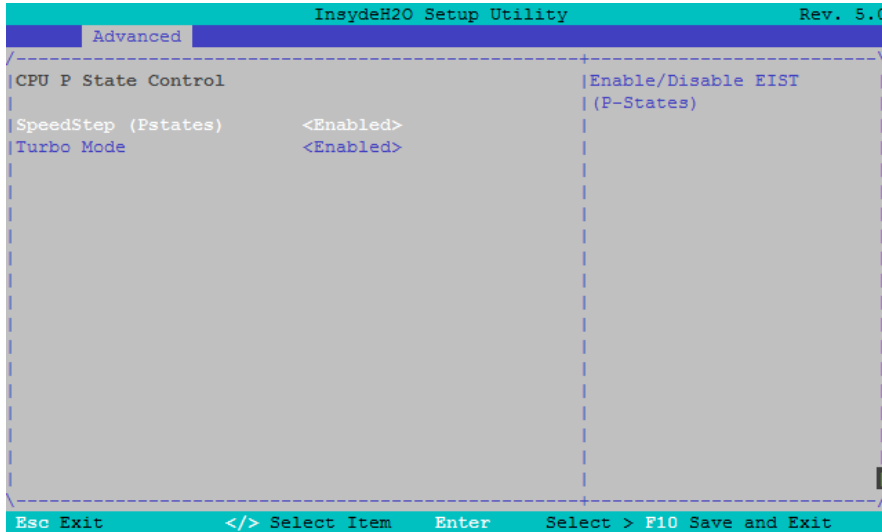
Item	Values	IPMI Boot Parameter	Description
Static Virtual Lockstep Mode	Enabled, Disabled	mem_ras	Enables/Disables virtual lockstep mode
Mirror mode	Disabled, Mirror Mode 1LM, Mirror Mode 2LM		Disables or selects mirroring mode
Memory Rank Sparing		mem_sparing	Enables/Disables Memory Rank Sparing
Patrol Scrub		mem_ps	Enables/Disables Patrol Scrub



### 6.7.2.10 Advanced Power Management Configuration

#### CPU P-State Control

Figure 6-21 CPU P-State Control



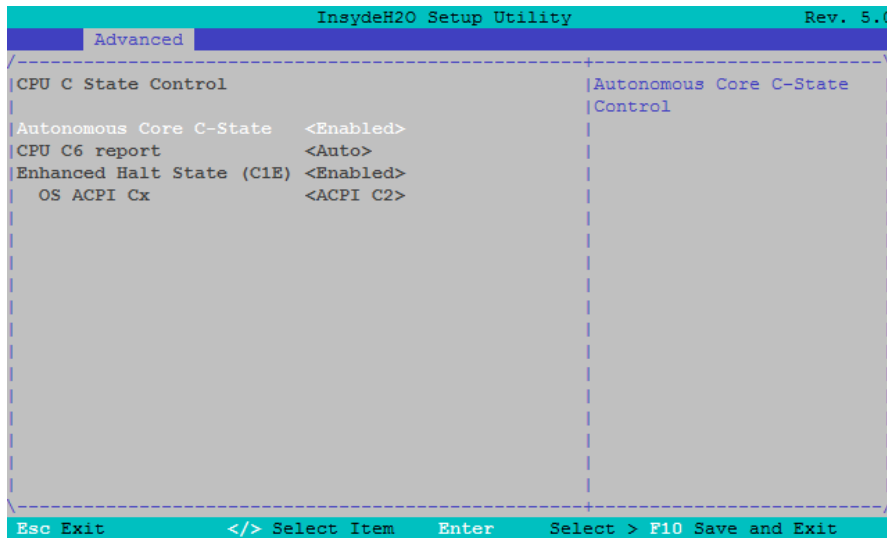
The following table contains descriptions for the CPU P-State Control options.

Table 6-13 CPU P-State Control

Item	Values	IPMI Boot Parameter	Description
SpeedStep	Enabled, Disabled	cpu_ss	Enables/Disables Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology (P-States)
Turbo Mode	Enabled, Disabled	cpu_tm	Enables/Disables processor Turbo Mode

## CPU C-State Control

Figure 6-22 CPU C-State Control



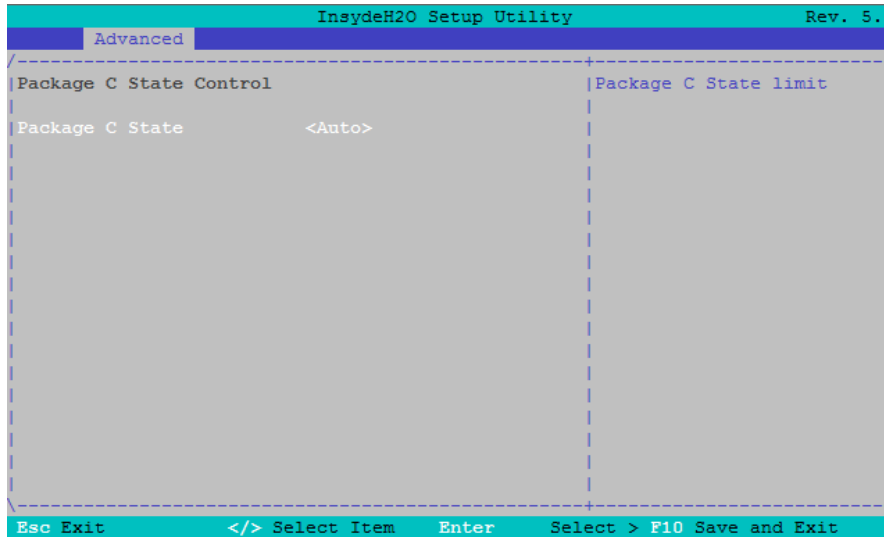
The following table contains descriptions for the CPU C-State Control options.

Table 6-14 CPU C-State Control

Item	Values	IPMI Boot Parameter	Description
Autonomous Core C-State	Enabled, Disabled	cpu_cstates	Enables/Disables processor idle power saving states (C-States)
CPU C6 report	Auto, Enabled, Disabled	cpu_c6	Enables/Disables CPU C6 (ACPI C3) report
Enhanced Halt State	Enabled, Disabled	cpu_c1e	Enables the Enhanced C1E state of the CPU
OS ACPI Cx	ACPI C2, ACPI C3	cpu_cxacpi	Report CPU C3/C6 state to OS as ACPI C2 or ACPI C3

### Package C-State Control

Figure 6-23 Package C-State Control



The following table contains the description for the Package C-State Control option.

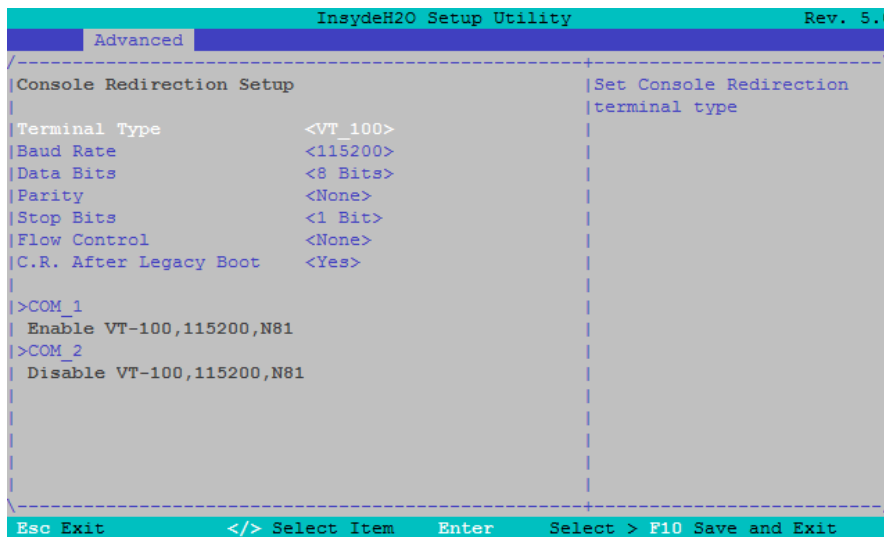
Table 6-15 Package C-State Control

Item	Values	IPMI Boot Parameter	Description
Package C-State	C0/C1 state, C2 state, C6 (non Retention) state, C6 (Retention) state, No Limit, Auto	cpu_cslimit	Specifies the lowest C-state for the package. Higher C-states will save more power, lower C-states will have lower wake up latencies.

## Basic Input/Output System

### 6.7.2.11 Console Redirection

Figure 6-24 Console Redirection



The following table contains descriptions for the Console Redirection configuration options.

Table 6-16 Advanced >> Console Redirection

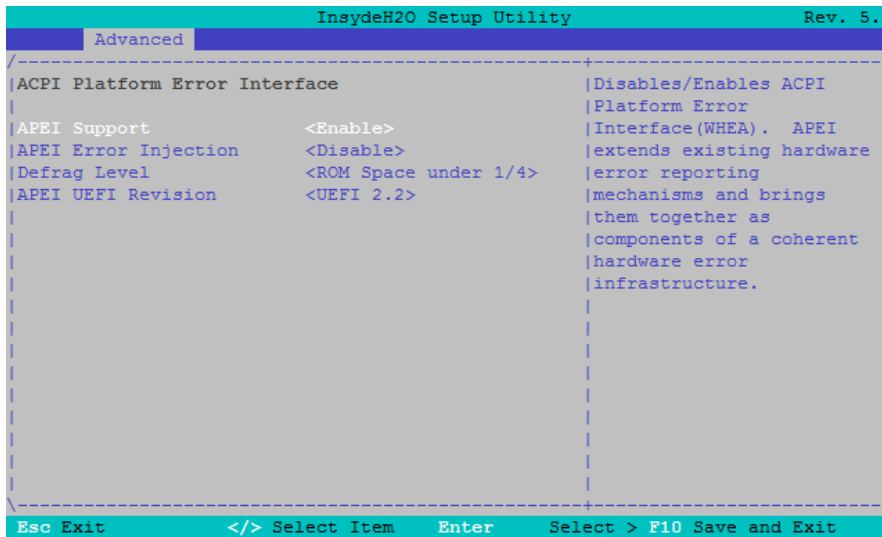
Item	Values	IPMI Boot Parameter	Description
Terminal Type	VT_100, VT_100+, VT_UTF8, PC_ANSI	con_tt	Sets Console Redirection terminal type
Baud Rate	115200, 57600, 38400, 19200, 9600, 4800, 2400, 1200	con_br	Sets Console Redirection baud rate
Data Bits	7 Bits, 8 Bits	con_db	Sets Console Redirection data bits
Parity	None, Even, Odd	con_par	Sets Console Redirection parity bits
Stop Bits	1 Bit, 2 Bits	con_sb	Sets Console Redirection stop bits
Flow Control	None, XON/XOFF	con_fc	Sets Console Redirection flow control type

Table 6-16 Advanced >> Console Redirection (continued)

Item	Values	IPMI Boot Parameter	Description
C.R. After Post	Yes, No	con_ap	Continue Console Redirection after POST, when OS is loaded

## APEI Configuration

Figure 6-25 APEI Configuration



The following table contains description about the APEI Configuration options.

Table 6-17 Advanced >> APEI Configuration

Item	Values	IPMI Boot Parameter	Description
APEI Support	Enabled, Disabled	apei	Disables/Enables ACPI Platform Error Interface (APEI) and Windows Hardware Error Architecture (WHEA). APEI extends hardware error reporting mechanisms and brings them together as components of a coherent hardware error infrastructure.

## Basic Input/Output System

Table 6-17 Advanced >> APEI Configuration (continued)

Item	Values	IPMI Boot Parameter	Description
APEI Error Injection	Disabled, MEMORY_CE, MEMORY_UE_NON_FATAL, MEMORY_UE_FATAL, PCIE_CE, PCIE_UE_FATAL, PCIE_UE_NON_FATAL,	--	Inject an error to test APEI feature
APEI UEFI Revision	UEFI 2.2, UEFI 2.3.1	apei_uefiver	UEFI revision of APEI error format

The following table is used to view the event logs of all storages.

Table 6-18 Advanced >> H2O Event Log Config Manager >> Event and Message Pages >> BIOS Event Log Viewer

Item	Values	IPMI Boot Parameter	Description
Log Event To	ALL, BIOS, BMC SEL, MEMORY	--	Settings Events to log Selected Storage

## IPMI OEM Configuration

Figure 6-26 IPMI OEM Configuration

```

InsydeH2O Setup Utility                               Rev. 5.0
-----
Advanced
-----
IPMI OEM Configuration
-----
IPMC Firmware Version      1.20.00000007
IPMI KCS Interrupt         <Enabled>
OS Load Watchdog           <Disabled>
OS WD Timeout              <5 minutes>
OS WD Timeout Action       <Reset>
PXE Load Watchdog          <Disabled>
PXE WD Timeout             <10 minutes>
IPMI Fail Safe             <No Change>
-----
|Enable/Disable Fail Safe Policy. Enabled: IPMC
|will switch the BIOS boot bank if the FRB2 watchdog
|expires. No Change: Fail Safe Policy will not be
|changed by BIOS
-----
F1 Help      ^/v Select Item  F5/F6 Change V  F9 Setup Defaults
Esc Exit     </> Select Item  Enter      Select >  F10 Save and Exit
  
```

The following table contains descriptions for the IPMI Configuration options.

*Table 6-19 Advanced >> IPMI Configuration*

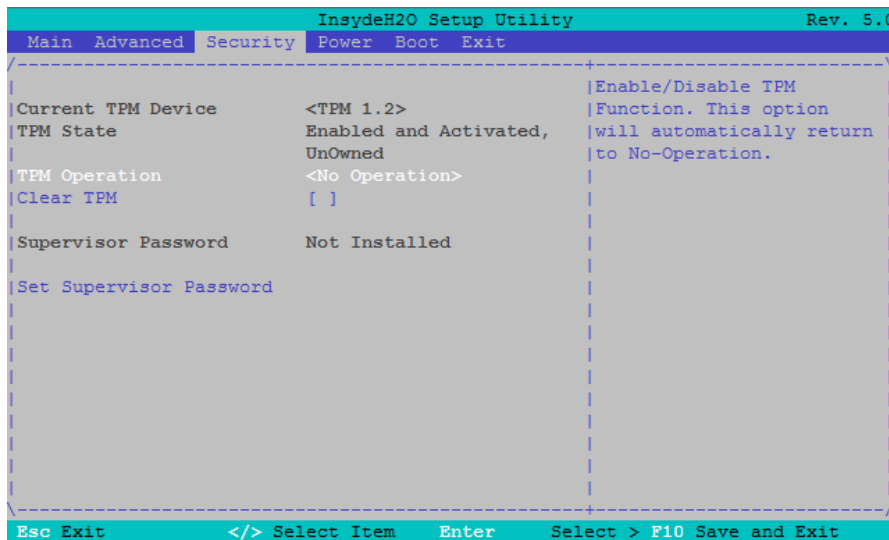
<b>Item</b>	<b>Values</b>	<b>IPMI Boot Parameter</b>	<b>Description</b>
IPMI KCS Interrupt	Enabled, Disabled	ipmi_irq	Enables/Disables usage of Host Interface (KCS) interrupt. KCS interrupt is hardwired to IRQ 6.
OS Watchdog Timer	Enabled, Disabled	osboot_wd	If enabled, starts the IPMI watchdog just before booting the operating system. The OS has to shut off the watchdog timer when successfully booted.
OS WD Timeout	1, 2, 3, 5, 7, 10, 15, 20 minutes	osboot_wd_tout	Configure the Timeout of the OS Boot Watchdog Timer
OS WD Timeout Action	No Action, Hard Reset, Power Down, Power Cycle	osboot_wd_action	Configure how the system should respond if the OS Boot Watchdog Timer expires
IPMI Fail Safe	Enabled, Disabled, No Change	failsafe	Enables/Disables Fail Safe Policy Enabled: IPMC will switch the BIOS boot bank if the FRB2 watchdog expires No Change: Fail Safe Policy will not be changed by BIOS
PXE Load Watchdog	Enabled, Disabled	pxeboot_wd	If enabled, starts the IPMI watchdog just before the PXE Boot image begins downloading. The BIOS disables the timer when the PXE Boot is successful before handing over to the OS Boot.
PXE WD Timeout	5, 10, 15, 20, 40, 60, 90 minutes	pxeboot_wd_tout	Configure the Timeout of the PXE Boot Watchdog Timer

## Basic Input/Output System

### 6.7.3 Security

The following figure shows the Security menu options.

Figure 6-27 Security Configuration



The following table contains descriptions for the Security configuration options.

Table 6-20 Security

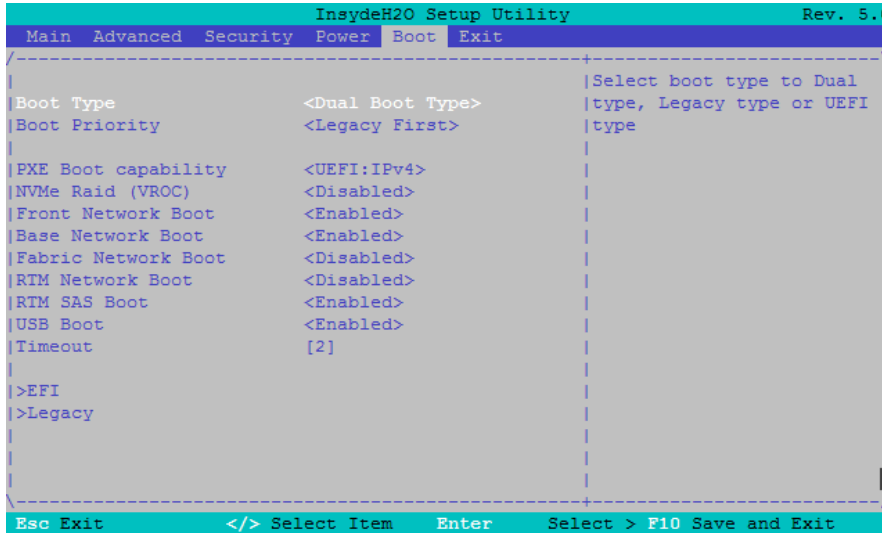
Item	Values	IPMI Boot Parameter	Description
TPM Operation	No Operation, Disable and Deactivate, Enable and Activate	tpm_operation	Enables/Disables TPM Function. This option will automatically return to No-Operation.
Set Supervisor Password	--	--	Install or Change the password. The length of password must be greater than one character.
TPM Provision	Enabled, Disabled	tpm_provision	This will provision the TPM. This boot parameter will not be visible once it is enabled and rebooted.



## 6.7.4 Boot

The following figure shows the Boot menu options.

Figure 6-28 Boot Configuration



The following table contains descriptions for the Boot configuration options.

Table 6-21 Boot

Item	Values	IPMI Boot Parameter	Description
Boot Type	Dual Boot Type, Legacy Boot Type, UEFI boot Type	boot_type	Select boot type to Dual type, Legacy type or UEFI type. Dual boot type supports boot from Legacy and UEFI.
Boot Priority	EFI First, Legacy First	boot_priority	Determine whether EFI devices or Legacy devices are booted first
PXE Boot Capability	Disabled, UEFI:IPv4, UEFI:IPv6, UEFI:IPv4/IPv6, Legacy	boot_netprot	Disabled: Support Network Stack UEFI PXE: IPv4/IPv6 Legacy: Legacy PXEOPROM only

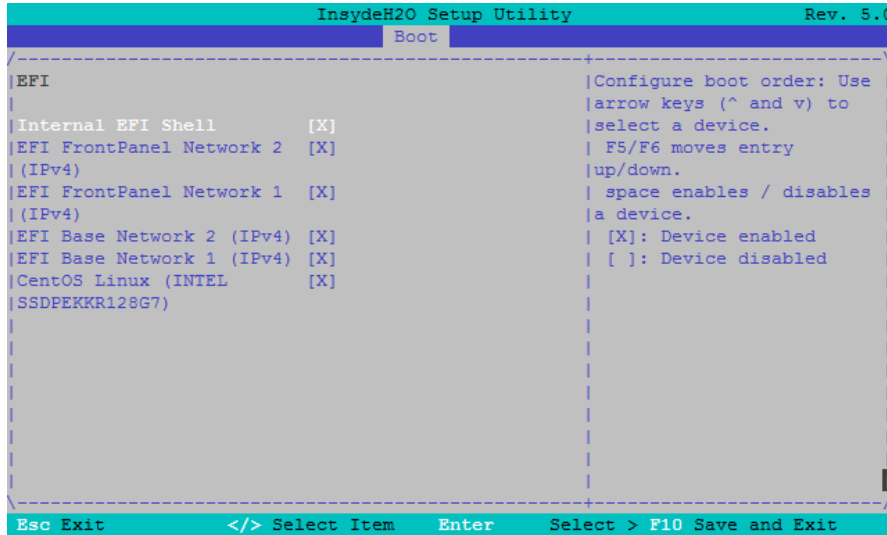
## Basic Input/Output System

Table 6-21 Boot (continued)

Item	Values	IPMI Boot Parameter	Description
NVMe RAID (VROC)	Enabled, Disabled	nvme_cpu0_pstack1 nvme_cpu0_2a nvme_cpu0_2b  u2_cpu0_pstack2 u2_cpu0_3a u2_cpu0_3b	Controls execution of the Option ROM for Intel® VROC (Virtual RAID on CPU) functionality. The Intel VROC option for the NVMe SSD modules is supported on the ATCA-7540. <b>NOTE:</b> To enable RAID under VROC, refer to the BIOS Version 2.1.2 release notes. Contact your local sales representative for availability.
Front Panel Net Boot	Enabled, Disabled	boot_frontnet	Controls execution of the Option ROM for the Front Panel Ethernet controller. Select Enabled when Front Panel Boot is required.
Base Network Boot	Enabled, Disabled	boot_basenet	Controls execution of the Option ROM for both Base Network Ethernet controller. Select Enabled when Base Network Boot is required.
Fabric Network Boot	Enabled, Disabled	boot_fabricnet	Controls execution of the Option ROM for all Fabric Network Ethernet controller. Select Enabled when Fabric Network Boot is required.
RTM Network Boot	Enabled, Disabled	boot_rtmnet	Controls execution of the Option ROM for RTM Network Ethernet controller. Select Enabled when RTM Network Boot is required.
RTM SAS Boot	Enabled, Disabled	boot_rtmsas	Controls execution of the Option ROM for RTM SAS controller. Select Enabled when RTM SAS Boot is required.
RTM SAS Boot Any Device	Enabled, Disabled	boot_rtmsasany	If enabled all SAS devices will be active boot options even if not available in IPMI boot parameters.
USB Boot	Enabled, Disabled	boot_usb	Disables/Enables booting from USB port devices
Info Screen Timeout	0 .. 10	info_tmout	The number of seconds that the firmware will wait for <F2> key

## Boot >> EFI Boot Order

Figure 6-29 EFI Boot Order



This menu allows to configure the order of the EFI Boot devices.

Use the Up and Down keys to select a device.

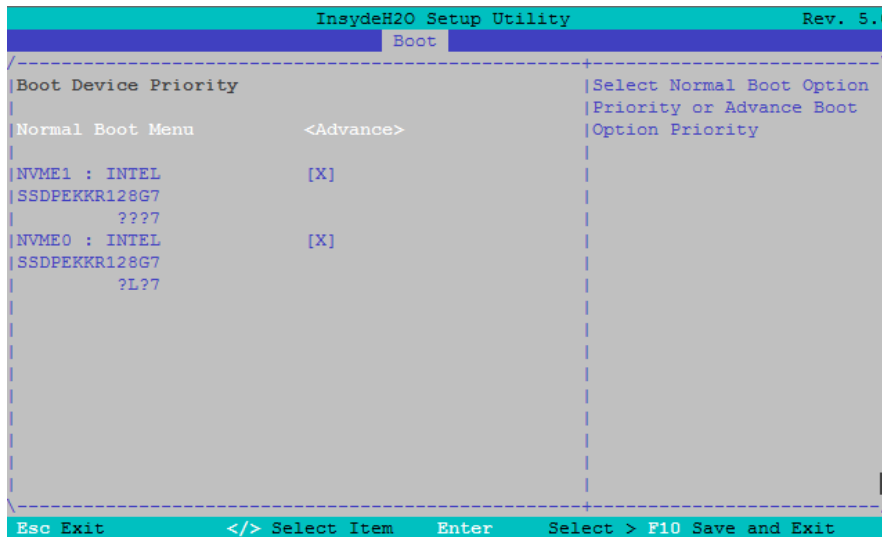
Use the F5 key to move the devices up or down.

With the space key, a boot device can be enabled or disabled. If the boot entry shows [ ], this boot entry is disabled. If it shows [X] then the boot devices is enabled.

## Basic Input/Output System

### Legacy Boot Order

Figure 6-30 Legacy Boot Order



This menu allows to configure the order of the Legacy Boot devices.

Use the Up and Down keys to select a device.

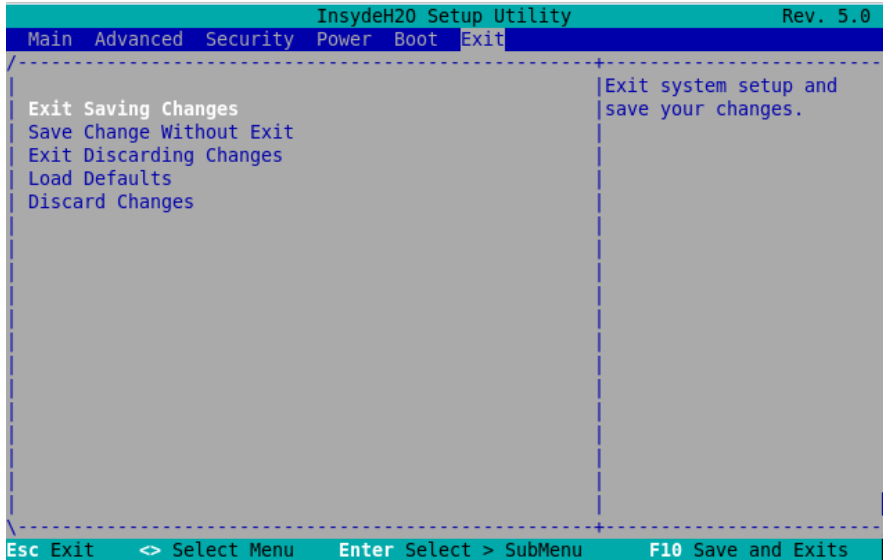
Use the F5 and F6 keys to move the devices up or down.

With the space key, a boot device can be enabled or disabled. If the boot entry shows [ ], this boot entry is disabled. If it shows [X] then the boot devices is enabled.

### 6.7.5 Exit

The following figure shows the Exit menu options.

Figure 6-31 Exit Menu



The following table contains descriptions for the Exit menu options available.

Table 6-22 Exit Menu

Item	Values	IPMI Boot Parameter	Description
Exit Saving Changes	--	--	Saves the changes made and then exits the system
Save Change Without Exit	--	--	Saves the changes without exiting the system
Exit Discarding Changes	--	--	Exits the system without saving the changes
Load Defaults	--	--	Loads default Settings
Discard Changes	--	--	Discards the changes

### 6.8 UEFI Secure Boot

The blade is delivered with UEFI Secure Boot option disabled.

#### To enable the UEFI Secure Boot

1. Press F2 key to enter BIOS setup. The BIOS boot process starts.
2. Press F4 key during boot process to enter Boot menu.
3. In the Boot menu, select the Administer Secure Boot and press Enter. BIOS restarts the blade and enter into the Administer Secure Boot menu.
4. Enable the Restore Secure Boot to Factory Settings setup item. This activates UEFI Secure Boot.
5. Press F10 key to save the changes.

### 6.9 Restoring BIOS Default Settings

The blade provides an on-board configuration switch that allows to load BIOS settings from the DEFAULT area of the IPMI Boot Parameters.

#### To restore the BIOS default settings

1. Remove the blade from the system.
2. Set the on-board switch SW3-4 to ON. See [Switch Settings on page 64](#), for the exact location of SW3.
3. Install and power up the blade.
4. Wait until the blade has completely booted and is up and running.
5. Remove the blade from the system again.
6. Set switch SW3-4 to OFF. BIOS default settings are restored.

### 6.10 IPMI Support

The ATCA-7540 BIOS provides the following IPMI support:

- Sets initial timestamp for IPMI SEL events
- Sends Boot Initiated event
- Sends Memory DIMM detect and error events
- Sends system firmware progress events
- Reads IPMC version of the main blade and the RTM

- Reads FRU information of the main blade and the RTM
- Logs boot error in case of no boot device found
- Reads IPMI GUID and fills in the DMI structure 1 UUID
- Shows SEL and Sensor Values in BIOS setup

BIOS creates the DMI structure type 38 to provide IPMI host interface information to the OS.

BIOS reads and creates the IPMI boot parameters, which are stored in the IPMC.

### 6.11 Watchdog Support

BIOS uses the IPMI payload watchdog for two phases:

- BIOS phase
- Operation System boot phase

The IPMC starts automatically the IPMI payload watchdog after the payload blade comes out of reset. In this case, the FRB2 flag of the IPMI watchdog is set.

BIOS can enable the IPMI watchdog to monitor the loading of the operating system. The watchdog starts just before BIOS starts OS boot loader.

The IPMI watchdog can be configured in the BIOS Setup.

### 6.12 BIOS Error Logging

BIOS supports the following methods to report errors:

- IPMI event logging
- Error logging to the console

### 6.12.1 Runtime Error Logging

BIOS supports Runtime Error Logging for memory and PCI errors. These errors are logged at BIOS Setup Advanced >> Runtime Error Logging. Errors are logged to the IPMI controller.

*Table 6-23 Logged Error Events*

<b>Error</b>	<b>IPMI</b>
Correctable: - Correctable ECC Memory Error	Sensor: Memory, Offset 00h
Correctable: - Memory Error Limit Reached - Correctable ECC logging limit reached	Sensor: Memory, Offset 05h
Uncorrectable: - Uncorrectable ECC Memory Error	Sensor: Memory, Offset 01h
PCI PERR	Sensor: Critical Interrupt, Offset 04h PCI PERR
PCI SERR	Sensor: Critical Interrupt, Offset 05h PCI SERR

### 6.12.2 IPMI Error Logging

BIOS generates status events like Firmware Progress events and error events.



The table below shows all BIOS supported IPMI sensors and their possible events.

*Table 6-24 BIOS Supported IPMI Events*

Sensor	Event
System Firmware Progress (0Fh)	Offset 00h System Firmware Error Supported Event Data2: 00h unspecified Error 01h No system memory 02h No usable system memory 03h SATA device failure 07h No console in found 0Ah No console out found 0Bh Firmware ROM corrupted FDh OEM Error Extension Supported Event Data3 (FDh OEM Error Extension) 21h CPU Built In Self Test (BIST) Error 30h Exception Divide Error 31h Exception Invalid Opcode 32h Exception Stack Fault 33h Exception GP Fault 34h Exception Math Error 35h Exception Alignment Check 36h Exception Machine Check 50h IPMI Boot Parameter Default Area Read Error 51h IPMI Boot Parameter Default Area Locked 52h IPMI Boot Parameter Default Area Checksum Error 53h IPMI Boot Parameter User Area Read Error 54h IPMI Boot Parameter User Area Locked 55h IPMI Boot Parameter User Area Checksum Error 56h IPMI Boot Parameter User Area Write Error 70h Front Panel Network not detected 71h Base Network not detected 72h Fabric Network not detected 73h Accelerator Device not detected 74h RTM SAS Controller not detected 75h RTM Network not detected 76h RTM PCI Bridge not detected 80h Front Panel Network reduced PCI performance

## Basic Input/Output System

Table 6-24 BIOS Supported IPMI Events (continued)

Sensor	Event
	<p>81h Base Network reduced PCI performance</p> <p>82h Fabric Network reduced PCI performance</p> <p>83h Accelerator Device reduced PCI performance</p> <p>84h RTM SAS Controller reduced PCI performance</p> <p>85h RTM Network reduced PCI performance</p> <p>86h RTM PCI Bridge reduced PCI performance</p> <p>Offset 02h System Firmware Progress</p> <p>Supported Event Data2:</p> <p>01h Memory initialization</p> <p>02h Hard-Disk (SATA) initialization</p> <p>03h Secondary processor initialization</p> <p>04h User authentication</p> <p>05h User-initiated system setup</p> <p>06h USB configuration</p> <p>07h PCI configuration</p> <p>08h Option ROM initialization</p> <p>09h Video initialization</p> <p>0Ah Cache initialization</p> <p>0Ch Console input initialization</p> <p>13h Starting Operating System</p> <p>FDh OEM Error Extension</p> <p>Supported Event Data3 (FDh OEM Error Extension)</p> <p>90h Reboot after a FRB2 Watchdog Timeout</p> <p>91h Reboot after a BIOS/POST Watchdog Timeout</p> <p>92h Reboot after a OS Load Watchdog Timeout</p> <p>93h Reboot after a SMS/OS Watchdog Timeout</p> <p>94h Reboot after a OEM Watchdog Timeout</p> <p>A0h RTM detected (unknown)</p> <p>A1h RTM-ATCA-747X-10G-SP detected</p> <p>A2h RTM-ATCA-747X-10G-D detected</p> <p>A3h RTM-ATCA-736X-10G-SP detected</p> <p>A4h RTM-ATCA-736X-10G-SAS detected</p> <p>A6h RTM-ATCA-7360 detected</p> <p>A7h RTM-ATCA-736X-DD detected</p> <p>A8h RTM-ATCA-736X-10G-SP detected</p> <p>AAh RTM-ATCA-736X-10G-SAS detected</p> <p>ACh SB-RTM451 detected</p> <p>ADh RTM-URA50 detected</p>

Table 6-24 BIOS Supported IPMI Events (continued)

Sensor	Event																														
Memory (0Ch)	<p>Offset 00h Correctable ECC                      Offset 01h Uncorrectable ECC                      Offset 04h Memory Device Disabled                      Offset 05h Correctable ECC error logging limit reached                      Offset 06h Presence detected</p> <p>Event Data2: 0xFF                      Event Data3:</p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Bit</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0:3</td> <td>DIMM number</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4:7</td> <td>CPU Socket (1 to 2)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Mapping Event Data3 (CPU Socket &amp; DIMM number) to Memory Channel</p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tbody> <tr><td>0x11</td><td>DIMM A</td></tr> <tr><td>0x13</td><td>DIMM B</td></tr> <tr><td>0x15</td><td>DIMM C</td></tr> <tr><td>0x17</td><td>DIMM D</td></tr> <tr><td>0x19</td><td>DIMM E</td></tr> <tr><td>0x1B</td><td>DIMM F</td></tr> <tr><td>0x21</td><td>DIMM G</td></tr> <tr><td>0x23</td><td>DIMM H</td></tr> <tr><td>0x25</td><td>DIMM J</td></tr> <tr><td>0x27</td><td>DIMM K</td></tr> <tr><td>0x29</td><td>DIMM L</td></tr> <tr><td>0x2B</td><td>DIMM M</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>See <a href="#">Figure 2-2 ATCA-7540 Blade Layout on page 63</a> for DIMM naming convention.</p>	Bit	Description	0:3	DIMM number	4:7	CPU Socket (1 to 2)	0x11	DIMM A	0x13	DIMM B	0x15	DIMM C	0x17	DIMM D	0x19	DIMM E	0x1B	DIMM F	0x21	DIMM G	0x23	DIMM H	0x25	DIMM J	0x27	DIMM K	0x29	DIMM L	0x2B	DIMM M
Bit	Description																														
0:3	DIMM number																														
4:7	CPU Socket (1 to 2)																														
0x11	DIMM A																														
0x13	DIMM B																														
0x15	DIMM C																														
0x17	DIMM D																														
0x19	DIMM E																														
0x1B	DIMM F																														
0x21	DIMM G																														
0x23	DIMM H																														
0x25	DIMM J																														
0x27	DIMM K																														
0x29	DIMM L																														
0x2B	DIMM M																														
Critical Interrupt (13h)	<p>Offset 04h PCI PERR                      Offset 05h PCI SERR                      Event Data2: Bus number                      Event Data3:</p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Bit</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0:3</td> <td>PCI Function number</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4:7</td> <td>PCI Device number</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>See <a href="#">Figure 2-2 ATCA-7540 Blade Layout on page 63</a> for DIMM naming convention.</p>	Bit	Description	0:3	PCI Function number	4:7	PCI Device number																								
Bit	Description																														
0:3	PCI Function number																														
4:7	PCI Device number																														
Boot Error (1Eh)	Offset 00h No bootable media (no boot device found)																														
Battery (29h)	Offset 01h Battery failed																														

### 6.13 LED Usage

BIOS uses LED U3 on the front panel to indicate the activity of startup progress. In boot loader phase (PEI phase) U3 is blinking red. In memory initialization phase U3 is blinking amber and in main initialization phase (DXE phase), U3 blinks green. In case of any fatal error, all LEDs U1, U2 and U3 are set to red.

Shortly before closing BIOS and starting an operation system, U3 is switched off.

### 6.14 Upgrading the BIOS

A BIOS upgrade kit is available for the blade. This allows the BIOS to upgrade. The BIOS upgrade kit contains documentation which describes in detail how to upgrade the BIOS.

Update tool for Linux is provided with Basic Blade Services (BBS). The BIOS can also be upgraded via IPMI -HPM.1 (Hardware Platform Management IPM Controller Firmware Upgrade). For more information, refer to the section [Firmware Upgrade on page 293](#).



**After performing a BIOS upgrade or after restoring a corrupted BIOS image, all BIOS settings are reset to their default values except for parameters that are stored in IPMC storage area.**

### 6.15 BIOS POST Codes

The following table lists the BIOS POST codes. The BIOS POST codes are written to the blade's I/O Port 80 register and can be obtained by reading the "POST code" on-board IPMI sensor. The reading of the "POST code" sensor is only valid when the blade is in the BIOS phase. The reading can be used to locate the cause of a blade hang during BIOS phase. When the blade has booted a OS, the reading of the "POST code" sensor returns no valid status code.

For debugging purpose, the POST Codes can be printed to the serial console by setting DIP Switch 4-3 and 4-4 to ON.

*Table 6-25 BIOS POST Codes*

POST Code	Description
02h	Patching CPU microcode
03h	Setup Cache as RAM
04h	PCIE MMIO Base Address initial

Table 6-25 BIOS POST Codes (continued)

POST Code	Description
05h	CPU Generic MSR initial
06h	Setup CPU speed
07h	Cache as RAM test
08h	Tune CPU frequency ratio to maximum level
09h	Setup BIOS ROM cache
0Ah	Enter Boot Firmware Volume
70h	Super I/O initial
71h	CPU Early Initial
72h	Multi-processor Early initial
73h	HyperTransport initial
74h	PCIE MMIO BAR Initial
75h	North Bridge Early Initial
76h	South Bridge Early Initial
77h	PCIE Training
78h	TPM Initial
79h	SMBUS Early Initial
7Ah	Clock Generator Initial
7Bh	Internal Graphic device early initial, PEI_IGDOPRegion
7Ch	HECI Initial
7Dh	Watchdog timer initial
7Eh	Memory Initial for Normal boot
7Fh	Memory Initial for Crisis Recovery
80h	Simple Memory test

## Basic Input/Output System

---

Table 6-25 BIOS POST Codes (continued)

POST Code	Description
81h	TXT function early initial
82h	Start to use Memory
83h	Set cache for physical memory
84h	Recovery device initial
85h	Found Recovery image
86h	Recovery image not found
87h	Load Recovery Image complete
88h	Start Flash BIOS with Recovery image
89h	Loading BIOS image to RAM
8Ah	Loading DXE core
8Bh	Enter DXE core
8Ch	iFFS Transition Start
8Dh	iFFS Transition End
40h	TPM initial in DXE
41h	South bridge SPI initial
42h	Setup Reset service, DXE_CF9Reset
43h	South bridge Serial GPIO initial, DXE_SB_SerialGPIO_INIT
44h	Setup SMM ACCESS service
45h	North bridge Middle initial
46h	Super I/O DXE initial
47h	Setup Legacy Region service, DXE_LegacyRegion
48h	South Bridge Middle Initial
49h	Identify Flash device
4Ah	Fault Tolerant Write verification

Table 6-25 BIOS POST Codes (continued)

POST Code	Description
4Bh	Variable Service Initial
4Ch	Fail to initial Variable Service
4Dh	MTC Initial
4Eh	CPU Middle Initial
4Fh	Multi-processor Middle Initial
50h	SMBUS Driver Initial
51h	8259 Initial
52h	RTC Initial
53h	SATA Controller early initial
54h	Setup SMM Control service, DXE_SMMControler_INIT
55h	Setup Legacy Interrupt service, DXE_LegacyInterrupt
56h	Relocate SMM BASE
57h	SMI test
58h	VTD Initial
59h	Legacy BIOS initial
5Ah	Legacy interrupt function initial
5Bh	ACPI Table Initial
5Ch	Setup SB SMM Dispatcher service, DXE_SB_Dispatch
5Dh	Setup SB IOTRAP Service
5Eh	Build AMT Table
5Fh	PPM Initial
60h	HECIDRV Initial
61h	Variable store garbage collection and reclaim operation

## Basic Input/Output System

---

Table 6-25 BIOS POST Codes (continued)

POST Code	Description
62h	Do not support flash part (which is defined in SpiDevice.c)
10h	Enter BDS entry
11h	Install Hotkey service
12h	ASF Initial
13h	PCI enumeration
14h	PCI resource assign complete
15h	PCI enumeration complete
16h	Keyboard Controller, Keyboard and Moust initial
17h	Video device initial
18h	Error report device initial
19h	USB host controller initial
1Ah	USB BUS driver initial
1Bh	USB device driver initial
1Ch	Console device initial fail
1Dh	Display logo or system information
1Eh	IDE controller initial
1Fh	SATA controller initial
20h	SIO controller initial
21h	ISA BUS driver initial
22h	Floppy device initial
23h	Serial device initial
24h	IDE device initial
25h	AHCI device initial
26h	Dispatch option ROMs



Table 6-25 BIOS POST Codes (continued)

POST Code	Description
27h	Get boot device information
28h	End of boot selection
29h	Enter Setup Menu
2Ah	Enter Boot manager
2Bh	Try to boot system to OS
2Ch	Shadow Misc Option ROM
2Dh	Save S3 resume required data in RAM
2Eh	Last Chipset initial before boot to OS
2Fh	Start to boot Legacy OS
30h	Start to boot UEFI OS
31h	Prepare to Boot to Legacy OS
32h	Send END of POST Message to ME via HECI
33h	Last Chipset initial before boot to Legacy OS
34h	Ready to Boot Legacy OS
35h	Fast recovery start flash
36h	SDHC device initial
37h	Ata Legacy device initial
38h	SD Legacy device initial
F9h	No Boot Device, PostBDS_NO_BOOT_DEVICE
FBh	UEFI Boot Start Image, PostBDS_START_IMAGE
FDh	Legacy 16 boot entry
FEh	Try to Boot with INT 19
A0h	Identify Flash device in SMM

## Basic Input/Output System

Table 6-25 BIOS POST Codes (continued)

POST Code	Description
A2h	SMM service initial
A6h	OS call ACPI enable function
A7h	ACPI enable function complete
A1h	Enter S1
A3h	Enter S3
A4h	Enter S4
A5h	Enter S5
A8h	OS call ACPI disable function
A9h	ACPI disable function complete
C0h	Memory initial for S3 resume
C1h	Get S3 resume required data from memory
C2h	Start to use memory during S3 resume
C3h	Set cache for physical memory during S3 resume
C4h	Start to restore system configuration
C5h	Restore system configuration stage 1
C6h	Restore system configuration stage 2
C7h	Relocate SMM BASE during S3 resume
C8h	Multi-processor initial during S3 resume
C9h	Start to restore system configuration in SMM
CAh	Restore system configuration in SMM complete
CBh	Back to OS
51h	Prepare to enter S1
53h	Prepare to enter S3
54h	Prepare to enter S4

Table 6-25 BIOS POST Codes (continued)

POST Code	Description
55h	Prepare to enter S5
E1h	System wakeup from S1
E3h	System wakeup from S3
E4h	System wakeup from S4
E5h	System wakeup from S5
A0h	UPI Initialization: Initialize UPI inuput structure default values
A1h	UPI Initialization: Collect info such as SBSP, Boot Mode, Reset type and so on
A2h	UPI Initialization: Setup IO SADs in SBSP to access the config space
A3h	UPI Initialization: Setup up minimum path between SBSP & other sockets
A4h	UPI Initialization: Setup IO SADs in PBSP to access the config space
A5h	UPI Initialization: System configurations that require some kind of reset
A6h	UPI Initialization: Sync up with PBSPs
A7h	UPI Initialization: Topology discovery and route calculation
A8h	UPI Initialization: Program final route
A9h	UPI Initialization: Program final IO SAD setting
AAh	UPI Initialization: Protocol layer and other Uncore settings
ABh	UPI Initialization: Transition links to full speed operation
ACH	UPI Initialization: Phy layer settings
ADh	UPI Initialization: Link layer settings
Aeh	UPI Initialization: Coherency Settings
Afh	UPI Initialization: QPI is done
B0h	Memory Initialization: DIMM Detect
B1h	Memory Initialization: Clock

## Basic Input/Output System

---

Table 6-25 BIOS POST Codes (continued)

<b>POST Code</b>	<b>Description</b>
B2h	Memory Initialization: Read SPD data
B3h	Memory Initialization: Early Init
B4h	Memory Initialization: Rank Detection
B5h	Memory Initialization: Early Channel Init
B6h	Memory Initialization: JEDEC Init
B7h	Memory Initialization: Channel Training
B8h	Memory Initialization: Throttling Init
B9h	Memory Initialization: BIST
BAh	Memory Initialization: Init
BBh	Memory Initialization: DDR Memory Mapping
BCh	Memory Initialization: RAS Configuration
BDh	Memory Initialization: Get Margins
BFh	Memory Initialization: MRC Done

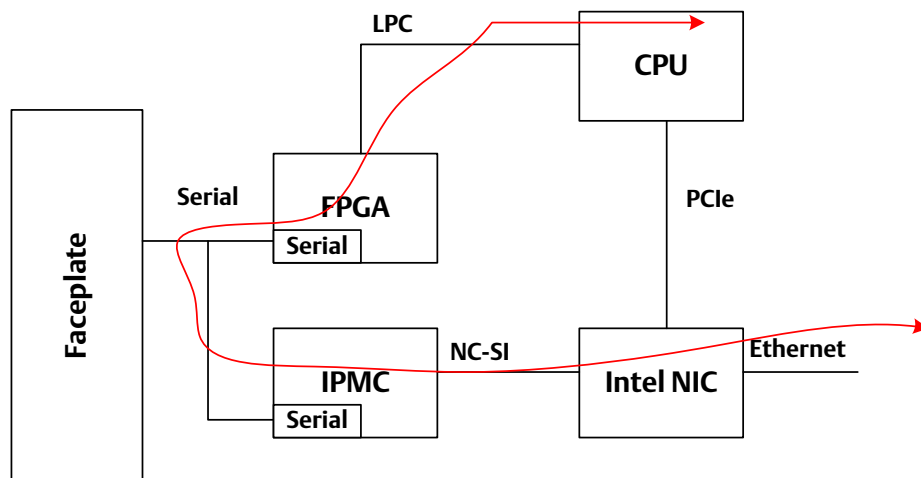
# Serial over LAN (SOL)

## 7.1 Overview

Serial over LAN (SOL) is a mechanism that is used to redirect the serial console from the blade via an IPMI session over the network. SOL uses the RMCP+ protocol.

The IPMC is used to establish and control the SOL session. SOL is available on the base interfaces. The sideband interface of the Intel NIC is used to transmit/receive its terminal characters via a base interface.

Figure 7-1 SOL Overview



You can configure the SOL parameters using `ipmitool`.

The ATCA-7540 supports two SOL channels, which are available at their base interfaces. However, only one SOL session is allowed at a time.

Table 7-1 SOL Channels

SOL/LAN Channel #	Ethernet Device	
1	base1	SOL Channel #1 at Base Interface #1
2	base2	SOL Channel #2 at Base Interface #2

### 7.2 Ipmitool

The open source ipmitool is the dominant tool used to interact with the IPMC. The ipmitool package is installed in the root file-system provided in the ATCA-7540 Linux BBS release. The RPM is also available in standard CentOS repositories. If you want to download and install the open source version, you can download it from <https://github.com/ipmitool/ipmitool>. At the time of publishing this manual the current version is 1.8.18. Installation instructions and other documentation for this tool is available on this site.

### 7.3 Configuring SOL Parameters

You can configure the following SOL parameters.

Table 7-2 SOL Parameters

Parameter	Description
Set LAN Configuration Parameter (IP address/MAC address)	Use this command to set the IP and MAC address
Set Channel Access (Privilege level)	Use this command to set the privilege level
Set User Name	Default value is soluser
Set User Password	Default value is solpasswd
Set Channel Security Keys	Default KG key value is gkey

You can use ipmitool to modify the parameters.

#### 7.3.1 Using ipmitool

The following examples show how to query the LAN parameters that are currently in use for a potential SOL session for base 1 or base 2:

```
root@ATCA-7540:~# ipmitool lan print 1
Set in Progress          : Set Complete
Auth Type Support       :
Auth Type Enable        : Callback :
                        : User      :
                        : Operator :
                        : Admin   :
                        : OEM     :
```

```
IP Address Source      : Unspecified
IP Address             : 172.16.0.221
Subnet Mask            : 255.255.0.0
MAC Address            : ec:9e:cd:10:a0:64
Default Gateway IP    : 172.16.0.1
Default Gateway MAC    : 00:00:00:00:00:00
RMCP+ Cipher Suites   : 1,2,3,3
Cipher Suite Priv Max : Not Available
```

```
root@ATCA-7540:~# ipmitool lan print 2
```

```
Set in Progress       : Set Complete
Auth Type Support     :
Auth Type Enable      : Callback :
                       : User      :
                       : Operator :
                       : Admin   :
                       : OEM     :
```

```
IP Address Source     : Unspecified
IP Address             : 172.17.1.220
Subnet Mask            : 255.255.0.0
MAC Address            : ec:9e:cd:10:a0:65
Default Gateway IP    : 172.17.0.1
Default Gateway MAC    : 00:00:00:00:00:00
RMCP+ Cipher Suites   : 1,2,3,3
Cipher Suite Priv Max : Not Available
```

You can change the IPMC LAN parameters using the ipmitool "lan set" commands. For example, to change the IP address of the IPMC LAN 1 interface to 192.168.21.100/24, you would use the following commands:

```
root@ATCA-7540: ipmitool lan set 1 ipaddr 192.168.21.100
root@ATCA-7540: ipmitool lan set 1 netmask 255.255.255.0
```

# 7.4 Establishing an SOL Session

### Procedure

To establish a SOL session:

1. Pick a blade in the chassis which you want to use as the initiator to start an SOL session with an ATCA-7540.
2. Pick which "base" interface on this initiator blade you want to use to start an SOL session with an ATCA-7540.
3. The "base" interface you use has to have an IP address on the same subnet as the IP address assigned to the IPMC LAN interface of the ATCA-7540 that you want to use for the SOL session.

For example, if you want to use the IPMC LAN 1 interface on the ATCA-7540, and the IPMC LAN 1 interface has the IP address 172.16.0.221/16, then you would have to use the "base1" interface on the initiator blade and assign an IP address on the 172.16.0.0/16 subnet to this "base1" interface before attempting an SOL activation.

If you have less leeway to changing the "base1" IP address on the initiator blade, you could leave this "base1" IP address on the initiator blade as is and instead change the IP address assigned to the IPMC LAN 1 interface on the ATCA-7540 blade to be on the same subnet as the "base1" interface on the initiator blade. You can do this using the ipmitool "lan set" commands described earlier.

4. Start the SOL session with the ATCA-7540 blade from the initiator blade. The default user on an ATCA-7540 for an SOL session is `soluser`; the default password is `solpasswd`. Use cipher 1 and KG key "gkey". For example, if you are using the "base1" interface on the initiator blade, and the IPMC LAN 1 interface on the ATCA-7540 has IP address 172.16.0.221, then you would use the following command:

```
ipmitool -C 1 -I lanplus -H 172.16.0.221 -U soluser -P solpasswd  
-k gkey sol activate
```

To end an SOL session, use "?."



# Supported IPMI Commands

## 8.1 Standard IPMI Commands

The IPMC is fully compliant to the Intelligent Platform Management Interface v1.5. This section provides information about the supported IPMI commands.

### 8.1.1 Global IPMI Commands

The IPMC supports the following global IPMI commands.

*Table 8-1 Supported Global IPMI Commands*

Command	NetFn (Request/Response)	CMD	Comments
Get Device ID	0x06/0x07	0x01	-
Cold Reset	0x06/0x07	0x02	-
Warm Reset	0x06/0x07	0x03	-
Get Self Test Results	0x06/0x07	0x04	-
Get Device GUID	0x06/0x07	0x08	-
Master Write-Read	0x06/0x07	0x52	Only for accessing private I <sup>2</sup> C buses.

### 8.1.2 System Interface Commands

The system interface commands are supported by blades providing a system interface.

*Table 8-2 Supported System Interface Commands*

Command	NetFn (Request/Response)	CMD
Set BMC Global Enables	0x06/0x07	0x2E
Get BMC Global Enables	0x06/0x07	0x2F
Clear Message Flags	0x06/0x07	0x30
Get Message Flags	0x06/0x07	0x31
Get Message	0x06/0x07	0x33
Send Message	0x06/0x07	0x34

## Supported IPMI Commands

---

Table 8-2 Supported System Interface Commands (continued)

Command	NetFn (Request/Response)	CMD
Set Channel Access	0x06/0x07	0x40
Get Channel Access	0x06/0x07	0x41
Get Channel Info	0x06/0x07	0x42
Set User Access	0x06/0x07	0x43
Get User Access	0x06/0x07	0x44
Set User Name	0x06/0x07	0x45
Get User Name	0x06/0x07	0x46
Set User Password	0x06/0x07	0x47
Set User Payload Access	0x06/0x07	0x4C
Get User Payload Access	0x06/0x07	0x4D
Set Channel Security Keys	0x06/0x07	0x5C

### 8.1.3 Watchdog Commands

The watchdog commands are supported by the blades providing a system interface and a watchdog type 2 sensor.

The pre-timeout and power-cycle options are not supported.

Table 8-3 Supported Watchdog Commands

Command	NetFn (Request/Response)	CMD
Reset Watchdog Timer	0x06/0x07	0x22
Set Watchdog Timer	0x06/0x07	0x24
Get Watchdog Timer	0x06/0x07	0x25

## 8.1.4 SEL Device Commands

The following table contains the supported SEL Device Commands.

*Table 8-4 Supported SEL Device Commands*

Command	NetFn (Request/Response)	CMD
Get SEL Info	0x0A/0x0B	0x40
Reserve SEL	0x0A/0x0B	0x42
Get SEL Entry	0x0A/0x0B	0x43
Add SEL Entry	0x0A/0x0B	0x44
Clear SEL	0x0A/0x0B	0x47
Get SEL Time	0x0A/0x0B	0x48
Set SEL Time	0x0A/0x0B	0x49

## 8.1.5 FRU Inventory Commands

The following table contains the supported FRU Inventory Commands.

*Table 8-5 Supported FRU Inventory Commands*

Command	NetFn (Request/Response)	CMD
Get FRU Inventory Area Info	0x0A/0x0B	0x10
Read FRU Data	0x0A/0x0B	0x11
Write FRU Data	0x0A/0x0B	0x12

## 8.1.6 Sensor Device Commands

The following table contains the supported Sensor Device Commands.

*Table 8-6 Supported Sensor Device Commands*

Command	NetFn (Request/Response)	CMD	Comments
Get Device SDR Info	0x04/0x05	0x20	-
Get Device SDR	0x04/0x05	0x21	-

## Supported IPMI Commands

Table 8-6 Supported Sensor Device Commands (continued)

Command	NetFn (Request/Response)	CMD	Comments
Reserve Device SDR Repository	0x04/0x05	0x22	-
Get Sensor Reading Factors	0x04/0x05	0x23	-
Set Sensor Hysteresis	0x04/0x05	0x24	-
Get Sensor Hysteresis	0x04/0x05	0x25	-
Set Sensor Threshold	0x04/0x05	0x26	Most of the threshold-based sensors have fixed thresholds. Before using this command, check whether threshold setting is supported by using the Get Device SDR command.
Get Sensor Threshold	0x04/0x05	0x27	-
Set Sensor Event Enable	0x04/0x05	0x28	-
Get Sensor Event Enable	0x04/0x05	0x29	-
Get Sensor Event Status	0x04/0x05	0x2B	-
Get Sensor Reading	0x04/0x05	0x2D	-
Get Sensor Type	0x04/0x05	0x2F	-
Set Event Receiver	0x04/0x05	0x00	-
Get Event Receiver	0x04/0x05	0x01	-
Platform Event	0x04/0x05	0x02	-

## 8.1.7 Chassis Device Commands

The following table contains the supported Chassis Device Commands.

Table 8-7 Supported Chassis Device Commands

Command	NetFn (Request/Response)	CMD
Set System Boot Options	0x00/0x01	0x08
Get System Boot Options	0x00/0x01	0x09

### 8.1.7.1 System Boot Options Commands

The IPMI system boot options commands allow you to control the boot process of a blade by sending boot parameters to the blade's BIOS. The BIOS interprets the sent boot parameters and executes the boot process accordingly. Each boot parameter addresses a particular functionality and consists of a sequence of one or more bytes. The IPMI specification assigns numbers to boot parameters. Boot parameters 0 to 7 are standard parameters whose structure and functionality is defined by the IPMI specification. The boot parameters 96 to 127 are OEM-specific which can be used for different purposes.

When using the Get/Set System Boot Options commands, except for parameter 100, use the response/request data fields with the Set Selector and the Block Selector set to 0x00. When using the Get/Set System Boot Option for the parameter 100, the Set Selector and the Block Selector have a specific meaning. For more details, see [System Boot Options Parameter #100 on page 247](#) for details.

The following table lists boot properties that can be configured and their corresponding boot parameter numbers.

Table 8-8 Configurable System Boot Option Parameters

Configurable Boot Property	Corresponding Boot Parameter Number
Selection between default and backup boot flash as device to boot from Selection between default and backup EEPROM as device where the on-board FPGA loads its configuration stream from	96
Timeout for graceful shutdown	98
BIOS boot parameters	100

## Supported IPMI Commands

### 8.1.7.1.1 System Boot Options Parameter #96

This is a Penguin Edge specific OEM boot parameter. Its definition is given in the following table.

Table 8-9 System Boot Options Parameter #96

Data Byte	Description
1	Bits 7:2: Reserved
	Bit 1: FPGA configuration stream load 0: Load configuration stream from default boot flash 1: Load configuration stream from backup boot flash <b>Note:</b> The new FPGA configuration stream is loaded into the FPGA at the next power-up of the payload.
	Bit 0: Default/backup boot flash selection 0: Boot from default boot flash 1: Boot from backup boot flash <b>Note:</b> The newly selected boot flash is connected to the payload immediately, which means that the writing to the flash is possible. Its image is executed after the next power-up or cold reset of the payload.



**The System Boot Options parameter #96 is non-volatile. During blade production, its data is initialized to 0xFF and its state is set to invalid. Its parameter data remains preserved after IPMC power cycles and firmware upgrades.**

### 8.1.7.1.2 System Boot Options Parameter #98

This is a Penguin Edge specific OEM boot parameter. This timer specifies how long the IPMC waits for the payload to shut down. If the payload software does not configure its OpenIPMI library to be notified for shutdown requests, the IPMC shuts down the payload when the timer expires.

Table 8-10 System Boot Options Parameter #98

Bit	Description
15:8	Timeout for GRACEFUL_SHUTDOWN, LSB (given in 100 msec)
7:0	Timeout for GRACEFUL_SHUTDOWN, MSB (given in 100 msec)



The System Boot Options parameter #98 is non-volatile. During blade production its data is initialized to 0x6E and its state is set to invalid. Its parameter data remains preserved after IPMC power cycles and firmware upgrades.

### 8.1.7.1.3 System Boot Options Parameter #100

The system boot options parameter #100 allows you to send multiple boot options to the blade’s BIOS and thus control the boot process. The boot options which you can configure using this parameter are typically a subset of the boot options which you can configure in the BIOS directly, for example, using a Setup menu.

The IPMC contains a storage area where the boot parameters are stored. When the blade boots, the BIOS reads out the storage area, interprets the parameters and executes the boot process accordingly.

<b>NOTICE</b>
<b>The boot parameters in the IPMC storage area have higher priority than the same boot options, which may be configured in the firmware itself, for example, using the setup menu.</b>

The storage area is divided into two parts: the default area and the user area. The user area can be read and written by an IPMI user and default is, the area which the BIOS reads out and uses during the boot process. The default area can only be read by both the IPMI user and the BIOS. Its purpose is to store factory-programmed default boot options which can be used to restore the standard settings. If you want the BIOS to read out and use the boot parameters stored in the default area and thus use the factory settings, you need to configure the blade accordingly. This is typically done by an on-board switch (for example: Clear CMOS RAM). The settings stored in the default area are dependent on the blade and firmware used. The details are given in the following sections.

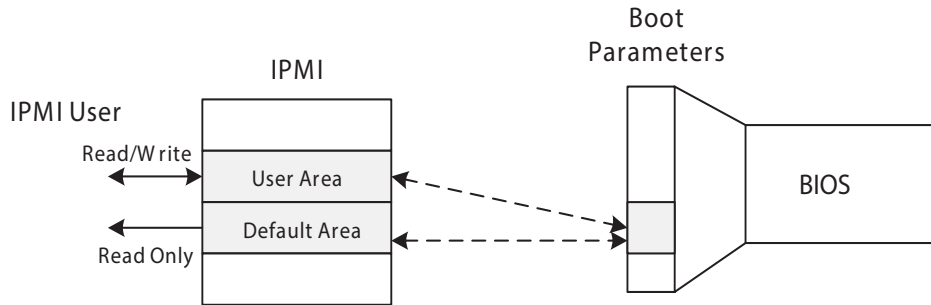


**On the ATCA-7540 blade with particular firmware types, changing a boot parameter in the firmware setup menu changes the boot parameter in the user area as well, if the same parameter is defined both in the user area and the setup menu.**

## Supported IPMI Commands

The following figure summarizes the previously explained basic information flow related to the system boot options parameter #100.

Figure 8-1 System Boot Options Parameter #100 - Information Flow Overview



The boot options need to be stored as a sequence of zero terminated strings. The following table describes in detail the format of the boot options to be used when setting or reading the System Boot Options parameter #100.

Table 8-11 System Boot Options Parameter #100 - Data Format

Byte	Description
0..1	Number of bytes used for boot parameters (LSB first) The number of bytes must be calculated and written into these two bytes by the software which writes into the storage area. The values 0x0000 and 0xFFFF indicate that no data has been written to the storage area. When reading from the storage area and you find any of these two values, your software should assume that no user-specific boot options have previously been written to the storage area.
2 .. n	Boot parameters data The boot parameters are stored as ASCII text with the following general format: <name>=<value>, where all name/value pairs are separated by a zero byte. The end of the boot parameter data is indicated by two zero bytes. Allowed and supported name/value pairs are blade-specific.
n + 1 .. n + 2	16 byte checksum over the boot parameters data section. (LSB first) For backward compatibility reasons, the checksums 0x0000 and 0xFFFF are accepted as valid. They indicate that no checksum has been calculated and stored.



When writing to or reading from the storage area, you can only read or write chunks of 16 bytes at a time. For this reason, the default and user area are divided into numbered blocks of 16 bytes which need to be addressed individually. For this purpose, the "Block Selector" field in the request data field is used. The "Set Selector" field, on the other hand, is used to select either the default or user area.

The following two tables describe in detail how the request and response data fields need to be filled and interpreted when performing SET and GET accesses.

*Table 8-12 System Boot Options Parameter #100 - SET Command Usage*

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1	<p>Bit 7: when set to "1", the storage area on the IPMC is locked, i.e. no other software can access it. This should be set, before doing any modifications and cleared again after the final access.</p> <p>Bits 6..0: must contain the value: "100", indicating this OEM system boot option.</p>
	2	<p>Set Selector</p> <p>Must be set to "0" (user area). You can only write to the user area, therefore no other values are supported.</p>
	3	<p>Block Selector</p> <p>Zero based index of the 16-byte block which you want to write to. Index 0 refers to the first block of 16 bytes, which includes the first two bytes that indicate the boot parameter data size.</p> <p>Depending on the total length of the boot option data, your software may need to write several blocks of 16 bytes in a row, each individually addressed using the block selector.</p>
	4 .. n (n <= 19)	<p>Data that you want to write into the addressed block. This will be a chunk of the boot parameter data. If less than 16 bytes are written, then only the provided data is written, the remaining bytes in the addressed storage area block are left unchanged.</p>
Response Data	1	<p>0x00: Write successful</p> <p>0x80: Boot parameter storage not supported by the IPMC</p> <p>0x81: Storage area is locked by another software entity</p> <p>0x82: Illegal write-access</p> <p>0xC9: Block selector is outside of the allowed range.</p>

## Supported IPMI Commands

Table 8-13 System Boot Options Parameter #100 - GET Command Usage

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1	Bit 7: reserved. Set to "0". Bits 6..0: must contain the value: "100", indicating this OEM system boot option.
	2	Set Selector 0: User area 1: Default area
	3	Block Selector Zero based index of the 16-byte block which you want to read from. Index 0 refers to the first block of 16 bytes, which includes the first two bytes which indicate the boot parameter data size.
Response Data	1	0x00: Read successful 0x80: Boot parameter storage not supported by the IPMC 0xC9: Block selector is outside of the allowed range.
	2	Reserved. Set to "1".
	3	Bit 7: If set to "1", the addressed storage area is locked. Bits 6 ..0: value "100", indicating this OEM boot option command.
	4 .. 19	The content of the read 16-byte block.



**In order to detect the maximum size of writable storage area, your software can perform a series of read accesses while incrementing the block selector with each access. Once the error code C9 is returned, the limit has been reached and the total available space in the writable storage area can be easily determined by the number of previously performed successful read accesses.**

**This is supported by HPI, for details refer to the *System Management Interface Based on HPI-B User's Guide* related to your system environment.**

Penguin Solutions provides the ipmibpar tool to interpret the ASCII parameters. To obtain the tool, contact your local sales representative.

*Table 8-14 System Boot Options Parameter #100 - Supported Parameters*

<b>Parameter</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Values</b>
rtm_auto	If enabled, the RTM is detected and the RTM PCIe parameter are set for this RTM. If disabled, the RTM PCIe parameter can be set manually.	on off
rtm_cpu0_bif	Selects CPU0 PCIe Bifurcation for Zone 3 connector (RTM).	X4x4x4x4 x4x4x8 x8x4x4 x8x8
rtm_cpu0_3a	Selects CPU0 PCIe Port 3A Speed for Zone 3 connector (RTM).	auto gen1 gen2 gen3
rtm_cpu0_3b	Selects CPU0 PCIe Port 3B Speed for Zone 3 connector (RTM).	auto gen1 gen2 gen3
rtm_cpu0_3c	Selects CPU0 PCIe Port 3C Speed for Zone 3 connector (RTM).	auto gen1 gen2 gen3
rtm_cpu0_3d	Selects CPU0 PCIe Port 3D Speed for Zone 3 connector (RTM).	auto gen1 gen2 gen3
rtm_cpu1_bif	Selects CPU1 PCIe Bifurcation for Zone 3 connector (RTM).	X4x4x4x4 x4x4x8 x8x4x4 x8x8 x16
rtm_cpu1_3a	Selects CPU1 PCIe Port 3A Speed for Zone 3 connector (RTM).	auto gen1 gen2 gen3
rtm_cpu1_3b	Selects CPU1 PCIe Port 3B Speed for Zone 3 connector (RTM).	auto gen1 gen2 gen3

## Supported IPMI Commands

Table 8-14 System Boot Options Parameter #100 - Supported Parameters (continued)

Parameter	Description	Values
rtm_cpu1_3c	Selects CPU1 PCIe Port 3C Speed for Zone 3 connector (RTM).	auto gen1 gen2 gen3
rtm_cpu1_3d	Selects CPU1 PCIe Port 3D Speed for Zone 3 connector (RTM).	auto gen1 gen2 gen3
rtm_7480_sel1	Selects the QSFP1/2 Configuration on RTM-748X. Bank 1 or Bank 2.	Bank1 Bank2 No Change
rtm_7480_sel2	Selects the QSFP3/4 Configuration on RTM-748X Bank 1 or Bank 2.	Bank1 Bank2 No Change
pci_sriov	PCI Express Single Root I/O Virtualization	on off
pci_ari	Alternative Routing ID nterpretation (ARI)	on off
pci_64bit	64-bit BAR support for PCI devices	on off
clock_ssc	Spread Spectrum Clock	on off
vtd	Intel Virtualization Technology for Directed I/O (VT-d)	on off
vtd_ir	VT-d Interrupt Remapping Support	on off
sata	SATA controller Operation Mode	on off
sata_alpm	Aggressive Link Power Management (SALP)	on off
sata_mode	SATA Controller Operation Mode	ide ahci raid

## Supported IPMI Commands

Table 8-14 System Boot Options Parameter #100 - Supported Parameters (continued)

Parameter	Description	Values
sata_raidwait	Delay of SATA RAID Option ROM prompt in Seconds	2 4 6 8
usb	USB Support	on off uefi
cpu0_dism	Core Disable Bitmap Hex Value. 0: Enable all cores. Valid Range: 0 to 3FFE. 3FFF=Disabling all cores: Invalid	Hex Value 0 to FFFF
cpu1_dism	Core Disable Bitmap Hex Value. 0: Enable all cores. Valid Range: 0 to 3FFE. 3FFF=Disabling all cores: Invalid	Hex Value 0 to FFFF
cpu_ht	CPU Hyper Threading	on off
cpu_ed	CPU Execute Disable	on off
cpu_txt	Intel Trusted Execution Technology (TXT).	on off
cpu_vt	CPU Virtualization (VT-x)	on off
cpu_hp	CPU Hardware Prefetcher	on off
cpu_acp	CPU Adjacent Cache Prefetcher	on off
cpu_x2apic	CPU Extended APIC support	on off
cpu_ss	CPU Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology (P-States).	on off
cpu_tm	CPU Turbo Mode	on off
cpu_cstates	CPU C-State support	on off

## Supported IPMI Commands

Table 8-14 System Boot Options Parameter #100 - Supported Parameters (continued)

Parameter	Description	Values
cpu_cslimit	Package C State limit	c0c1 c2 c6nr c6r no
cpu_c3	CPU C3 report	on off
cpu_c6	CPU C6 report	on off
cpu_c1e	CPU Enhanced Halt State (C1E)	on off
cpu_cxacpi	Report ACPI Cx State	c2 c3
mem_speed	Memory Frequency (MHz)	auto 1333 1600 1867 2133
mem_halt	Halt on Training Error	on off
mem_numa	Disable Non Uniform Memory Access (NUMA).	on off
mem_test	Hardware Memory Test	off short long
mem_sparing	Memory Rank Sparing	on off
mem_ps	Memory Patrol Scrub	on off
mem_ds	Memory Demand Scrub	on off
con_tt	Serial console terminal type	vt100 vt100+ utf8 ansi

## Supported IPMI Commands

Table 8-14 System Boot Options Parameter #100 - Supported Parameters (continued)

Parameter	Description	Values
con_br	Serial console baud rate	9600 19200 38400 57600 115200
con_db	Serial console data bits	7 8
con_par	Serial console parity bits	o e o
con_sb	Serial console stop bits	1 2
con_fc	Serial console flow control	off hard soft
con_ap	Serial console redirection after POST	on off
apei	APEI Support	on off
apei_uefiver	UEFI revision of APEI error format	uefi22 uefi23
ipmi_irq	IPMI KCS Interrupt	on off
osboot_wd	OS Watchdog Timer	on off
osboot_wd_tout	OS Watchdog Timeout in minutes	1 2 3 5 7 10 15 20

## Supported IPMI Commands

Table 8-14 System Boot Options Parameter #100 - Supported Parameters (continued)

Parameter	Description	Values
osboot_wd_action	OS Watchdog Timeout Action	noaction reset poweroff powercycle
failsafe	IPMI Fail Safe	on off nochange
tpm_operation	TPM Function. This option will automatically return to No-Operation.	no_operation disable_deactivate enable_activate
boot_type	Boot Type	dual legacy uefi
boot_priority	Determine whether EFI devices or Legacy devices are booted first	uefi legacy
boot_netprot	PXE Boot capability	ipv4 ipv6 ipv4v6 legacy
boot_frontnet	Front Panel Net Boot	on off
boot_basenet	Base Network Boot	on off
boot_fabricnet	Fabric Network Boot	on off
boot_rtmnet	RTM Network Boot	on off
boot_rtmsas	RTM SAS disk Boot	on off
boot_rtmsasany	RTM SAS Boot Any Device	on off
boot_usb	USB device boot	on off
info_tmout	The number of seconds that the firmware will wait for <F2> key	on off



Table 8-14 System Boot Options Parameter #100 - Supported Parameters (continued)

Parameter	Description	Values
boot_order	Set the Boot Order See <a href="#">Table 8-15</a> .	device1... deviceN separated by comma
tpm_provision	Performs the provisioning process for TPM. Provisioning is a process to prepare a TPM before it is used	on off
nvme_cpu0-pstack1	Selects Intel® Volume Management Device (VMD) technology for CPU0 pstack1 to use M.2 NVMe SSD modules for RAID configuration	on off
nvme_cpu0_2a	Selects Intel VMD technology for CPU0 PCIe Port 2a to use M.2 NVMe SSD module attached for RAID configuration	on off
nvme_cpu0_2b	Selects Intel VMD technology for CPU0 PCIe Port 2b to use M.2 NVMe SSD module attached for RAID configuration	on off
u2_cpu0_pstack2	Selects Intel VMD technology for CPU0 pstack2 to use U.2 NVMe SSD modules on Zone 3 connector (RTM) for RAID configuration	on off
u2_cpu0_3a	Selects Intel VMD technology for CPU0 PCIe Port 2a to use U.2 NVMe SSD module on RTM (Zone 3 connector) attached for RAID configuration	on off
u2_cpu0_3b	Selects Intel VMD technology for CPU0 PCIe Port 2b to use U.2 NVMe SSD module on RTM (Zone 3 connector) attached for RAID configuration	on off
pxeboot_wd	PXE Load Watchdog Timer	on off
pxeboot_wd_tout	PXE Load Watchdog Timeout in minutes	5 10 15 20 40 60 90

## Supported IPMI Commands

**NOTE:** TPM must be provisioned to use for Intel TXT.

In order to use the Intel TXT for the first time on the blade, enable both `cpu_txt` and `tpm_provision` boot parameters at the same time and reboot the blade. Go to the BIOS setup option by pressing **<F2>** to access the main menu. Select the option **Exit --> Exit Saving Changes**. The blade reboots and the TPM provision takes place. The TPM provision is a one-time activity for a fresh blade.

Once the TPM provision is done for a blade, the `cpu_text` can be enabled/disabled whenever required.

Table 8-15 Boot Order Devices

Boot Device	Description
sata0	On-board SATA device (P1)
sata1	On-board SATA device (P2)
sata2	On-board SATA device (P3)
sata3	SATA device RTM
nvme0	On-board NVMe device (J1/J2)
nvme1	On-board NVMe device (J1/J2)
sashdd	RTM SAS HDD
sas_NNN	SAS Controller NNN = SCSI ID (use this when using an SAS array)
frontnet1	Front Panel Network 1
frontnet2	Front Panel Network 2
basenet1	Base Network 1
basenet2	Base Network 2
fabricnet11	Fabric Network 1_1
fabricnet12	Fabric Network 1_2
fabricnet21	Fabric Network 2_1
fabricnet22	Fabric Network 2_2
rtmnet1	RTM Network 1
rtmnet2	RTM Network 2
rtmnet3	RTM Network 3
rtmnet4	RTM Network 4

Table 8-15 Boot Order Devices (continued)

Boot Device	Description
rtmnet5	RTM Network 5
rtmnet6	RTM Network 6
rtmnet7	RTM Network 7
rtmnet8	RTM Network 8
rtmnet9	RTM Network 9
rtmnet10	RTM Network 10
usbcdrom	USB CDROM/DVDROM
usbcdrom1	USB CDROM/DVDROM connected to USB1
usbcdrom2	USB CDROM/DVDROM connected to USB2
usbcdrom3	USB CDROM/DVDROM connected to USB RTM
usbhdd	USB HDD
usbhdd1	USB HDD connected to USB1
usbhdd2	USB HDD connected to USB2
usbhdd3	USB HDD connected to USB RTM
usbfd	USB Floppy disk
eiffrofrontnet1	EFI Front Panel Network 1 (IPv4)
eiffrofrontnet2	EFI Front Panel Network 2 (IPv4)
efibasenet1	EFI Base Network 1 (IPv4)
efibasenet2	EFI Base Network 2 (IPv4)
efifabricnet11	EFI Fabric Network 1_1 (IPv4)
efifabricnet12	EFI Fabric Network 1_2 (IPv4)
efifabricnet21	EFI Fabric Network 2_1 (IPv4)
efifabricnet22	EFI Fabric Network 2_2 (IPv4)
efirtmnet1	EFI RTM Network 1 (IPv4)
efirtmnet2	EFI RTM Network 2 (IPv4)
efirtmnet3	EFI RTM Network 3 (IPv4)

## Supported IPMI Commands

Table 8-15 Boot Order Devices (continued)

Boot Device	Description
efirtmnet4	EFI RTM Network 4 (IPv4)
efirtmnet5	EFI RTM Network 5 (IPv4)
efirtmnet6	EFI RTM Network 6 (IPv4)
efirtmnet7	EFI RTM Network 7 (IPv4)
efirtmnet8	EFI RTM Network 8 (IPv4)
efirtmnet9	EFI RTM Network 9 (IPv4)
efirtmnet10	EFI RTM Network 10 (IPv4)
eiffrofrontnet1v6	EFI Front Panel Network 1 (IPv6)
eiffrofrontnet2v6	EFI Front Panel Network 2 (IPv6)
efibasenet1v6	EFI Base Network 1 (IPv6)
efibasenet2v6	EFI Base Network 2 (IPv6)
efifabricnet11v6	EFI Fabric Network 1_1 (IPv6)
efifabricnet12v6	EFI Fabric Network 1_2 (IPv6)
efifabricnet21v6	EFI Fabric Network 2_1 (IPv6)
efifabricnet22v6	EFI Fabric Network 2_2 (IPv6)
efirtmnet1v6	EFI RTM Network 1 (IPv6)
efirtmnet2v6	EFI RTM Network 2 (IPv6)
efirtmnet3v6	EFI RTM Network 3 (IPv6)
efirtmnet4v6	EFI RTM Network 4 (IPv6)
efirtmnet5v6	EFI RTM Network 5 (IPv6)
efirtmnet6v6	EFI RTM Network 6 (IPv6)
efirtmnet7v6	EFI RTM Network 7 (IPv6)
efirtmnet8v6	EFI RTM Network 8 (IPv6)
efirtmnet9v6	EFI RTM Network 9 (IPv6)
efirtmnet10v6	EFI RTM Network 10 (IPv6)
efiusb	EFI Boot from USB device

Table 8-15 Boot Order Devices (continued)

Boot Device	Description
efiusb1	EFI Boot from USB device connected to USB1
efiusb2	EFI Boot from USB device connected to USB2
eifusb3	EFI Boot from USB device connected to USB RTM
centos	CentOS Linux
fedora	Fedora Linux
redhat	RedHat Linux
redhate	RedHat Enterprise Linux
suse	SuSE Linux
ubuntu	Ubuntu Linux
windows	Windows Boot Manager

### 8.1.8 LAN Device Commands

The following table contains the supported LAN Device Commands.

Table 8-16 Supported LAN Device Commands

Command	NetFn (Request/Response)	CMD
Set LAN Configuration Parameters	0x0C/0x0D	0x01
Get LAN Configuration Parameters	0x0C/0x0D	0x02
Set SOL Configuration Parameters	0x0C/0x0D	0x21
Get SOL Configuration Parameters	0x0C/0x0D	0x22

### 8.2 PICMG 3.0 Commands

The Penguin Edge IPMC is a fully compliant AdvancedTCA Intelligent Platform Management Controller. It supports all required and mandatory AdvancedTCA commands as defined in the PICMG 3.0 and AMC.0 R2.0 specifications.

*Table 8-17 Supported PICMG 3.0 Commands*

Command	NetFn (Request/Response)	CMD	Comments
Get PICMG Properties	0x2C/0x2D	0x00	-
Get Address Info	0x2C/0x2D	0x01	-
FRU Control	0x2C/0x2D	0x04	The blade supports the cold reset and graceful reboot options.
Get FRU LED Properties	0x2C/0x2D	0x05	-
Get FRU LED Color Capabilities	0x2C/0x2D	0x06	-
Set FRU LED State	0x2C/0x2D	0x07	-
Get FRU LED State	0x2C/0x2D	0x08	-
Set IPMB State	0x2C/0x2D	0x09	-
Set FRU Activation Policy	0x2C/0x2D	0x0A	-
Get FRU Activation Policy	0x2C/0x2D	0x0B	-
Set FRU Activation	0x2C/0x2D	0x0C	-
Get Device Locator Record ID	0x2C/0x2D	0x0D	The Penguin Edge IPMCs support the standard PICMG 3.0 and the extended AMC.0 R2.0 versions of this command.
Set Port State	0x2C/0x2D	0x0E	-
Get Port State	0x2C/0x2D	0x0F	-
Compute Power Properties	0x2C/0x2D	0x10	-
Set Power Level	0x2C/0x2D	0x11	-
Get Power Level	0x2C/0x2D	0x12	-
Get IPMB Link Info	0x2C/0x2D	0x18	-
Set AMC Port State	0x2C/0x2D	0x19	-

Table 8-17 Supported PICMG 3.0 Commands (continued)

Command	NetFn (Request/Response)	CMD	Comments
Get AMC Port State	0x2C/0x2D	0x1A	-
Get FRU Control Capabilities	0x2C/0x2D	0x1E	-
Get target upgrade capabilities	0x2C/0x2D	0x2E	-
Get component properties	0x2C/0x2D	0x2F	-
Abort firmware upgrade	0x2C/0x2D	0x30	-
Initiate upgrade action	0x2C/0x2D	0x31	-
Upload firmware block	0x2C/0x2D	0x32	-
Finish firmware upload	0x2C/0x2D	0x33	-
Get upgrade status	0x2C/0x2D	0x34	-
Activate firmware	0x2C/0x2D	0x35	-
Query self-test results	0x2C/0x2D	0x36	-
Query rollback status	0x2C/0x2D	0x37	-
Initiate manual rollback	0x2C/0x2D	0x38	-



The firmware upgrade commands supported by the blade are implemented according to the PICMG HPM.1 Revision 1.0 specification.

The boot block can be updated with PICMG HPM.1 specific commands.

### 8.3 Penguin Edge Specific Commands

The Penguin Edge IPMC supports several commands which are not defined in the IPMI or PICMG 3.0 specification but are introduced by Penguin Solutions: serial output commands.



Before sending any of these commands, the shelf management software must check whether the receiving IPMI controller supports Penguin Solutions specific IPMI commands by using the IPMI command, 'Get Device ID'. Sending Penguin Edge specific commands to IPMI controllers which do not support these IPMI commands will lead to no or undefined results.

Proper handling of these commands is required to write a portable application.

## Supported IPMI Commands

### 8.3.1 Serial Output Commands

The following table contains information about the Serial Output Commands.

Table 8-18 Serial Output Commands

Command Name	NetFn (Request/Response)	CMD	Description
Set Serial Output	0x2E/0x2F	0x15	See <a href="#">Set Serial Output Command on page 264</a>
Get Serial Output	0x2E/0x2F	0x16	See <a href="#">Get Serial Output Command on page 265</a>

#### 8.3.1.1 Set Serial Output Command

The Set Serial Output command selects the serial port output source for a serial port connector.

##### 8.3.1.1.1 Request Data

The following table lists the request data applicable to the Set Serial Output command.

Table 8-19 Request Data of Set Serial Output Command

Byte	Data Field
1	LSB of Penguin Edge IANA Enterprise number. A value of 0xCD has to be used.
2	Second byte of Penguin Edge IANA Enterprise number. A value of 0x65 has to be used.
3	MSB of Penguin Edge IANA Enterprise number. A value of 0x00 has to be used.
4	Serial connector type 0: Face plate connector 1: Backplane connector All other values are reserved. <b>Note:</b> Only the face plate connector is supported. No connector on the RTM available.
5	Serial connector instance number. A sequential number that starts from "0".
6	Serial output selector 0: BIOS 2: IPMC debug console All other values are reserved.



### 8.3.1.1.2 Response Data

The following table lists the response data applicable to the Set Serial Output command.

Table 8-20 Response Data of Set Serial Output Command

Byte	Data Field
1	Completion code
2	LSB of Penguin Edge IANA Enterprise number.
3	Second byte of Penguin Edge IANA Enterprise number.
4	MSB of Penguin Edge IANA Enterprise number.

### 8.3.1.2 Get Serial Output Command

The Get Serial Output Command provides a way to determine which serial output source goes to a particular serial port connector.



**Currently, only BIOS output is supported.**

#### 8.3.1.2.1 Request Data

The following table lists the request data applicable to the Get Serial Output command.

Table 8-21 Request Data of Get Serial Output Command

Byte	Data Field
1	LSB of Penguin Edge IANA Enterprise number. A value of 0xCD has to be used.
2	Second byte of Penguin Edge IANA Enterprise number. A value of 0x65 has to be used.
3	MSB of Penguin Edge IANA Enterprise number. A value of 0x00 has to be used.
4	Serial connector type 0: Face plate connector 1: Backplane connector All other values are reserved. <b>Note:</b> Only the face plate connector is supported. No connector on the RTM available.
5	Serial connector instance number. A sequential number that starts from 0.

## Supported IPMI Commands

---

### 8.3.1.2.2 Response Data

The following table lists the response data applicable to the Get Serial Output command.

*Table 8-22 Response Data of Get Serial Output Command*

Byte	Data Field
1	Completion code
2	LSB of Penguin Edge IANA Enterprise number.
3	Second byte of Penguin Edge IANA Enterprise number.
4	MSB of Penguin Edge IANA Enterprise number.
5	Serial output selector

### 8.3.2 OEM Command to Configure IPMI Features

The following table contains information about configuring the IPMI features.

*Table 8-23 Feature Configuration Command*

Command	NetFn (Request/Response)	CMD	Defined In
Set Feature Configuration	0x2E/0x2F	1Eh	<a href="#">Set Feature Configuration on page 267</a>
Get Feature Configuration	0x2E/0x2F	1Fh	<a href="#">Get Feature Configuration on page 268</a>

8.3.2.1 Set Feature Configuration

This command can be used to enable/disable features configurations within the IPMC during runtime.

Table 8-24 Set Feature Configuration Command

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1	LSB of Penguin Edge IANA Enterprise Number. A value of CDh shall be used.
	2	2nd byte of Penguin Edge IANA Enterprise Number. A value of 65h shall be used.
	3	MSB of Penguin Edge IANA Enterprise Number. A value of 00h shall be used.
	4	Feature Selector. For details, see <a href="#">Table 8-25</a> .
	5	Feature Configuration Bit [7-0]: Feature Selector = E0h, E1h 00h = disabled 01h = enabled 02h - 0ffh = reserved Bit [7-0] Feature Selector = 03h: 00h-FFh: Debounce timer timeout value in 100ms
	6	Persistency / Duration 00h = volatile. Actual duration depends on implementation. 01h – FFh = reserved
Response Data	1	Completion Code. Generic plus the following command-specific completion codes: 80h = feature selector not supported. 81h = feature configuration not supported 83h = configuration persistency / duration not supported
	2	LSB of Penguin Edge IANA Enterprise Number. A value of CDh shall be used.
	3	2nd byte of Penguin Edge IANA Enterprise Number. A value of 65h shall be used.
	4	MSB of Penguin Edge IANA Enterprise Number. A value of 00h shall be used.

## Supported IPMI Commands

---

The following table provides the feature set supported with ATCA-7540.

Table 8-25 Feature Selector Assignments

Feature Selector	Description
(3) 03h	Handle Debounce
(224) E0h	FAILSAFE Function Enable/Disable. For details, see <a href="#">Fail Safe Logic on page 324</a> .
(225)E1h	FAIL PROTECT Function Enable/Disable. For details, see <a href="#">Fail Protect Logic on page 326</a> .

### 8.3.2.2 Get Feature Configuration

This command can be used to get the state of feature configuration during IPMC runtime.

Table 8-26 Get Feature Configuration Command

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1	LSB of Penguin Edge IANA Enterprise Number. A value of CDh shall be used.
	2	2nd byte of Penguin Edge IANA Enterprise Number. A value of 65h shall be used.
	3	MSB of Penguin Edge IANA Enterprise Number. A value of 00h shall be used.
	4	Feature Selector

Table 8-26 Get Feature Configuration Command (continued)

Type	Byte	Data Field
Response Data	1	Completion Code. Generic plus the following command-specific completion codes: 80h = feature selector not supported.
	2	LSB of Penguin Edge IANA Enterprise Number. A value of CDh shall be used.
	3	2nd byte of Penguin Edge IANA Enterprise Number. A value of 65h shall be used.
	4	MSB of Penguin Edge IANA Enterprise Number. A value of 00h shall be used.
	5	Feature Configuration. Bit [7-0]: Feature Selector = E0h, E1h 00h = disabled 01h = enabled 02h - 0ffh = reserved Bit [7-0]: Feature Selector = 03h 00h-FFh: Debounce timer timeout value in 100 ms
	6	Persistency / Duration

## 8.4 Pigeon Point Specific Commands

The IPMC supports additional IPMI commands that are specific to Pigeon Point. This section provides detailed description of those extensions.



**Caution should be taken when using these Pigeon Point specific commands. Improper use of these commands may interrupt the payload service or put the blade into a non-functional state.**

Table 8-27 Pigeon Point Extension Commands

Command	NetFn (Request/Response)	CMD
Get Status <a href="#">Table 8-29 on page 271</a>	0x2E/0x2F	0x00
Get Serial Interface Properties <a href="#">Table 8-30 on page 274</a>	0x2E/0x2F	0x01

## Supported IPMI Commands

Table 8-27 Pigeon Point Extension Commands (continued)

Command	NetFn (Request/Response)	CMD
Set Serial Interface Properties <a href="#">Table 8-31 on page 275</a>	0x2E/0x2F	0x02
Get Debug Level <a href="#">Table 8-32 on page 276</a>	0x2E/0x2F	0x03
Set Debug Level <a href="#">Table 8-33 on page 277</a>	0x2E/0x2F	0x04
Get Hardware Address <a href="#">Table 8-34 on page 278</a>	0x2E/0x2F	0x05
Set Hardware Address <a href="#">Table 8-35 on page 278</a>	0x2E/0x2F	0x06
Get Handle Switch <a href="#">Table 8-36 on page 279</a>	0x2E/0x2F	0x07
Set Handle Switch <a href="#">Table 8-37 on page 279</a>	0x2E/0x2F	0x08
Get Payload Communication Time-Out <a href="#">Table 8-38 on page 280</a>	0x2E/0x2F	0x09
Set Payload Communication Time-Out <a href="#">Table 8-39 on page 281</a>	0x2E/0x2F	0x0A
Enable Payload Control <a href="#">Table 8-40 on page 281</a>	0x2E/0x2F	0x0B
Disable Payload Control <a href="#">Table 8-41 on page 282</a>	0x2E/0x2F	0x0C
Reset IPMC <a href="#">Table 8-42 on page 282</a>	0x2E/0x2F	0x0D
Hang IPMC <a href="#">Table 8-43 on page 283</a>	0x2E/0x2F	0x0E
Graceful Reset <a href="#">Table 8-44 on page 284</a>	0x2E/0x2F	0x11
Get Payload Shutdown Time-Out <a href="#">Table 8-45 on page 284</a>	0x2E/0x2F	0x15
Set Payload Shutdown Time-Out <a href="#">Table 8-46 on page 285</a>	0x2E/0x2F	0x16
Get Module State <a href="#">Table 8-47 on page 286</a>	0x2E/0x2F	0x27
Enable Module Site <a href="#">Table 8-48 on page 287</a>	0x2E/0x2F	0x28
Disable Module Site <a href="#">Table 8-49 on page 287</a>	0x2E/0x2F	0x29
Reset Carrier SDR repository <a href="#">Table 8-50 on page 288</a>	0x2E/0x2F	0x33

Some of the following commands refer to IPMC modes.

Table 8-28 IPMC Modes

Mode	Description
Standalone	In standalone mode, the carrier IPMC disconnects from IPMB-0 but keeps on listening to the serial debug and payload interfaces and serving requests coming from them, as well as managing the modules, AMC point-to-point (P2P) and clock E-keying. Standalone mode is intended for debugging purposes and/or operation in a non-ATCA environment. In standalone mode, the carrier IPMC automatically activates and deactivates the on-carrier payload and modules whenever it does not violate any carrier limitations.
Manual standalone	Manual standalone mode is equivalent to standalone mode with only one exception: carrier IPMC control over the on-carrier payload is automatically disabled in manual standalone mode.

### 8.4.1 Get Status Command

The Get Status command can be used by the payload software to retrieve the status of the IPMC.

Table 8-29 Get Status Command Description

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1:3	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 1 = 0A, byte 2 = 40, byte 3 = 00

## Supported IPMI Commands

Table 8-29 Get Status Command Description (continued)

Type	Byte	Data Field
Response Data	1	Completion Code
	2:4	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 2 = 0A, byte 3 = 40, byte 4 = 00
	5	<p>Bit [7] Graceful Reboot Request If set to 1, indicates that the payload is requested to initiate the graceful reboot sequence.</p> <p>Bit [6] Diagnostic Interrupt Request If set to 1, indicates that a payload diagnostic interrupt request has arrived.</p> <p>Bit [5] Shutdown Alert If set to 1, indicates that the payload is going to be shutdown.</p> <p>Bit [4] Reset Alert If set to 1, indicates that the payload is going to be reset.</p> <p>Bit [3] Sensor Alert If set to 1, indicates that at least one of the IPMC sensors detects a threshold crossing.</p> <p>Bits [2:1] Mode The current IPMC modes are defined as: 0: Normal 1: Standalone, for a description refer to <a href="#">Table 8-28</a> 2: Manual Standalone, for a description refer to <a href="#">Table 8-28</a></p> <p>Bit [0] Control If set to 0, the IPMC control over the payload is disabled.</p>



Table 8-29 Get Status Command Description (continued)

Type	Byte	Data Field
Response Data (continued)	6	<p>Bits [4:7] Metallic Bus 2 Events</p> <p>These bits indicate pending Metallic Bus 2 requests arrived from the shelf manager</p> <p>0: Metallic Bus 2 Query                      1: Metallic Bus 2 Release                      2: Metallic Bus 2 Force                      3: Metallic Bus 2 Free</p> <p>Bits [0:3] Metallic Bus 1 Events</p> <p>These bits indicate pending Metallic Bus 1 requests arrived from the shelf manager:</p> <p>0: Metallic Bus 1 Query                      1: Metallic Bus 1 Release                      2: Metallic Bus 1 Force                      3: Metallic Bus 1 Free</p>
	7	<p>Bits [4:7] Clock Bus 2 Events</p> <p>These bits indicate pending Clock Bus 2 requests arrived from the shelf manager</p> <p>0: Clock Bus 2 Query                      1: Clock Bus 2 Release                      2: Clock Bus 2 Force                      3: Clock Bus 2 Free</p> <p>Bits [0:3] Clock Bus 1 Events</p> <p>These bits indicate pending Clock Bus 1 requests arrived from the shelf manager:</p> <p>0: Clock Bus 1 Query                      1: Clock Bus 1 Release                      2: Clock Bus 1 Force                      3: Clock Bus 1 Free</p>
	8	<p>Bits [4:7] Reserved</p> <p>Bits [0:3] Clock Bus 3 Events</p> <p>These bits indicate pending Clock Bus 3 requests arrived from the shelf manager</p> <p>0: Clock Bus 3 Query                      1: Clock Bus 3 Release                      2: Clock Bus 3 Force                      3: Clock Bus 3 Free</p>

## Supported IPMI Commands

### 8.4.2 Get Serial Interface Properties Command

The Get Serial Interface Properties command is used to get the properties of a particular serial interface.

Table 8-30 Get Serial Interface Properties Command Description

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1:3	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 1 = 0A, byte 2 = 40, byte 3 = 00
	4	Interface ID 0: Serial Debug Interface
Response Data	1	Completion Code
	2:4	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 2 = 0A, byte 3 = 40, byte 4 = 00
	5	Bit [7] Echo On If this bit is set, the IPMC enables echo for the given serial interface. Bits [6:4] Reserved Bits [3:0] Baud Rate ID The baud rate ID defines the interface baud rate as follows: 0: 9600 bps 1: 19200 bps 2: 38400 bps 3: 57600 bps (unsupported) 4: 115200 bps (unsupported)

### 8.4.3 Set Serial Interface Properties Command

The Set Serial Interface Properties command is used to set the properties of a particular serial interface.

Table 8-31 Set Serial Interface Properties Command Description

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1:3	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 1 = 0A, byte 2 = 40, byte 3 = 00
	4	Interface ID 0: Serial Debug Interface
	5	Bit [7] Echo On If this bit is set, the IPMC enables echo for the given serial interface. Bits [6:4] Reserved Bits [3:0] Baud Rate ID The baud rate ID defines the interface baud rate as follows: 0: 9600 bps 1: 19200 bps 2: 38400 bps 3: 57600 bps (unsupported) 4: 115200 bps (unsupported)
Response Data	1	Completion Code
	2:4	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 2 = 0A, byte 3 = 40, byte 4 = 00

## Supported IPMI Commands

### 8.4.4 Get Debug Level Command

The Get Debug Level command gets the current debug level of the IPMC firmware.

Table 8-32 Get Debug Level Command Description

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1:3	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 1 = 0A, byte 2 = 40, byte 3 = 00
Response Data	1	Completion Code
	2:4	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 2 = 0A, byte 3 = 40, byte 4 = 00
	5	<p>Bit [7] IPMB-L Dump Enable If set to "1", the IPMC provides a trace of IPMB-L messages that are arriving to/going from the IPMC via IPMB-L.</p> <p>Bit [6] n/a</p> <p>Bit [5] KCS Dump Enable If set to "1", the IPMC provides a trace of KCS messages that are arriving to/going from the IPMC via KCS.</p> <p>Bit [4] IPMB Dump Enable If set to "1", the IPMC provides a trace of IPMB messages that are arriving to/going from the IPMC via IPMB-O.</p> <p>Bit [3] n/a</p> <p>Bit [2] Alert Logging Enable If set to "1", the IPMC outputs important alert messages onto the serial debug interface.</p> <p>Bit [1] Low-level Error Logging Enable If set to "1", the IPMC outputs low-level error/diagnostic messages onto the serial debug interface.</p> <p>Bit [0] Error Logging Enable If set to "1", the IPMC outputs error/diagnostic messages onto the serial debug interface.</p>

### 8.4.5 Set Debug Level Command

The Set Debug Level command sets the current debug level of the IPMC firmware.

Table 8-33 Set Debug Level Command Description

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1:3	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB byte first: byte 1 = 0A, byte 2 = 40, byte 3 = 00
	4	Bit [7] IPMB-L Dump Enable If set to "1", the IPMC provides a trace of IPMB-L messages that are arriving to/going from the IPMC via IPMB-L. Bit [6] n/a Bit [5] KCS Dump Enable If set to "1", the IPMC provides a trace of KCS messages that are arriving to/going from the IPMC via KCS. Bit [4] IPMB Dump Enable If set to "1", the IPMC provides a trace of IPMB messages that are arriving to/going from the IPMC via IPMB-O. Bit [3] n/a Bit [2] Alert Logging Enable If set to "1", the IPMC outputs important alert messages onto the serial debug interface. Bit [1] Low-level Error Logging Enable If set to "1", the IPMC outputs low-level error/diagnostic messages onto the serial debug interface. Bit [0] Error Logging Enable If set to "1", the IPMC outputs error/diagnostic messages onto the serial debug interface.
Response Data	1	Completion Code
	2:4	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB byte first: byte 2 = 0A, byte 3 = 40, byte 4 = 00

## Supported IPMI Commands

### 8.4.6 Get Hardware Address Command

The Get Hardware Address command reads the hardware address of the IPMC.

Table 8-34 Get Hardware Address Command Description

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1:3	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 1 = 0A, byte 2 = 40, byte 3 = 00
	1	Completion Code
Response Data	2:4	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 2 = 0A, byte 3 = 40, byte 4 = 00
	5	Hardware Address

### 8.4.7 Set Hardware Address Command

The Set Hardware Address command sets the hardware address of the IPMC in manual standalone mode (for a description refer to [Table 8-28](#)).

Table 8-35 Set Hardware Address Command Description

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1:3	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 1 = 0A, byte 2 = 40, byte 3 = 00
	4	Hardware Address If set to 00, the ability to override the hardware address is disabled. Note: A hardware address change only takes effect after an IPMC reset.
Response Data	1	Completion Code
	2:4	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 2 = 0A, byte 3 = 40, byte 4 = 00

## 8.4.8 Get Handle Switch Command

The Get Handle Switch command reads the state of the hot-swap handle of the IPMC. Overriding of the handle switch state is allowed only if the IPMC operates in manual standalone mode (for a description refer to [Table 8-28](#)).

Table 8-36 Get Handle Switch Command Description

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1:3	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 1 = 0A, byte 2 = 40, byte 3 = 00
	5	Handle Switch Status 0x00: The handle switch is open. 0x01: The handle switch is closed. 0x02: The handle switch state is read from hardware.
Response Data	1	Completion Code
	2:4	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 2 = 0A, byte 3 = 40, byte 4 = 00
	5	Handle Switch Status 0x00: The handle switch is open. 0x01: The handle switch is closed. 0x02: The handle switch state is read from hardware.

## 8.4.9 Set Handle Switch Command

The Set Handle Switch command sets the state of the hot-swap handle switch in manual standalone mode (for more details, refer to [Table 8-28](#)).

Table 8-37 Set Handle Switch Command Description

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1:3	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 1 = 0A, byte 2 = 40, byte 3 = 00
	4	Handle Switch Status 0x00: The handle switch is open. 0x01: The handle switch is closed. 0x02: The handle switch state is read from hardware.

## Supported IPMI Commands

Table 8-37 Set Handle Switch Command Description (continued)

Type	Byte	Data Field
Response Data	1	Completion Code
	2:4	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 2 = 0A, byte 3 = 40, byte 4 = 00

### 8.4.10 Get Payload Communication Time-Out Command

The Get Payload Communication Time-Out command reads the payload communication time-out value.

Table 8-38 Get Payload Communication Time-Out Command Description

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1:3	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 1 = 0A, byte 2 = 40, byte 3 = 00
Response Data	1	Completion Code
	2:4	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 2 = 0A, byte 3 = 40, byte 4 = 00
	5	Payload Time-out Payload communication time-out measured in hundreds of milliseconds. Thus, the payload communication time-out may vary from 0.1 to 25.5 seconds.



### 8.4.11 Set Payload Communication Time-Out Command

The Set Payload Communication Time-Out command sets the payload communication time-out value.

Table 8-39 Set Payload Communication Time-Out Command Description

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1:3	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 1 = 0A, byte 2 = 40, byte 3 = 00
	4	Payload Time-out Payload communication time-out measured in hundreds of milliseconds. Thus, the payload communication time-out may vary from 0.1 to 25.5 seconds.
Response Data	1	Completion Code
	2:4	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 2 = 0A, byte 3 = 40, byte 4 = 00

### 8.4.12 Enable Payload Control Command

The Enable Payload Control command enables payload control from the serial debug interface.

Table 8-40 Enable Payload Control Command Description

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1:3	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 1 = 0A, byte 2 = 40, byte 3 = 00
Response Data	1	Completion Code
	2:4	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 2 = 0A, byte 3 = 40, byte 4 = 00

## Supported IPMI Commands

### 8.4.13 Disable Payload Control Command

The Disable Payload Control command disables payload control from the serial debug interface.

Table 8-41 Disable Payload Control Command Description

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1:3	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 1 = 0A, byte 2 = 40, byte 3 = 00
Response Data	1	Completion Code
	2:4	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 2 = 0A, byte 3 = 40, byte 4 = 00

### 8.4.14 Reset IPMC Command

The Reset IPMC command allows the payload to reset the IPMC over the KCS host interface.

Table 8-42 Reset IPMC Command Description

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1:3	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 1 = 0A, byte 2 = 40, byte 3 = 00
	4	Reset Type Code 0x00: Cold IPMC reset to the Current mode 0x01: Cold IPMC reset to the Normal mode 0x02: Cold IPMC reset to the Standalone mode, for a description refer to <a href="#">Table 8-28</a> 0x03: Cold IPMC reset to the Manual Standalone mode, for a description refer to <a href="#">Table 8-28</a> 0x04: Reset the IPMC and enter Upgrade mode

Table 8-42 Reset IPMC Command Description (continued)

Type	Byte	Data Field
Response Data	1	Completion Code
	2:4	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 2 = 0A, byte 3 = 40, byte 4 = 00

### 8.4.15 Hang IPMC Command

The IPMC provides a way to test the watchdog timer support by implementing the Hang IPMC command, which simulates firmware hanging by entering an endless loop.

Table 8-43 Hang IPMC Command Description

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1:3	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 1 = 0A, byte 2 = 40, byte 3 = 00
Response Data	1	Completion Code
	2:4	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 2 = 0A, byte 3 = 40, byte 4 = 00

### 8.4.16 Graceful Reset Command

The IPMC supports the Graceful Reboot option of the FRU Control command. On receiving such a command, the IPMC sets the Graceful Reboot Request bit of the IPMC status, sends a status update notification to the payload, and waits for the Graceful Reset command from the payload. If the IPMC receives such a command before the payload communication time-out time, it sends the 0x00 completion code (Success) to the shelf manager. Otherwise, the 0xCC completion code is sent.

## Supported IPMI Commands

The IPMC does not reset the payload upon receiving the Graceful Reset command or time-out. If the IPMC participation is necessary, the payload must request the IPMC to perform a payload reset. The Graceful Reset command is also used to notify the IPMC about the completion of the payload shutdown sequence.

Table 8-44 Graceful Reset Command Description

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1:3	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 1 = 0A, byte 2 = 40, byte 3 = 00
Response Data	1	Completion Code
	2:4	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 2 = 0A, byte 3 = 40, byte 4 = 00

### 8.4.17 Get Payload Shutdown Time-Out Command

When shelf manager commands the IPMC to shut down the payload [sends the Activate FRU (Deactivate) command], the IPMC notifies the payload by forwarding the command Activate FRU (Deactivate) to the KCS interface. Provided the OpenIPMI driver has registered this command for notification, the payload gets notified. Upon receiving this notification, the payload software is expected to initiate the payload shutdown sequence. After performing this sequence, the payload should send the Graceful Reset command to the IPMC over the payload Interface to notify the IPMC that the payload shutdown is complete.

To avoid deadlocks that may occur if the payload software does not respond, the IPMC provides a special time-out for the payload shutdown sequence. If the payload does not send the Graceful Reset command within a definite period of time, the IPMC assumes that the payload shutdown sequence is finished, and resets the payload.

Table 8-45 Get Payload Shutdown Time-Out Command Description

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1:3	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 1 = 0A, byte 2 = 40, byte 3 = 00

*Table 8-45 Get Payload Shutdown Time-Out Command Description (continued)*

Type	Byte	Data Field
Response Data	1	Completion Code
	2:4	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 2 = 0A, byte 3 = 40, byte 4 = 00
	5:6	Time-Out measured in hundreds of milliseconds, LSB first

### 8.4.18 Set Payload Shutdown Time-Out Command

The Set Payload Shutdown Time-Out command is defined in the following table.

*Table 8-46 Set Payload Shutdown Time-Out Command Description*

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1:3	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 1 = 0A, byte 2 = 40, byte 3 = 00
	4:5	Time-Out measured in hundreds of milliseconds, LSB first
Response Data	1	Completion Code
	2:4	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 2 = 0A, byte 3 = 40, byte 4 = 00

## Supported IPMI Commands

### 8.4.19 Get Module State Command

The Get Module State command is used to query the state of a module (RTM with site ID1) using any of the external interfaces.

Table 8-47 Get Module State Command Description

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1:3	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 1 = 0A, byte 2 = 40, byte 3 = 00
	4	Module Site ID
Response Data	1	Completion Code
	2:4	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 2 = 0A, byte 3 = 40, byte 4 = 00
	5	Module Status Bit [0] 0: Module site is enabled. 1: Module site is disabled. Bit [1] 0: Module is not present. 1: Module is present. Bit [2] 0: Management power is disabled. 1: Management power is enabled. Bit [3] 0: Management power is bad. 1: Management power is good. Bit [4] 0: Payload power is disabled. 1: Payload power is enabled. Bit [5] 0: Payload power is bad. 1: Payload power is good. Bit [6] 0: IPMB-L buffer is not attached. 1: IPMB-L buffer is attached. Bit [7] 0: IPMB-L buffer is not ready. 1: IPMB-L buffer is ready.

## 8.4.20 Enable Module Site Command

The Enable Module Site command is used to enable a module site.

*Table 8-48 Enable Module Site Command Description*

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1:3	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 1 = 0A, byte 2 = 40, byte 3 = 00
	4	Module Site ID
Response Data	1	Completion Code
	2:4	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 1 = 0A, byte 2 = 40, byte 3 = 00

## 8.4.21 Disable Module Site Command

The Disable Module Site command is used to disable a module site. If a module site is disabled, the IPMC firmware ignores the module inserted and acts as if the module is not present.

*Table 8-49 Disable Module Site Command Description*

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1:3	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 1 = 0A, byte 2 = 40, byte 3 = 00
	4	Module Site ID
Response Data	1	Completion Code
	2:4	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 2 = 0A, byte 3 = 40, byte 4 = 00

## Supported IPMI Commands

---

### 8.4.22 Reset Carrier SDR Repository Command

The Reset Carrier SDR Repository command is used to clear and rebuild the carrier SDR repository.

*Table 8-50 Reset Carrier SDR Repository Command Description*

Type	Byte	Data Field
Request Data	1:3	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 1 = 0A, byte 2 = 40, byte 3 = 00
		Completion Code
Response Data	1	Completion Code
	2:4	PPS IANA Private Enterprise ID 0x00400A = 16394 (Pigeon Point Systems) LSB Byte first: byte 2 = 0A, byte 3 = 40, byte 4 = 00



# IPMI Feature Set

---

## 9.1 Introduction to the IPMI Feature Set

The Penguin Edge™ ATCA-7540 blade provides an intelligent hardware management system, as defined in the AdvancedTCA® Base Specification (PICMG® 3.0; AMC.0). This system incorporates two IPMI controllers:

- An Intelligent Platform Management Controller (IPMC) based on the BMR-A2F-AMCc® reference design from Pigeon Point Systems.
- A Module Management Controller (MMC) residing at the RTM, based on the BMR-AVR-AMCm® reference design from Pigeon Point Systems.

Pigeon Point Systems IPM Sentry products are consistent with all current PICMG specifications as well as IPMI v2.0 compliant.

The ATCA-7540 implements all standard Intelligent Platform Management Interface (IPMI) commands and provides hardware interfaces for other system management features such as Hot Swap control, LED control, power control, as well as temperature and voltage monitoring. The IPMC also supports a Keyboard Controller Style (KCS) based host interface for direct payload to IPMI communication.

The ATCA-7540 provides a rich feature set:

- Carrier SDR Repository
- FRU inventory
- Sensor Management (BIOS/FPGA Boot Bank Sensor, OS Boot Sensor, Boot Error Sensor, Memory Sensor, Firmware Progress Sensor, Reset Cause Sensor, PIM Power Entry Specific Sensors, CPU/DIMM Temperature Sensors, Boot Initiated Sensor, Critical IRQ Sensor, Battery Sensor, CPLD Power Failure Sensors)
- Asynchronous event notification
- RTM hot swap management
- Configurable Ejector Handle Debounce
- HPM.1 firmware upgrades for IPMI, BIOS, and FPGA
- HPM.2 and HPM.3
- BIOS and FPGA Boot Bank supervision
- BIOS Boot Configuration via IPMI
- BIOS fail safe
- Serial/IPMI over LAN
- Serial Line Selection
- Local System Event Log

## IPMI Feature Set

---

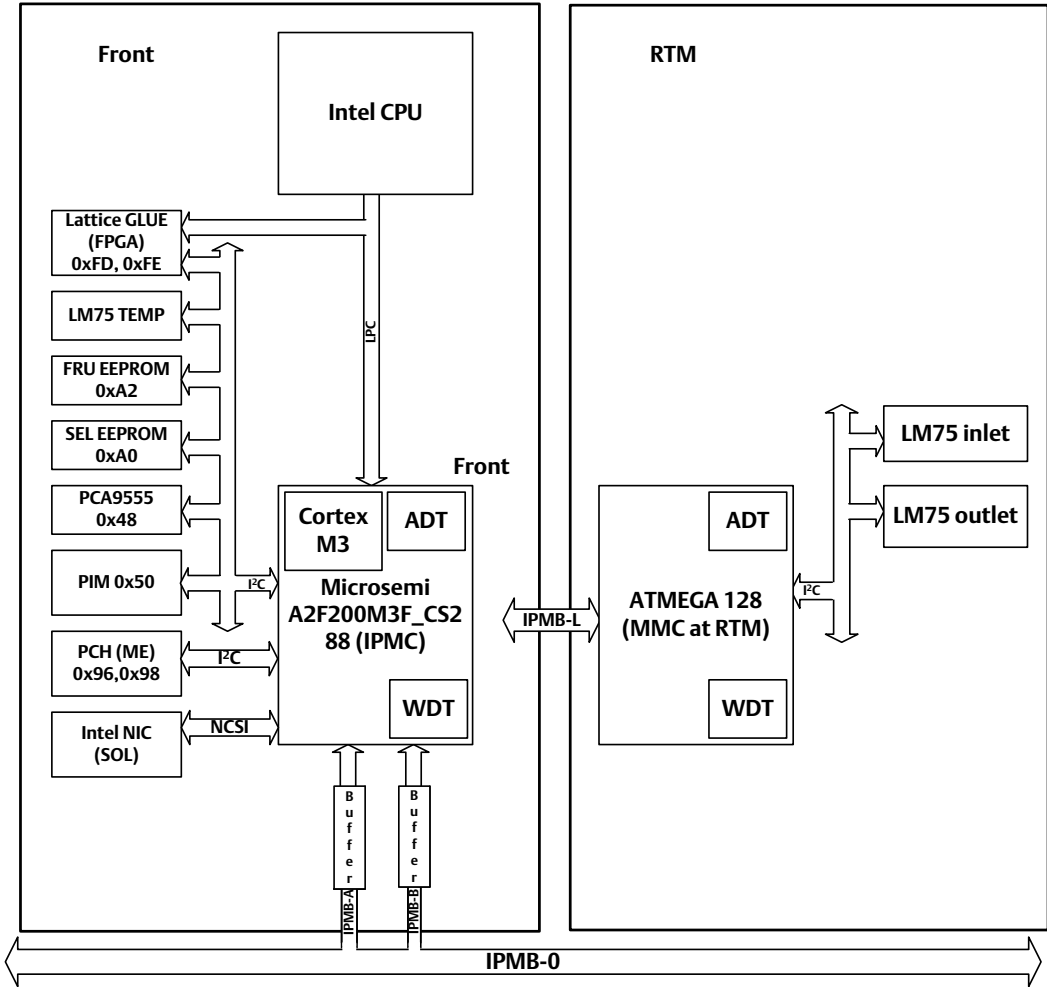
The IPMC at the front blade acts like an IPMC carrier. It retrieves the sensor information from the MMC and creates a Sensor Data Record (SDR) repository providing direct access to all sensors present on the front blade and RTM. The IPMC is implemented as the managed FRU #0 and the MMC as the managed FRU #1. All commands directed to the MMC will be bridged by the IPMC.

The Intel® CPU communicates with the IPMC using the KCS interface of the IPMC. The FRU inventory, System Event Log (SEL) events, and the SDR information are stored in external I<sup>2</sup>C EEPROMs. This enables post-mortem analysis when the system processor becomes disabled.

Registers within the Glue Logic FPGA can be accessed by the IPMC via I<sup>2</sup>C bus. This enhances the capabilities of the IPMC. The Glue Logic FPGA is used to monitor the CPU status, the payload reset cause, the power failure registers, and to control the BIOS boot bank selection.

A functional block diagram of the ATCA-7540 IPMC/MMC system is shown in the following figure.

Figure 9-1 IPMC Block Diagram of ATCA-7540



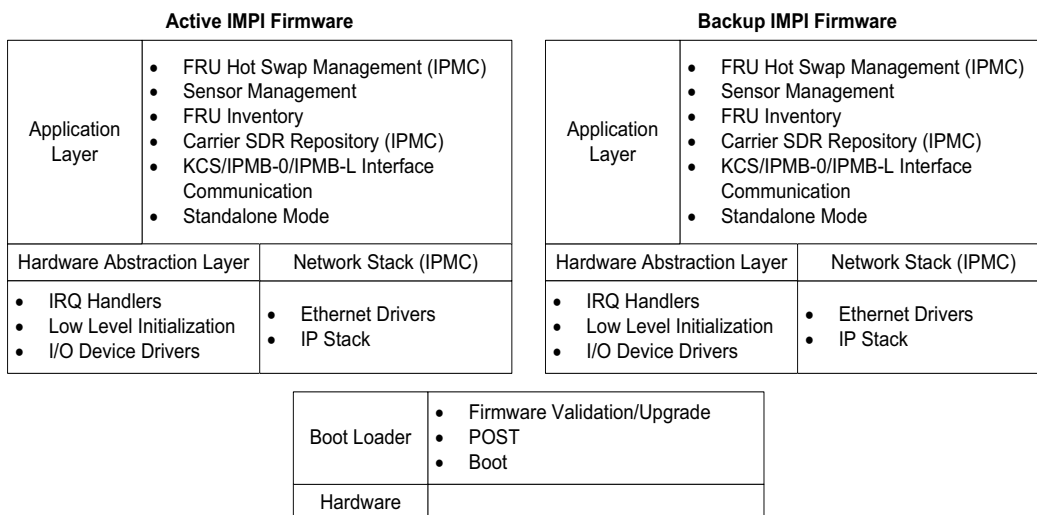
## 9.2 Firmware Architecture

The IPMC and MMC firmware consists of four major parts:

- **Boot Loader** – The Boot Loader maintains redundant copies of the firmware in flash. Each time the IPMI firmware is upgraded, a redundant copy of the current IPMI firmware is made in flash.
- **Hardware Abstraction Layer (HAL)** – The Hardware Abstraction Layer (HAL) is responsible for initializing the A2F/ATMEL and making all preparations necessary for running the code written in C language. The time management facility of the HAL is responsible for providing a means for measuring time and detecting timeout conditions. The device drivers are responsible for implementing high-level interfaces to the hardware.
- **Network Stack** – The Network Stack is provided to implement RMCP+ protocols for IPMI over LAN and Serial over LAN.
- **Application Layer** – The Application Layer is implemented as a multi-threaded application. The main thread reads incoming messages/events from various inbound queues, processes these messages/events, and produces outgoing traffic to appropriate hardware interfaces. The IPMC provides a number of subsidiary threads to serve RTM module discovery and e-keying management. The Application Layer can also operate in standalone mode intended to debug the payload without requiring a shelf manager.

The following figure illustrates the firmware architecture.

Figure 9-2 Firmware Architecture



## 9.3 Firmware Upgrade

### 9.3.1 HPM.1 Components

All of the following embedded software images can be upgraded via HPM.1 protocol:

- IPMI boot loader
- IPMI firmware
- IPMI FRU information
- IAP
- BIOS
- FPGA

The above listed items have different component properties due to the different physical implementation.

Table 9-1 HPM.1 Components

	ID	Payload cold reset required	Deferred activation support	Comparison support	Preparation support	Rollback/backup support	Component name
IPMI boot loader	1	no	no	yes	yes	no	IPMC B/L
IPMI firmware	0	yes	yes	yes	yes	supported without backup command	IPMC F/W
FRU information	2	yes	no	yes	yes	supported without backup command	IPMC F/I
IAP	3	no	no	yes	yes	no	IPMC IAP
BIOS	5	yes	no	no	yes	supported without backup command	PYLD F/W
FPGA	4	yes (even power cycle)	no	no	yes	supported without backup command	PYLD FPGA

### 9.3.1.1 IPMI Boot Loader and Firmware Component

The IPMI firmware stores its active and backup image within one external SPI flash. A small boot loader residing in internal Embedded Non-volatile Memory (eNVM) is used to copy either the active or the backup image from the external SPI flash into the internal eNVM, depending on the successful boot flags.

**NOTE:** The boot loader is also used as an HPM.1 component; however, there is no backup image.

The boot loader maintains redundant copies of the firmware in flash. Each time the IPMI firmware is upgraded, a redundant copy of the current IPMI firmware is made in flash. Once the new IPMI firmware is programmed, the IPMI controller will reset itself to boot from the new image. The boot loader also validates new IPMI firmware images. The provided IPMI controller can power up successfully and the new image is made active and the previously active image is made backup. In case power-up fails, the boot loader will automatically recover from crisis and boots from the backup image.

The IPMI controller can be upgraded via KCS, LAN, or IPMB interface. To ensure that the payload is not interrupted during IPMI firmware upgrade, the IPMI controller stores all operational information (e-keying, hot-swap state, last events to be queued, graceful shutdown timeout, latest pin settings and so on) in non-volatile storage.

### 9.3.1.2 In Application Programming (IAP) Component

The BMR-A2F-AMCc IPMI building block from Pigeon Point is implemented within an FPGA logic block from Microsemi Inc. Its fabric can be upgraded via an HPM.1 firmware upgrade. This process is referred to as an In Application Programming (IAP) upgrade.

**NOTE:** There is no possibility of crisis recovery. We do not recommend an unnecessary component upgrade.

### 9.3.1.3 FPGA Component

The Lattice Glue Logic FPGA is equipped with two SPI flash components; one is called Active, the other is Backup.

During power-up, the IPMC protects the Active SPI flash by de-selecting it once the FPGA boots successfully. HPM.1 specific logic updates can be performed only to the Backup SPI flash. By explicitly prohibiting FPGA logic updates to the Active SPI flash, crisis recovery is guaranteed. The FPGA flash components cannot accidentally be overwritten.

Information about which FPGA flash is active is provided using the Boot Bank Supervision Sensor. For more details, see [Boot Bank Supervision Sensor on page 313](#).

Besides HPM.1 manual rollback, it is possible to switch the banks without upgrading the HPM.1 firmware. For details see [System Boot Options Commands on page 245](#).

The HPM.1 command Activate Firmware does not reboot the payload firmware unconditionally. The blade can be power-cycled gracefully to activate the new firmware.

## NOTICE

**A payload cold reset is not enough to execute a new FPGA component. In this particular case a power cycle is required.**

### 9.3.1.4 BIOS Component

The ATCA-7540 provides two SPI flash components for storing redundant BIOS firmware images; one is called Active, the other is Backup. Because the Active SPI flash is always routed to the Intel CPU, the IPMC can only perform HPM.1 specific firmware upgrades to the Backup SPI flash.

The Boot Bank Supervision Sensor provides the BIOS flash status information. For details, see [Boot Bank Supervision Sensor on page 313](#). It is possible to switch the banks without upgrading an HPM.1 firmware. For details, see [System Boot Options Commands on page 245](#).

Automatic rollback is implemented via fail safe architecture. For details, see [Fail Safe Logic on page 324](#).

The HPM.1 command Activate Firmware does not reboot the payload firmware unconditionally. The blade can be rebooted gracefully to activate the firmware.

Crisis recovery is fully supported. Corrupted SPI flash components can be reprogrammed via IPMI with the help of the ShMM.

## 9.3.2 Retrieving Versioning Information

Retrieving the actual and backup version of the components is possible without switching payload firmware boot banks (the use of FCU for embedded firmware upgrades is strongly recommended). The following terminal output example illustrates the component versions:

```
*****
[root@ATCA-7540-6 ~]# fcu -q
*****[[[[[REPORT BEGIN]]]]*****
Operation: Query
#00 Device   : IPMC F/W
  Bank #0 -   Active Version: 1.20.00000004
  Bank #1 -   Rollback Version: 1.20.00000001

#01 Device   : IPMC B/L
```

## IPMI Feature Set

---

```
Bank #0 -      Active Version: 1.20.00000004

#02 Device   : IPMC F/I
Bank #0 -      Active Version: 1.20.00000004

#03 Device   : IPMC IAP
Bank #0 -      Active Version: 1.12.00000000

#04 Device   : PYLD FPGA
Bank #0 -      Active Version: 0.00.00000014
Bank #1 -      Rollback Version: 0.00.00000014
Bank marked for next use: #0

#05 Device   : PYLD F/W
Bank #0 -      Active Version: 1.00.00000004
Bank #1 -      Rollback Version: 1.00.00000001
Bank marked for next use: #0

*****[[[[[ REPORT END ]]]]]*****
```

### 9.3.3 Firmware Upgrade Tool

The primary update mechanism for the ATCA-7540 blade is the FCU tool, which is delivered with the BBS package for the blade. The ATCA-7540 blade family also supports upgrades with the ipmitool.

#### 9.3.3.1 Updating using ipmitool

The ipmitool HPM update requires two steps for an update.

##### Procedure

1. Upgrade the component.  
prompt->ipmitool hpm upgrade <file>
2. Activate the component.  
prompt-> ipmitool hpm activate



### 9.3.3.2 Upgrading Interfaces

The HPM.1 upgrade supports three different interfaces for upgrading the firmware. These are KCS, IPMB-0, and LAN over BASE. The LAN interface is fully supported even if the payload is not powered on (M4). The BASE Ethernet controller is powered with management power.

#### 9.3.3.2.1 KCS

The standard way to upgrade the firmware of the payload is through the KCS interface. The images and the ipmitool need to be on the payload to upgrade.

Example:

```
prompt>ipmitool hpm upgrade <file>
```

#### 9.3.3.2.2 IPMB-0

This interface represents the backplane IPMI bus and allows remote firmware upgrade. The count of the simultaneous upgrades is limited because of the bus speed.

Examples:

From shelf manager:

```
prompt>ipmitool -t 0x92 hpm upgrade <file>
```

With RMCP:

```
prompt>ipmitool -I lan -H 192.168.34.8 -U Administrator -P Administrator  
-t 0x92 hpm upgrade <file>
```

#### 9.3.3.2.3 IPMI over LAN (BASE)

The IPMI over LAN interface uses the BASE Ethernet controller to do firmware upgrades. The interface has to be configured before the first use. Configuring this interface is described in [Configuring SOL Parameters on page 238](#).

Example (with RMCP+):

```
prompt->ipmitool -C 1 -I lanplus -U rmcp -P rmcp -H 172.16.0.221 -k gkey  
hpm upgrade /root/bios.hpm activate
```

## 9.3.4 HPM.2 Specific Firmware Updates

The IPMC is compliant to the HPM.2 specification and supports large IPMI messages over LAN interfaces (via base interface and from payload host). This makes firmware upgrades faster to execute, and is useful for BIOS firmware upgrades when 16 Mbytes of data need to be transferred via IPMI. Make sure that your firmware upgrade tool (fcu, ipmitool) also supports large IPMI messages over LAN.

## IPMI Feature Set

---

The following example is provided to enable users to upgrade their firmware quickly from the payload host (one BIOS SPI flash can be upgraded in ~5 minutes).

1. Evaluate IP address of IPMC.

```
root@ATCA-7540:~# ipmitool lan print 1
Set in Progress          : Set Complete
Auth Type Support       :
Auth Type Enable        : Callback :
                        : User      :
                        : Operator  :
                        : Admin     :
                        : OEM       :
IP Address Source       : Static Address
IP Address              : 172.16.0.221
Subnet Mask             : 255.255.0.0
MAC Address             : ec:9e:cd:10:a0:64
Default Gateway IP     : 172.16.0.1
Default Gateway MAC    : 14:14:14:14:14:14
RMCP+ Cipher Suites    : 0,1,2,3
Cipher Suite Priv Max  : Not Available
root@ATCA-7540:~#
```

2. Configure base interface into IPMC subnet (instead the IP of the IPMC can be changed as well).

```
root@ATCA-7540:~# ifconfig base1:1 172.16.0.70
```

3. Upgrade the firmware.

```
root@ATCA-7540:~# ipmitool -C 1 -I lanplus -U rmcp -P rmcp -H
172.16.0.221 -k gkey hpm upgrade /root/bios.hpm activate
PICMG HPM.1 Upgrade Agent 1.0.9:
Validating firmware image integrity...OK
Performing preparation stage...
Services may be affected during upgrade. Do you wish to continue?
y/n y
OK

Performing upgrade stage:
```

```
-----  
-----  
| ID | Name          |          Versions          | % |  
|   |               | Active | Backup | File |   |  
|---|-----|-----|-----|-----|  
-----|-----|  
| * 6 | PYLD F/W      | 128.02 00000003 | 128.02 00000003 | 0.02  
00000003 | 100% |  
|   | Upload Time: 01:40          | Image Size: 16777217 bytes  
|
```

-----  
-----

(\* ) Component requires Payload Cold Reset  
Performing activation stage:

Firmware upgrade procedure successful

## 9.4 Sensors

This section provides a description of all analog and discrete sensors available on the ATCA-7540 blade.

[Table 9-2](#) lists the sensor identification numbers and information regarding the sensor type, name, supported thresholds, assertion and de-assertion information.

Table 9-2 ATCA-7540 Specific Sensors

Sensor Number	Sensor Name	Sensor Type	Event/ Reading Type	Event Data Byte 1	Event Data Byte 2	Event Data Byte 3	Event Threshold/ Description	Assertion Deassertion	Rearm
0	Hot Swap Carrier	Hot Swap 0xF0	Sensor-specific discrete 0x6F	0x0 0x1 0x2 0x3 0x4 0x5 0x6 0x7	[7:4] = Cause [3:0] = Previous State	FRU ID	0x0: M0 0x1: M1 0x2: M2 0x3: M3 0x4: M4 0x5: M5 0x6: M6 0x7: M7	Asrt	Auto
1	Hot Swap RTM	Hot Swap 0xF0	Sensor-specific discrete 0x6F	0x0 0x1 0x2 0x3 0x4 0x5 0x6 0x7	[7:4] = Cause [3:0] = Previous State	FRU ID	0x0: M0 0x1: M1 0x2: M2 0x3: M3 0x4: M4 0x5: M5 0x6: M6 0x7: M7	Asrt	Auto

Table 9-2 ATCA-7540 Specific Sensors (continued)

Sensor Number	Sensor Name	Sensor Type	Event/ Reading Type	Event Data Byte 1	Event Data Byte 2	Event Data Byte 3	Event Threshold/ Description	Assertion Deassertion	Rearm
2	IPMB Physical	Physical IPMB-0 0xF1	Sensor-specific discrete 0x6F	0x0 0x1 0x2 0x3	[7:4] = Channel Number [3:0] = Reserved	reading	0x0: IPMB-A disabled, IPMB-B disabled 0x1: IPMB-A enabled, IPMB-B disabled 0x2: IPMB-A disabled, IPMB-B enabled 0x3: IPMB-A enabled, IPMB-B enabled	Asrt	Auto

## IPMI Feature Set

Table 9-2 ATCA-7540 Specific Sensors (continued)

Sensor Number	Sensor Name	Sensor Type	Event/ Reading Type	Event Data Byte 1	Event Data Byte 2	Event Data Byte 3	Event Threshold/ Description	Assertion Deassertion	Rearm
3	Version change	Version Change 0x2B	Sensor-specific discrete 0x6F	0x0 0x1 0x2 0x3 0x4 0x5 0x6 0x7	Change type	0xFF	0x0: Hardware change 0x1: Firmware or software change 0x2: Hardware incompatibility 0x3: Firmware or software incompatibility 0x4: Entity is of an invalid hardware version 0x5: Entity contains invalid F/W,software 0x6: Hardware Change successful 0x7: Software or F/W change successful	Asrt	Auto
4	Mid air temp	Temp 0x01	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc unc	Asrt / Deass	Auto
5	+3.3 V MGMT	Voltage 0x02	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc lnr lc	Asrt / Deass	Auto
6	+12 V	Voltage 0x02	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc lnr lc	Asrt / Deass	Auto

Table 9-2 ATCA-7540 Specific Sensors (continued)

Sensor Number	Sensor Name	Sensor Type	Event/ Reading Type	Event Data Byte 1	Event Data Byte 2	Event Data Byte 3	Event Threshold/ Description	Assertion Deassertion	Rearm
7	+5 V	Voltage 0x02	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc lnr lc	Asrt / Deass	Auto
8	RTM 3.3 V MGMT	Voltage 0x02	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc lnr lc	Asrt / Deass	Auto
9	RTM 12 V	Voltage 0x02	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc lnr lc	Asrt / Deass	Auto
10	Inlet temp	Temp 0x01	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc unc	Asrt / Deass	Auto
11	Outlet temp	Temp 0x01	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc unc	Asrt / Deass	Auto
12	BMC Watchdog	Watchdog 2 0x23	Sensor-specific discrete 0x6F	0x0 0x1 0x2 0x3 0x8	See IPMI Spec	0xFF	0x0: Timer expired 0x1: Hard Reset 0x2: Power Down 0x3: Power Cycle 0x8: Timer Interrupt	Asrt	Auto
13	Fw Progress	System Firmware Progress 0x0F	Sensor-specific discrete 0x6F	0x0 0x1 0x2	See IPMI Spec	See <i>BIOS Supported IPMI Events on page 225.</i>	0x0: System Firmware Error 0x1: System Firmware Hang 0x2: System Firmware Progress	Asrt	Auto

## IPMI Feature Set

Table 9-2 ATCA-7540 Specific Sensors (continued)

Sensor Number	Sensor Name	Sensor Type	Event/ Reading Type	Event Data Byte 1	Event Data Byte 2	Event Data Byte 3	Event Threshold/ Description	Assertion Deassertion	Rearm
14	OS Boot	OS Boot 0x1F	Sensor- specific discrete 0x6F	0x0 0x1 0x2 0x3 0x4 0x5 0x6	0xFF	0xFF	0x0: A: boot completed 0x1: C: boot completed 0x2: PXE boot completed 0x3: Diagnostic boot completed 0x4: CD_ROM boot completed 0x5: ROM boot completed 0x6: boot completed	Asrt	Auto
15	Boot Error	Boot Error 0x1E	Sensor- specific discrete 0x6F	0x0	0xFF	0xFF	0x0: No Bootable media	Asrt	Auto
16	Boot Initiated	System Boot Initiated 0x1D	Sensor- specific discrete 0x6F	0x0 0x1	0xFF	0xFF	0x0: Initiated by power-up 0x1: Initiated by hard reset	Asrt	Auto



Table 9-2 ATCA-7540 Specific Sensors (continued)

Sensor Number	Sensor Name	Sensor Type	Event/ Reading Type	Event Data Byte 1	Event Data Byte 2	Event Data Byte 3	Event Threshold/ Description	Assertion Deassertion	Rearm
17	Memory	Memory 0x0C	Sensor-specific discrete 0x6F	0x0 0x1 0x4 0x5 0x6 0x7	0xFF	DIMM identification See <i>BIOS Supported IPMI Events on page 225.</i>	0x0: Correctable ECC 0x1: Uncorrectable ECC 0x4: Memory Device Disabled 0x5: Correctable ECC 0x6: Presence detected 0x7: Configuration error	Asrt	Auto
18	Critical IRQ	Critical Interrupt 0x13	Sensor-specific discrete 0x6F	0x4 0x5	Bus Number See <i>BIOS Supported IPMI Events on page 225.</i>	Function/ Device See <i>BIOS Supported IPMI Events on page 225.</i>	0x4: PCI PERR 0x5: PCI SERR	Asrt	Auto
19	Battery	Battery 0x29	Sensor-specific discrete 0x6F	0x1	0xFF	0xFF	0x1: Battery failed	Asrt	Auto
20	BootBank	OEM 0xD2	Sensor-specific discrete 0x6F	0x0 0x1	0xFF	0xFF	0x0: Boot Bank A/B 0x1: FPGA Bank A/B	Asrt / Deass	Auto

## IPMI Feature Set

Table 9-2 ATCA-7540 Specific Sensors (continued)

Sensor Number	Sensor Name	Sensor Type	Event/ Reading Type	Event Data Byte 1	Event Data Byte 2	Event Data Byte 3	Event Threshold/ Description	Assertion Deassertion	Rearm
21	ATCA-7540 IPMC	OEM 0xD5	Sensor-specific discrete 0x6F	0x0 0x1 0x2 0x3 0x4 0x5	0xFF	0xFF	0x0: Watchdog Reset 0x1: Software Reset 0x2: Power Failure 0x3: External Reset 0x4: Hard Boot 0x5: Cold Boot		Auto
22	Power Good	Power Supply 0x08	Sensor-specific discrete 0x6F	0x0 0x1	See IPMI Spec	0xFF	0x0: Presence detected 0x1: Power Supply Failure detected	Asrt	Auto
23	-48 V A Volts	Voltage 0x02	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc lnr lc	Asrt / Deass	Auto
24	-48 V B Volts	Voltage 0x02	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc lnr lc	Asrt / Deass	Auto
25	-48 V Amps	Current 0x03	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	No Thresholds		Auto
26	HoldUp Cap Volts	Voltage 0x02	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc lnr lc	Asrt / Deass	Auto
27	PWR Entry temp	Temp 0x01	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc unc	Asrt / Deass	Auto

Table 9-2 ATCA-7540 Specific Sensors (continued)

Sensor Number	Sensor Name	Sensor Type	Event/ Reading Type	Event Data Byte 1	Event Data Byte 2	Event Data Byte 3	Event Threshold/ Description	Assertion Deassertion	Rearm
28	PWR Entry Status	OEM 0xD7	Sensor-specific discrete 0x6F	0x0	[6] = VOUT_low [5] = Hotswap [4] = Holdup [2] = Alarm [1] = Enable_B [0] Enable_A	0x0	0x0: Pwr Entry Module Status Change detected	Asrt	Auto
29	48 V A Supply	Power Supply 0x08	Sensor-specific discrete 0x6F	0x0 0x1	See IPMI Spec	0xFF	0x0: Presence detected 0x1: Power Supply Failure detected	Asrt / Deass	Auto
30	48 V B Supply	Power Supply 0x08	Sensor-specific discrete 0x6F	0x0 0x1	See IPMI Spec	0xFF	0x0: Presence detected 0x1: Power Supply Failure detected	Asrt / Deass	Auto
31	BIOSPOST code	OEM 0xD1	Sensor-specific discrete 0x6F	0x0	-	-	0x0: No events for this sensor Reading according to EFI BIOS port80 status codes	Asrt	Auto

## IPMI Feature Set

Table 9-2 ATCA-7540 Specific Sensors (continued)

Sensor Number	Sensor Name	Sensor Type	Event/ Reading Type	Event Data Byte 1	Event Data Byte 2	Event Data Byte 3	Event Threshold/ Description	Assertion Deassertion	Rearm
32	Reset Source	OEM 0xDA	Sensor-specific discrete 0x6F	0x0 0x2	[7] = IPMC Payload Reset [6] = PCH Platform Reset [5] = Reserved [4] = Push Button Reset RTM [3] = Reserved [2] = Push Button Reset [1] = XDP Reset [0] = Power GOOD Reset	[1] IPMC Watchdog Pre-Timeout [0] IPMC Watchdog Timeout	0x0: Payload Reset detected Cause delivered in Event Byte 2/3	Asrt	Auto
33	ACPI State	System ACPI Power State 0x22	Sensor-specific discrete 0x6F	0x0 0x3 0x5	0xFF	0xFF	0x0: S0 0x3: S3 0x5: S5	Asrt	Auto
34	CPU Status	Processor 0x07	Sensor-specific discrete 0x6F	0x0 0x1	0xFF	0xFF	0x0: IERR 0x1: Thermal Trip	Asrt	Auto
35	ME Pwr Fail	OEM 0xE0	Sensor-specific discrete 0x6F	0x0 0x1 0x2 0x7	0xFF	0xFF	0x0: Me Fail State 0x1: Me Fail State 0x2: Me Fail State	Asrt	Auto

Table 9-2 ATCA-7540 Specific Sensors (continued)

Sensor Number	Sensor Name	Sensor Type	Event/ Reading Type	Event Data Byte 1	Event Data Byte 2	Event Data Byte 3	Event Threshold/ Description	Assertion Deassertion	Rearm
36	PYLD Pwr Fail S	OEM 0xE1	Sensor-specific discrete 0x6F	0x0 0x1 0x2 0x7	0xFF	0xFF	0x0: Pyld Fail State 0x1: Pyld Fail State 0x2: Pyld Fail State	Asrt	Auto
37	PYLD Pwr Fail C1	OEM 0xE2	Sensor-specific discrete 0x6F	0x0 0x1 0x2 0x7	0xFF	0xFF	0x0: Pyld Wake UP Fail 0x1: VCCIO PG Fail 0x2: Reserved 0x7: Thermtrip	Asrt	Auto
38	PYLD Pwr Fail C2	OEM 0xE3	Sensor-specific discrete 0x6F	0x0 0x1 0x2 0x7	0xFF	0xFF	0x0: 12V PG 0x1: 5V AUX PG 0x2: 5V PG 0x7: 1.5V PG	Asrt	Auto
39	PYLD Pwr Fail C3	OEM 0xE4	Sensor-specific discrete 0x6F	0x0 0x1 0x2 0x7	0xFF	0xFF	0x0: VPP CPU0 PG 0x1: VPP CPU1 PG 0x2: VDD CPU0 PG 0x7: VCCIN CPU1 PG	Asrt	Auto
40	CPU0 temp	Temp 0x01	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc unc	Asrt / Deass	Auto

## IPMI Feature Set

Table 9-2 ATCA-7540 Specific Sensors (continued)

Sensor Number	Sensor Name	Sensor Type	Event/ Reading Type	Event Data Byte 1	Event Data Byte 2	Event Data Byte 3	Event Threshold/ Description	Assertion Deassertion	Rearm
41	CPU1 temp	Temp 0x01	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc unc	Asrt / Deass	Auto
42	CPU0 DDR0 Temp	Temp 0x01	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc unc	Asrt / Deass	Auto
43	CPU0 DDR1 Temp	Temp 0x01	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc unc	Asrt / Deass	Auto
44	CPU0 DDR2 Temp	Temp 0x01	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc unc	Asrt / Deass	Auto
45	CPU0 DDR3 Temp	Temp 0x01	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc unc	Asrt / Deass	Auto
46	CPU0 DDR4 Temp	Temp 0x01	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc unc	Asrt / Deass	Auto
47	CPU0 DDR5 Temp	Temp 0x01	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc unc	Asrt / Deass	Auto
48	CPU1 DDR0 Temp	Temp 0x01	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc unc	Asrt / Deass	Auto
49	CPU1 DDR1 Temp	Temp 0x01	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc unc	Asrt / Deass	Auto

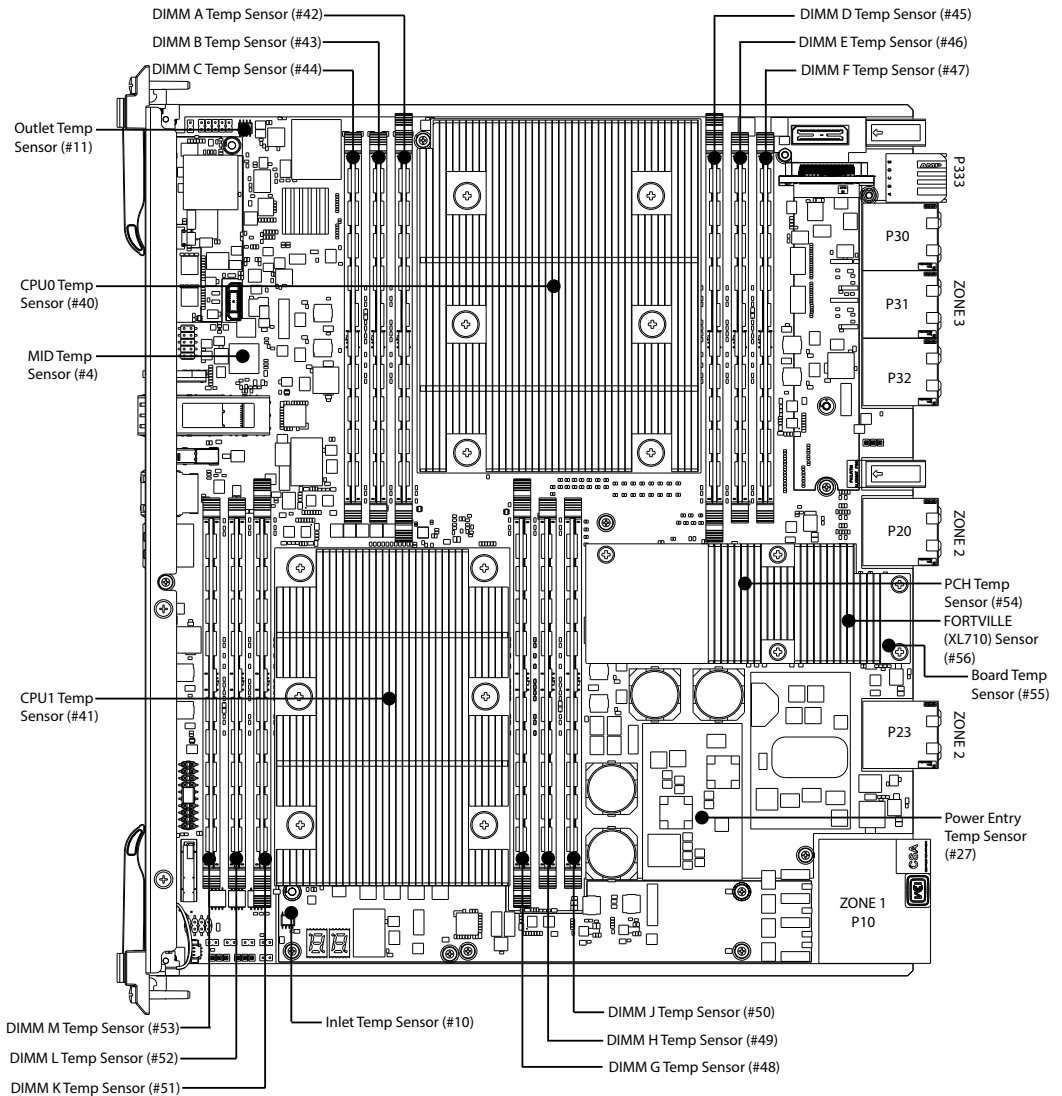
Table 9-2 ATCA-7540 Specific Sensors (continued)

Sensor Number	Sensor Name	Sensor Type	Event/ Reading Type	Event Data Byte 1	Event Data Byte 2	Event Data Byte 3	Event Threshold/ Description	Assertion Deassertion	Rearm
50	CPU1 DDR2 Temp	Temp 0x01	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc unc	Asrt / Deass	Auto
51	CPU1 DDR3 Temp	Temp 0x01	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc unc	Asrt / Deass	Auto
52	CPU1 DDR4 Temp	Temp 0x01	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc unc	Asrt / Deass	Auto
53	CPU1 DDR5 Temp	Temp 0x01	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc unc	Asrt / Deass	Auto
54	PCH temp	Temp 0x01	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc unc	Asrt / Deass	Auto
55	Board Temp	Temp 0x01	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc unc	Asrt / Deass	Auto
56	XL710 Temp	Temp 0x01	Threshold 0x01		reading	threshold	unr uc unc	Asrt / Deass	Auto
57	IPMC POST	Management Subsystem Health 0x28	Digital Discrete 0x06	0x0 0x1	0xFF	0xFF	0x0: Performance Met 0x1: Performance Lags	Asrt	Auto
58	ap force alm	OEM 0xDB	Sensor- specific Discrete	0x6F	0x0	Cause MSB	AP Force ALM Cause	Asrt	Auto

# IPMI Feature Set

The following figure shows the locations of all the temperature sensors available on the blade.

Figure 9-3 Location of Temperature Sensors





## 9.4.1 Payload Driven Sensors

The IPMC firmware provides Firmware Progress, OS Boot, Boot Initiated, Memory, Battery, Critical IRQ and Boot Error sensors to enable the payload firmware and payload OS to report boot progress/failure via IPMI event messages.

The firmware progress sensor implemented with sensor type 0x0F (System Firmware Progress) is used to pass payload boot progress information to the IPMC.

The OS Boot sensor implemented with sensor type 0x1F (OS Boot) is used to inform the IPMC when the operating system has completed its boot up sequence.

The Boot Initiated sensor implemented with sensor type 0x1D (System Boot Initiated) is used to give additional information about how the boot-up sequence is initiated (by hard reset, by soft reset, and so on).

The Memory sensor implemented with sensor type 0x0C (Memory) is used to inform the IPMC about defect DIMMs detected during power-up.

The Battery sensor implemented with sensor type 0x29 (Battery) is used to inform the IPMC about low/failed RTC.

The Critical IRQ sensor implemented with sensor type 0x13 (Critical Interrupt) is used to give PCI errors and NMIs.

The boot error sensor implemented with sensor type 0x1E (Boot Error) is used to pass boot failure information to the IPMC.

In all cases above, the IPMC sends an event to the ShMM.

## 9.4.2 Boot Bank Supervision Sensor

The boot bank supervision sensor is intended to always give the actual boot bank from which the payload has booted last.

*Table 9-3 Event Data of Boot Bank Sensor*

Event Data 1	Event Data 2	Event Data 3
bit[0] 0 = BIOS Bank A; 1 = BIOS Bank B bit[1] 0 = FPGA Bank A; 1 = FPGA Bank B	0xFF	0xFF

The boot bank information received from this sensor may differ from the boot bank selection performed if the boot bank selection has changed after the payload has booted. For details, see [BIOS Boot Bank Selection on page 323](#).

### 9.4.3 IPMC POST Results Sensor

POST results sensor type 0x28 (management subsystem health) returns information about the result of the power-on self-test (POST) of the IPMI firmware. For more details about the POST, see [Power-On Self-Test \(POST\) on page 317](#).

### 9.4.4 Power Good Sensor

Payload Power sensor type 0x08 (power supply) reports the state of the payload power. The IPMC monitors the health and reports an event in the case where the Digital Power Monitor disables power-on. As a result of this, the IPMC will pro-actively transition the IPMC from M4 to M6 (to M1) with a cause code of 0x09 (Unexpected Deactivation). This automatic shutdown is meant to keep the IPMC's state in-line with the payload state.

### 9.4.5 Power Interface Sensors

An Ericsson power input module (PIM4328) is used for the 48V to 12V conversion monitoring. The PIM includes sensors, which monitor the shelf's 48V input feed current, hold-up capacitor voltage, on-board temperature, and internal status. The status sensor reading can be decoded as shown in the following table.

Table 9-4 Status Sensor's Sensor Reading

Bit 7	Reserved	0
Bit 6	-48V Output Under Voltage Alarm	0: Output Voltage is below threshold 1: Output Voltage is above threshold
Bit 5	Hot-swap Switch State	0: Hot-swap switch is off 1: Hot-swap switch is on
Bit 4	Holdup Switch State	0: Holdup Cap is not connected to -48V Out 1: Holdup Cap is connected to -48V Out
Bit 3	Reserved	0
Bit 2	Alarm Signal State	0: Primary side Alarm is not set 1: Primary side Alarm is set
Bit 1	Voltage Feed B Enabled	0: Enable B is Disabled 1: Enable B is Enabled
Bit 0	Voltage Feed A Enabled	0: Enable A is Disabled 1: Enable A is Enabled

### 9.4.6 Reset Cause Sensor

This sensor is used to monitor the last payload reset cause (hard reset, front panel reset or any other reset). The IPMC evaluates the Reset Cause Register within the Glue Logic FPGA.

### 9.4.7 Voltage and Temperature Sensor

There is a selection of voltage and temperature sensors at the front blade and at the RTM.

Table 9-5 Voltage and Temperature Sensor Devices

I <sup>2</sup> C Address	I <sup>2</sup> C bus	Domain	Sensor Name	Purpose (refer to <a href="#">Figure 9-3 Location of Temperature Sensors on page 312</a> )	Device
0x50	IPMC private 2	Front blade	-48V A Volts -48V B Volts -48V Amps Holdup Cap Volts PWR Entry Temp PWR Entry Status	Feed A Voltage Feed B Voltage Feed Current Holdup Cap Voltage Power Entry Temp Power Entry Status	Power Entry Module
0x90	IPMC private 2	Front blade	Inlet Temp	Inlet Temp	LM75
0x94	IPMC private 2	Front blade	Outlet Temp	Outlet Temp	LM75

## IPMI Feature Set

Table 9-5 Voltage and Temperature Sensor Devices (continued)

I <sup>2</sup> C Address	I <sup>2</sup> C bus	Domain	Sensor Name	Purpose (refer to <a href="#">Figure 9-3 Location of Temperature Sensors on page 312</a> )	Device
0x2e	IPMC private 4	Front blade	CPU0 Temp CPU1 Temp CPU0 DDR0 Temp CPU0 DDR1 Temp CPU0 DDR2 Temp CPU0 DDR3 Temp CPU0 DDR4 Temp CPU0 DDR5 Temp CPU1 DDR0 Temp CPU1 DDR1 Temp CPU1 DDR2 Temp CPU1 DDR3 Temp CPU1 DDR4 Temp CPU1 DDR5 Temp PCH Temp	CPU0 Temp CPU1 Temp DIMM A Temp DIMM B Temp DIMM C Temp DIMM D Temp DIMM E Temp DIMM F Temp DIMM G Temp DIMM H Temp DIMM J Temp DIMM K Temp DIMM L Temp DIMM M Temp PCH Temp	ME Engine
Internal ADC		Front blade	Mid air temp +3.3V MGMT +12V +5V RTM 3.3V MGMT  RTM 12 V	MID Temp Management Power Voltage +12V Power Voltage +5V Power Voltage RTM Management Power Voltage RTM +12V Power Voltage	A2F ADC
0x98	IPMC private	Front blade	Board Temp XL710 Temp	Board Temp Fortville (XL710 Temp)	ADT7461

### 9.4.8 ME Power Failure Sensor

The IPMC evaluates the ME Power Failure Register to report power failures at the ME engine domain. When a ME failure occurs, the red power failure LED blinks (signal `PWR_FAIL_`).

The error state is kept until ME wakes up (signal `SLP_A_` becomes high). For more information, see [Table 5-44](#).

For failing states and their coding, see [Table 5-45](#).

## 9.4.9 Payload Power Failure State Sensor

The IPMC evaluates the Payload Power Failure Register to report power failures at the payload domain.

When a payload power failure occurs, the red power failure LED is switched ON (signal `PWR_FAIL_` is driven low).

The power failing state is maintained until payload power is turned off.

- **Manual Powering:** Setting the switch SW100.1 from OFF to ON.
- **IPMC Controlled Powering:** The IPMC shutting down the payload power (signal `IPMC_VP48_EN_` is deserted). For more information, see [Table 5-47](#).

See [Table 5-48](#) for all possible failing states and their coding. When the blade is powered via switch SW100.1, the debug mode is enabled, where some timeouts are disabled.

## 9.4.10 Payload Power Failure Cause Sensor

The IPMC uses three sensors to monitor the power failure cause of the payload domain. [Table 5-49](#) gives more details about the payload power failure. The Payload Power Failure Registers 1 to 3 are always 0 when the Payload Power Failure status (bit 7) is not set.

The Payload Power Failure Cause Register 2 covers the main blade voltages. For more information, see [Table 5-50](#).

The Payload Power Failure Cause Register 3 covers CPU specific voltages. When a CPU is not mounted (detected via `CPU0_SKTOCC_` and `CPU1_SKTOCC_`) the corresponding power failure bits will never be set. For more information, see [Table 5-51](#).

## 9.5 Power-On Self-Test (POST)

POST is executed at IPMC startup when either a hard (blade physically extracted/reinserted) or a cold (IPMI Command) reset is performed. POST verifies the functionality of SRAM, IPMB-0, EEPROM data storage, FRU-Information, and all devices (primarily sensors) attached to the IPMC's private master-only I<sup>2</sup>C bus. A detailed description of POST tests are as follows:

- **FRU-Information** - Verifies that the FRU-Information is readable from the external EEPROM where it is stored. Once read, each section's checksum is computed and validated.
- **IPMB-0** - Reads the ready signals coming from the I<sup>2</sup>C buffers. If this test passes, both ready signals are active and both IPMB busses (IPMB-A and IPMB-B) are enabled.

## IPMI Feature Set

---

- **EEPROM** - Verifies that the EEPROM contents are readable via I<sup>2</sup>C. Since the IPMC stores its runtime and persistent data here, proper operation is crucial.
- **Master-Only I<sup>2</sup>C** - Verifies that all expected devices attached to the master-only I<sup>2</sup>C bus are accessible.

To obtain results of POST, the IPMC supports the IPMI standard command Get Self Test Results with OEM extensions. This IPMI command can be run at anytime.

## 9.6 Ejector Handle De-Bounce

The handle switch de-bouncing algorithm is used to configure a programmable delay. The IPMC waits before ejector handle state changes are accepted. This is provided to avoid accidental FRU extraction caused by service-teams during servicing other FRUs.

The ejector handle de-bounce function can be enabled, disabled, and configured with the use of the OEM command Set/Get Feature Configuration. For details, see [Set Feature Configuration on page 267](#).

## 9.7 FRU Inventory

The Penguin Edge ATCA-7540 implements two intelligent FRUs (IPMC and MMC).

Every FRU provides its own FRU information (serial, part, MAC addresses). FRU information is available depending on the presence of a module.

*Table 9-6 FRU Information and SEL at EEPROM Storage*

I <sup>2</sup> C Address	I <sup>2</sup> C bus	Domain	Purpose
0xA0	IPMC	Front blade	SEL
0xA2	IPMC	Front blade	FRU Information and Bios Boot Parameter
Device internal	MMC	RTM	FRU Information

The MAC addresses of a FRU are stored within the multi-record area of the FRU information. A MAC address multi-record has been defined for this purpose. For details, see [MAC Address FRU OEM Records on page 319](#).

## 9.7.1 MAC Address FRU OEM Records

The Penguin Edge MAC Address record is specified in the following table.

*Table 9-7 Penguin Edge MAC Address Record*

Offset	Length	Description
0	1	Record Type ID. A value of C0h (OEM) shall be used for Penguin Edge OEM records.
1	1	End of List/Version [7] End of List. Set to 1b for the last record [6:4] Reserved. Write as 000b. [3:0] Record format version. Write as 2h.
2	1	Record Length
3	1	Record Checksum (zero checksum)
4	1	Header Checksum (zero checksum)
5	1	LSB of Manufacturer ID. Write as CDh.
6	1	Second Byte of Manufacturer ID. Write as 65h.
7	1	MSB of Manufacturer ID. Write as 00h.
8	1	Penguin Edge Record ID. 01h for Penguin Edge MAC Address Record.
9	1	Record Format Version. 01h for this specification.
10	1	Number of MAC Address Descriptors (N).
11	N*9	Penguin Edge MAC Address Descriptors. Refer to <a href="#">Table 9-8</a> , Penguin Edge MAC Address Descriptor

*Table 9-8 Penguin Edge MAC Address Descriptor*

Offset	Length	Description
0	1	Interface Type. Refer to <a href="#">Table 9-9</a> , Interface Type Assignments
1	1	Length Identifier (for example: 6 = 48 bit MAC, 8 = WWPN)
2	1	MAC Address Count (M) (specifying a continuous pool of MAC addresses starting with the MAC address specified in this descriptor) M = 1: this descriptor specifies one MAC address M > 1: this descriptor specifies a pool of MAC addresses with M count

## IPMI Feature Set

---

Table 9-8 Penguin Edge MAC Address Descriptor (continued)

Offset	Length	Description
3	6	MAC Address. (Canonical form, the LSB (least significant bit) first.

Table 9-9 Interface Type Assignments

Interface Type	Description
01h	ATCA Base Interface
02h	ATCA Fabric Interface
03h	Front/Rear Panel
04h	Mezzanine Module
05h	Serial over LAN (SOL)
06h	Fibre Channel / WWP
07h	AMC/MicroTCA Common Options Region
08h	AMC/MicroTCA Fat Pipe Region
09h	AMC/MicroTCA Extended Fat Pipe Region
10h	ATCA Update Channel
11h	Multi-type (Base, Fabric, and Update channel (or two types of it) are connected to a on-board switch)
11h - FFh	Reserved

The IPMC provides eight MAC addresses in its FRU information:

- 2 x 40G fabric implemented with Fortville NIC
- 2 x 1G Base and 1 x 1G to front implemented with one Powerville NIC
- 2 x SOL
- 1 x 10GBE from PCH to front panel SFP+

## 9.8 Reset and Power Domain

The ATCA-7540 blade provides the following FRU instances:

- FRU #0: front blade management and switch



- FRU #1: RTM

Each FRU instance can be reset separately.

## 9.9 Power Configuration

The maximum power consumption requested by the IPMC is different, depending on the product version.

*Table 9-10 Power Consumption Depending on the Product Version*

Item	Value	Description
Dynamic power reconfiguration support	No	While the blade is powered, it supports only one power level
Dynamic power configuration	No	The power level is fixed and does not change)
Number of power draw levels	1	The amount of possible power levels
Early Power Draw Levels, Watt	-	Complete early power level including IPMC
Steady state Power Draw Levels, Watt	CFG0000, 14-core 85W CPU, 12 DIMMs, 275W; CFG0010, 10-core 85W CPU, 12 DIMMs, 275W	Complete steady power consumption including IPMC
Transition from early to steady levels, sec	0s	-

## 9.10 BIOS Boot Configuration Parameters

The IPMC allows storing BIOS setup variables in the NVRAM area of the BIOS flash. When the BIOS starts, it copies its own set of NVRAM parameters into memory. Then it reads parameters from the IPMC, adding new parameters to the parameter set in memory, and deleting or modifying existing ones. During runtime, only the memory copy of the parameter set is used.

The parameters changed and stored in the BIOS setup menu are automatically saved back into the non-volatile memory of the IPMC. The IPMI command being used to manage the boot configuration variables is called Set/Get System Boot Options together with parameter #100. For details, see [System Boot Options Commands on page 245](#).

## IPMI Feature Set

---

Storing BIOS Boot environment variables in IPMC non-volatile memory has the advantage, which can be set by the ShMM or across HPI applications as well. The system manager may decide which boot device the blade should boot from.

The boot configuration parameters are stored as sets of <parameter name> and <value> pairs. They can be easily enhanced and there are no dependencies between different versions of IPMC firmware and payload firmware. The IPMC provides a set of boot configuration parameters and the payload firmware just initializes those he knows about.

The boot options need to be stored as a sequence of zero terminated strings. The following table describes the format of the boot options to be used when setting or reading the System Boot Options parameter #100.

*Table 9-11 IPMC Boot Parameter Storage Format*

Byte	Description
0-1	Number of bytes used for boot parameters (LSB first)  The number of bytes must be calculated and written into these two bytes by the software, which writes into the storage area. The values 0x0000 and 0xFFFF indicate that no data has been written to the storage area. If you are reading from the storage area and you find any of these two values, your software should assume that no boot firmware options have previously been written to the storage area.
2-n	Boot Parameters data  The boot parameters are stored as ASCII text with the following general format: <name>=<value>, where all name/value pairs are separated by a zero byte. The end of the boot parameter data is indicated by two zero bytes. Allowed and supported name/value pairs are blade specific.
N+1 - n+2	16 bit checksum over the boot parameters data section (LSB first).

When writing or reading from the storage area, you can only read or write chunks of 16 bytes at a time. For this reason, the IPMC memory is divided into numbered blocks of 16 bytes which need to be addressed individually. For this purpose the "block selector" field in the request data field is used.

## 9.11 Asynchronous Event Notification

The FRU Activate (Deactivate) and FRU Control (Graceful Reboot) command messages are routed as a LUN2 message to payload interface for graceful shutdown/reboot requests.

The provided payload application includes these commands via OpenIPMI library to take all necessary actions before the payload is gracefully rebooted/shutdown.

Graceful Reboot and Graceful Shutdown is also communicated to the Intel CPU via internal communication channel.

## 9.12 Serial Line Selection

The ATCA-7540 blade provides two serial interfaces from payload. By default, the first is routed to the front connector and the second to the RTM. In addition, there is an IPMC debug interface, which can be routed either to the front or to the RTM (this function is available if the RTM provides a serial connector at the front).

The IPMC provides an OEM command called Set/Get Serial Output to be used to influence this serial interface routing default. The serial line selection is implemented non-persistently to ensure that the serial interfaces can be accessed easily after power-up.

## 9.13 BIOS Boot Bank Selection

The ATCA-7540 provides redundant payload boot flashes for manual and automatic crisis recovery. The general concept is that there is always an active and a standby SPI flash device. The role of the two devices can be reversed by the FPGA. For this to work, the FPGA has to drive the chip select signals to the SPI flashes. The final decision on which of the two devices is active and standby is done by the IPMC.

The BIOS Boot Bank Selection is implemented such that swapping the SPI flashes is not in effect immediately. To ensure that the active BIOS bank cannot be overwritten, the boot bank selection is masked with a payload reset. Swapping the boot bank is possible with the following steps:

- Swap the BIOS boot banks
- Reset the payload

### NOTICE

**Be aware that swapping the BIOS boot bank is active only after payload reset.**

The IPMI command Set/Get System Boot Options together with the parameter #96 can be used to specify the BIOS boot bank from which the payload shall boot from persistently. For details, see [System Boot Options Commands on page 245](#).

### 9.13.1 Boot Bank Sensor

The ATCA-7540 provides a Boot Bank Sensor, illustrating from which BIOS Boot Bank the boot firmware has last booted. For details, see [Boot Bank Supervision Sensor on page 313](#).

## 9.13.2 Fail Safe Logic

Fail safe logic is a mechanism, implementing automatic BIOS boot bank crisis recovery. It observes the BIOS boot phase to swap the BIOS boot banks and to reset the processor in case the boot firmware hangs accidentally.

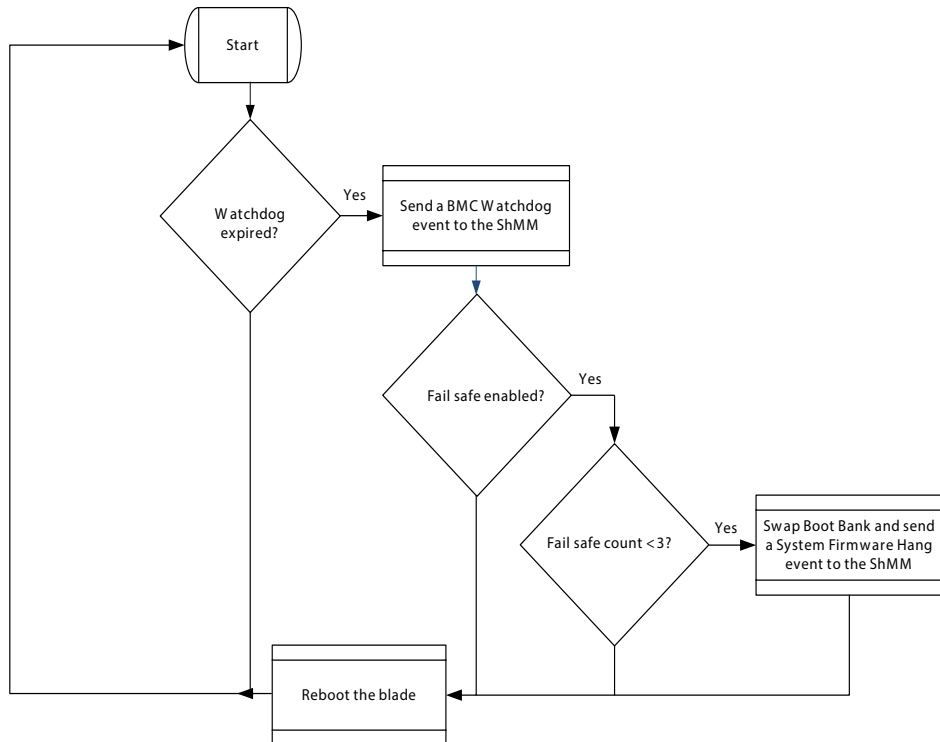
Fail safe logic can be enabled or disabled at any time with:

- IPMI OEM command called Set/Get Feature Configuration and parameter #224. For details, see [Set Feature Configuration on page 267](#).
- BIOS Setup Menu

Typically, fail safe logic is used to protect a BIOS firmware upgrade to recover, even when the boot image programmed does not work, is damaged, or has an unpredictable error.

Fail safe logic is implemented within the IPMI management controller. If the firmware does not boot and the BMC watchdog expires, the IPMI management controller will swap the boot banks before resetting the CPU. Thus the blade can recover by booting from its redundant boot flash, which contains the old active firmware image.

Figure 9-4 Fail Safe Logic Diagram



Fail safe in general can recover from scenarios:

- Missing or defect boot block
- Firmware image has a bad checksum

When the fail safe logic is triggered as a result of the BMC Watchdog timeout, a System Firmware Progress event is logged as follows:

Sensor Type: 0x0F (System Firmware Progress)

Event Reading Type Code: 0x6F (Sensor Specific)

Event Data Byte 1: 0xA1 (System Firmware Hang)

Event Data Byte 2: 0x00 (CPU instance)

Event Data Byte 3: 0xXX (Failed Boot Bank ID: 0=Bank A; 1=Bank B)

The fail safe logic makes three attempts to boot the payload successfully. After three attempts, the fail safe logic is automatically disabled and the boot bank is left in the original state (before the payload was booted).

Payload software is able to detect when fail safe was activated during last boot. For details, see [Table 8-26](#).

By default, fail safe logic is disabled.

## 9.14 Glue Logic FPGA Flash Selection

The ATCA-7540 blade provides redundant FPGA flashes for both manual and automatic crisis recoveries.

The general concept is that there is always an active and a standby SPI flash device. The role of these two devices can be reversed by the IPMC; for this to work, the IPMC has to drive the chip select signals to the SPI flashes. The final decision about which of the two devices is active and standby is made by the IPMC.

The IPMC needs to control the Glue Logic FPGA during power up. The FPGA Bank selection is implemented such that swapping the SPI flashes is in effect.

Swapping FPGA banks is only possible with the following steps:

1. Swap the FPGA banks
2. Power-cycle the payload

The IPMI command Set/Get System Boot Options together with the parameter #96 can be used to specify the FPGA boot bank from which the payload shall boot persistently. For details, see [System Boot Options Commands on page 245](#).

### 9.14.1 Boot Bank Sensor

The ATCA-7540 blade provides a Boot Bank Sensor illustrating from which FPGA bank the FPGA has booted last. For details, see [Boot Bank Supervision Sensor on page 313](#).

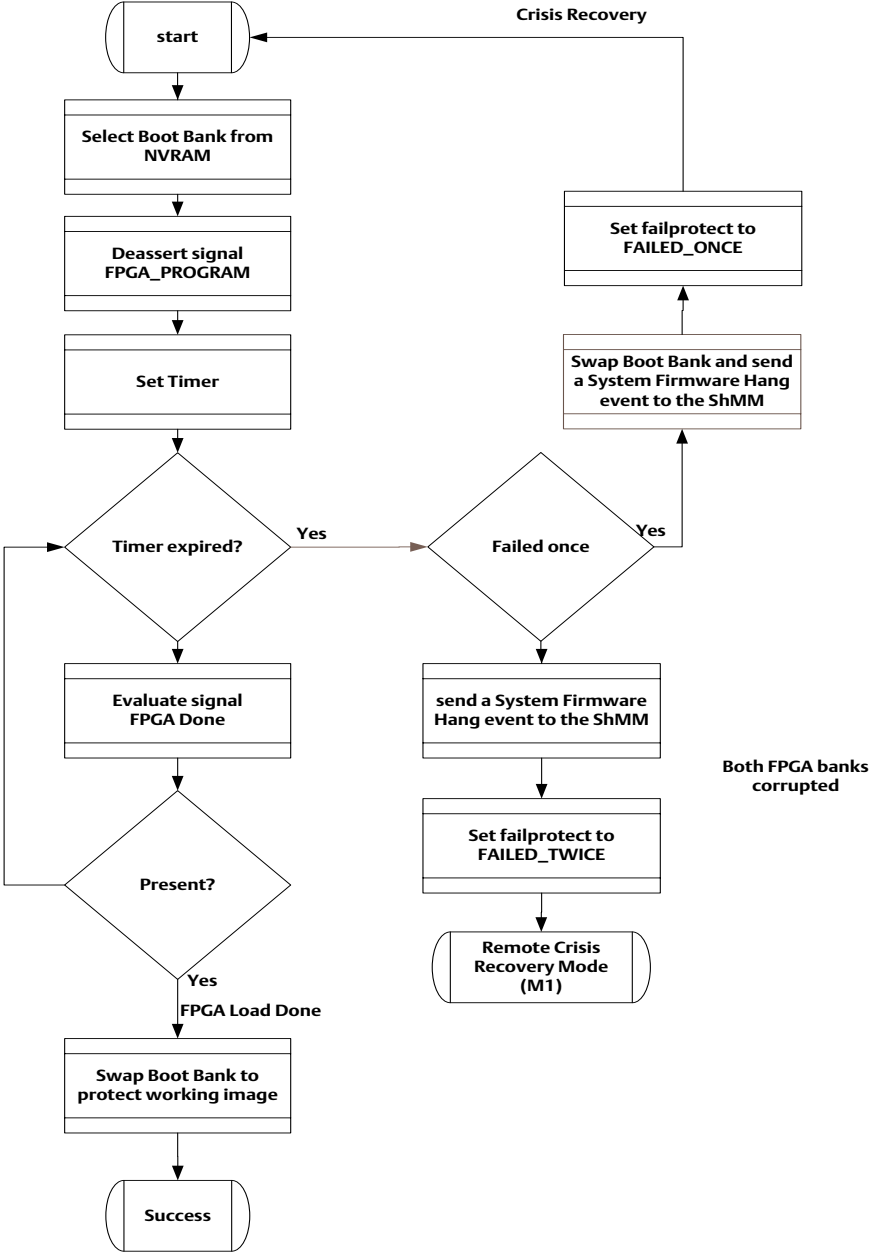
### 9.14.2 Fail Protect Logic

Fail protect logic is a mechanism implementing automatic FPGA bank crisis recovery. It observes the FPGA boot phase to swap the FPGA banks and to reload the FPGA in case the FPGA firmware hangs accidentally.

Fail protect can be enabled or disabled at any time using an IPMI OEM command called Set/Get Feature Configuration and parameter #224. For details, see [Set Feature Configuration on page 267](#) or BIOS setup menu.

During initial power on, the IPMC selects the FPGA bank stored in NVRAM and evaluates the FPGA DONE signal. If the provided signal is not asserted, the IPMC selects the FPGA backup bank and tries to load the FPGA again.

Figure 9-5 Fail Protect Logic Diagram



If both SPI flashes are corrupted, the IPMC enters remote crisis recovery mode and moves to hot-swap state M1, waiting for a FPGA firmware upgrade initiated from the ShMM.

**NOTE:** Only the backup firmware bank can be upgraded.

When the fail protect logic is triggered as a result of the timer expiry, a System Firmware Progress event is logged as follows:

Sensor Type: 0x0F (System Firmware Progress)

Event Reading Type Code: 0x6F (Sensor Specific)

Event Data Byte 1: 0xA1 (System Firmware Hang)

Event Data Byte 2: 0x00 (CPU instance)

Event Data Byte 3: 0xXX (Failed Boot Bank ID: 0=Bank A; 1=Bank B)

Payload software is able to detect when fail protect was activated during last boot. For details, see [Table 8-26](#).

By default, fail protect logic is activated.

### 9.14.3 Remote Crisis Recover Mode

This mode is entered when both FPGA flashes are corrupted and the FPGA cannot be loaded. The IPMC moves into hot-swap state M1 and waits for subsequent firmware upgrades initiated from the ShMM.

## 9.15 Settable Graceful Shutdown Timeout

The IPMI command Set/Get System Boot Options together with the OEM parameter #98 can be used to specify the timeout for Graceful Shutdown persistently. For details, see [System Boot Options Commands on page 245](#).

By default, Graceful Shutdown persistently value is set to 10 seconds.

## 9.16 Local System Event Log (SEL)

The ATCA-7540 IPMC supports a local SEL. The local SEL size is configured to hold 1K entries in a circular FIFO buffer. Once the circular buffer is full, the next SEL entry will overwrite the oldest SEL entry in the buffer. All events are automatically logged to the local SEL before being passed to the shelf's SEL, which includes all events that occur from the local MMC.

To support the local SEL, a software emulated RTC is enabled which upon startup requests the local time from the shelf manager by sending an IPMI standard command Get SEL Time. Once the initial time is received, the IPMC maintains the time locally and no further synchronization is performed with the shelf manager.



# Ruggedized ATCA-7450 Information

---

## A.1 Ruggedized ATCA-7540 Overview

The ruggedized configuration of the Penguin Edge™ ATCA-7540 is a COTS dual-processor server blade with a specially designed alignment block that enables the blade to be secured in a shelf, like the ruggedized configuration of the AXP1440, with captive screws for rugged environments. Careful component choices have been made for an extended product life cycle.

The ruggedized ATCA-7540 is electrically identical to the commercial ATCA-7540 blade. References to the ATCA-7540 in this manual also apply to the ruggedized configuration.

## A.2 Mechanical Data

The following table provides dimensions and weight for the ruggedized version of the ATCA-7540 blade.

*Table A-1 Mechanical Data*

<b>Feature</b>	<b>Value</b>
Dimensions (width x height x depth)	30mm x 351mm x 312mm (1.2 x 13.8 x 12.8 inches)
Weight	3.5kg (7.8 lbs)

# A.3 Mechanical Information

The following figures show the location of the Upper and Zone 2 alignment blocks, and alignment block drawing.

Figure A-1 Location of Alignment Blocks on the Ruggedized ATCA-7540 Blade

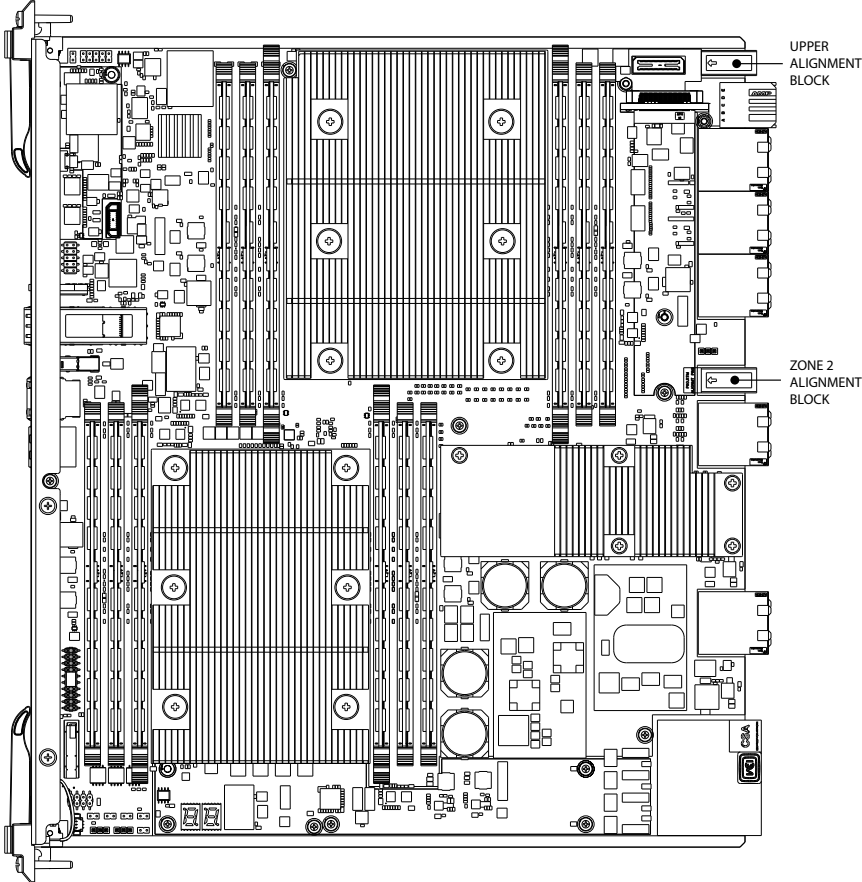
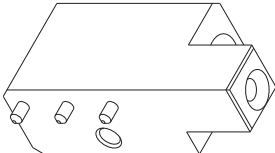


Figure A-2 ATCA Blade Alignment Block



The following images show the location of the recessed captive screws in the shelf.

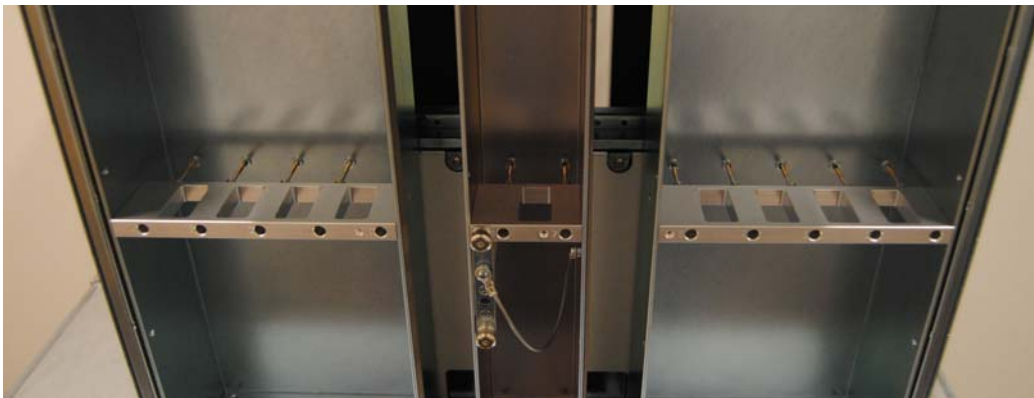
*Figure A-3 Recessed Captive Screws in the Ruggedized AXP1440 Shelf*



## Ruggedized ATCA-7450 Information

---

*Figure A-4 Angled View of Recessed Captive Screws in Ruggedized AXP1440 Shelf*



The next images show the alignment block in stowed position; and the alignment block in a switch slot.

*Figure A-5 Alignment Block in Stowed Position*

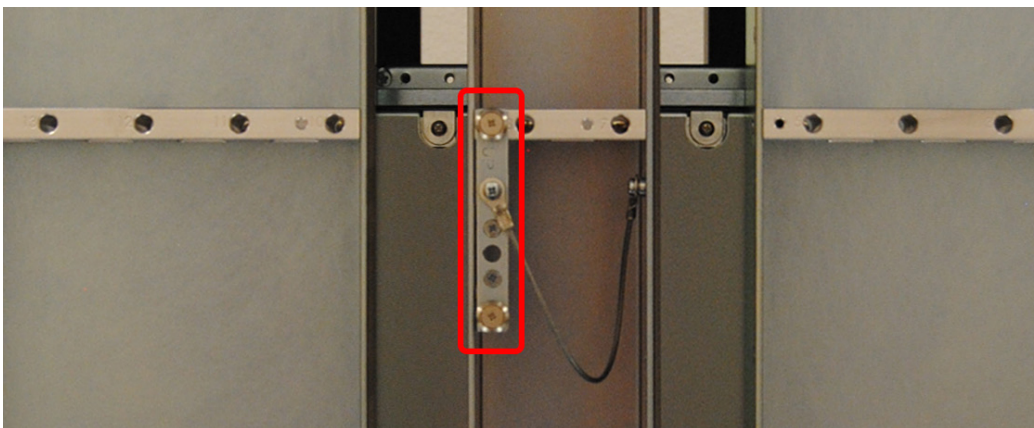
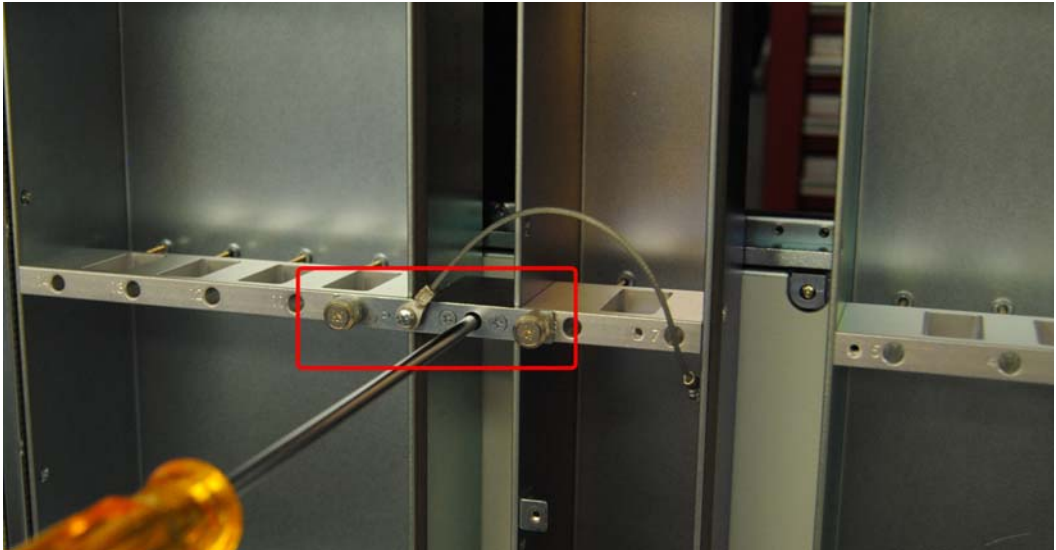


Figure A-6 Alignment Block in Switch Slot



## A.4 Ordering Information

Please reference the data sheet for the ATCA-7540 blade variants and blade accessories available. Refer to [Appendix B, Related Documentation, on page 335](#) or consult your local Penguin Solutions sales representative for the availability of other variants.

For technical assistance, documentation, or to report product damage or shortages, contact your local Penguin Solutions sales representative or visit <https://www.penguinsolutions.com/edge/support/>.



# Related Documentation

## B.1 Penguin Edge Documentation

The documentation listed in Table B-1 is referenced in this manual. Technical documentation can be found by using the Documentation Search at <https://www.penguin-solutions.com/edge/support/> or you can obtain electronic copies of Penguin Edge documentation by contacting your local sales representative.

*Table B-1 Penguin Edge Documentation*

Document Title	Document Number
Penguin Edge ATCA-7540 Data Sheet	ATCA-7540 DS
Penguin Edge ATCA-7540 Quick Start Guide	6806871A02
Penguin Edge ATCA-7540 Series Safety Notes Summary	6806871A03
Basic Blade Services Software on ATCA-7540 Programmer's Reference	6806871A04
RTM-ATCA-STOR Installation and Use	6806800V39
M.2 Riser Assembly ATCA-75XX-Kit-M2 Quick Start Guide	6806872A01
SSD Module and HW Kit NVME-M.2-1TB Quick Start Guide	6806868A01

## B.2 Related Specifications

For additional information, refer to the following table for related specifications. As an additional help, a source for the listed document is provided. Please note that, while these sources have been verified, the information is subject to change without notice.

*Table B-2 Related Specifications*

Organization	Document Title
PCI-SIG	PCI Local Bus Specification Revision 2.2 PCI-X Addendum to the PCI Local Bus Specification 1.0
PICMG	PICMG 3.0 Revision 2.0 Advanced TCA Base Specification PICMG 3.1 Revision 1.0 Specification Ethernet/Fiber Channel for AdvancedTCA Systems

# Related Documentation

---





# PENGUIN<sup>™</sup>

SOLUTIONS 

Penguin Solutions is a trade name used by SMART Embedded Computing, Inc., a wholly owned subsidiary of SMART Global Holdings, Inc. Penguin Edge is a trademark owned by Penguin Computing, Inc., a wholly owned subsidiary of SMART Global Holdings, Inc. Intel, and Xeon are trademarks of Intel Corporation. PICMG, AdvancedTCA and ATCA are trademarks of PICMG. All other logos, trade names, and trademarks are the property of their respective owners. ©2023 SMART Embedded Computing, Inc.